FIRST YEAR LATIN

COLLAR AND DANIELL

rules, vocabularies

Eureka Ill
Sept. 2
'0

Everett Rinker
Table Grove
Ill.

A Roman Orator

FIRST YEAR LATIN

BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.

HEAD-MASTER ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.

FORMERLY PRINCIPAL CHAUNCY-HALL SCHOOL, BOSTON

GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

COPYRIGHT, 1901, BY
WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

78.10

The Athenæum Press
GINN & COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE

WHAT grasp of the Latin language may be reasonably expected of an intelligent and industrious pupil of fourteen who has had five recitations a week for a school year of thirty-eight weeks?

1. He should know the principles of pronunciation and should have had sufficient practice in following and imitating his teacher to read Latin that he knows the meaning of without gross errors in accent or in the quantity of final syllables, and with some idea of grouping words and phrases so as to indicate the sense.

2. He should have acquired such familiarity with inflected forms as to recognize unerringly the place of a form. Half a hundred fundamental principles of syntax should have become a permanent part of his mental furnishing, chiefly through manifold illustrations in the exercises and reading lessons, subordinately through practical application in turning English into Latin.

3. Ten of his thirty-eight weeks may well have been devoted to practice in metaphrasing and translating selections of easy Latin into idiomatic English, and to acquiring as large and varied a working vocabulary as the reading and re-reading of twenty-five or thirty pages could be expected to give.

4. Finally, a moderate appreciation of Latin order and of the difference in the arrangement of corresponding words in Latin and in English, and a very moderate degree of facility in applying the principles of syntax in the translation of English into Latin may fairly be demanded.

So much may be set down as a reasonable achievement for an intelligent pupil in a year's time under good teaching.

This book has been written to exhibit in detail, to the best of the authors' ability, the scheme of work roughly sketched above. The first few lessons have purposely been made somewhat easier than is usual, and the progression in difficulty gradual for the benefit of pupils unfamiliar with English grammar. Some classes may be able to compass two of these easier lessons at a time.

To insure approximate evenness in the amount of time and work demanded of learners for the several lessons, no lesson has been permitted to exceed two pages in length.

The importance of the verb in the Latin inflectional system and the great amount of practice required to master its forms thoroughly have seemed a good reason for introducing it at the outset. The development of the tenses of the indicative has been continuous with only such interruptions as seemed necessary to enable the learner to digest and assimilate what he has acquired. It will be seen that the method of comparison is freely used in the treatment of the verb, as, for example, tenses similarly formed in different conjugations are placed side by side to be learned together.

This plan has been adopted for two reasons, either of which would sufficiently justify it: to ease the dead pull upon the memory, and to foster the habit of observation and comparison. It is often easier to learn two things or several that have some relation of likeness or contrast, than to learn either by itself, and the discerning of likenesses and differences is itself largely the process and sum of education. Only when the learner has studied and practised the verb in parts is he required, through review lessons, to survey and master it as a whole.

Several features that need only be mentioned will, it is hoped, commend themselves to teachers:

(1) The compression that will certainly make it possible for high school classes to go through the seventy-five lessons twice in from twenty-five to twenty-eight weeks.

(2) The relative shortening of the exercises for translation into Latin. If any class seems to need more of such practice it may be supplemented by having a translation of the Latin exercises written out and after a little interval retranslated into Latin during the recitation.

(3) The frequent interspersion of reviews and of reading lessons that anticipate no following principle of syntax.

(4) The summary of rules for reference and the index. The latter is strangely omitted from most books of this kind, but is certainly convenient and useful.

(5) The "Essentials of Grammar" prefixed to the lessons, which should help to adapt the book to learners who come to the study of Latin with little or no knowledge of English grammar.

(6) The copious selections for reading at the end of the book, which will be found upon examination to be carefully graded in point of difficulty and altogether interesting in character.

As an aid to teachers who may use this book, the authors have prepared a *Teacher's Manual* containing eight pages of general suggestions followed by notes on each lesson.

The authors wish to express their grateful acknowledgments to Miss Ada Townsend of Evanston, Ill., for several valuable suggestions, and particularly to Mr. George F. Fiske, of the Roxbury Latin School, Boston, Mass., who has read all the proof sheets with a scholar's conscientious care and aided materially in perfecting the work.

William C. Collar
M. Grant Daniell

This edition differs from the preceding in a number of minor changes and improvements suggested by Mr. H. C. Nutting of Berkeley, California, to whom the authors acknowledge their indebtedness with hearty thanks.

January, 1907

NOTE TO TEACHERS

It is recommended that of the *Selections for Reading* (pp. 171–202) the *Anecdotes*, the *Stories of Hercules*, and the *Stories of Ulysses* be read from time to time, as pupils advance through the Lessons. These selections are easy and with a little preliminary help from the teacher can be read by pupils with interest and profit, without waiting till the Lessons are finished.

Pupils are early referred to the general Vocabulary for new words that occur in the reading lessons. This has been done in order that they may become familiar by degrees with the use of a general vocabulary, before the continuous reading of the selections at the end of the book is entered upon. They should read the explanatory notes that precede the Latin-English Vocabulary, and from the beginning of their use of it become accustomed to observe the formation and derivation of words, the synonyms, and the English derivatives and cognates that are given.

As many pupils will pass from this book to the *Gate to Caesar* or to *Caesar's Gallic War*, it is recommended that in conjunction with the selections from Caesar the *Stories of Ulysses* be reviewed, since in these the vocabulary and construction of Caesar are somewhat closely imitated.

CONTENTS

Lesson		Page
	Essentials of Grammar	1–13
	Introductory: Alphabet, Pronunciation, Syllables, Quantity, Accent, Cases, Gender	15–19
I.	First Declension. — Subject, Nominative Case. — Singular and Plural of Nouns and Verbs	20, 21
II.	First Declension. — *Direct Object* — *Accusative Case*	22, 23
III.	First Conjugation: Active Indicative Present. *Agreement of Verbs.* — Conversation	24, 25
IV.	First Declension. — *Genitive Case* — *Limiting Genitive.* — Conversation	26, 27
V.	Second Conjugation: Active Indicative Present. — Review. — Conversation	28, 29
VI.	First Declension. — *Indirect Object* — *Dative Case.* — *Ablative with* **in**. — Conversation	30, 31
VII.	Second Declension: Words in **-us** and **-um**. — Review. — Conversation	32, 33
VIII.	First and Second Declensions. — *Agreement of Adjectives*	34, 35
IX.	The Verb **sum**: Indicative Present. — *Predicate Noun and Adjective.* — Review	36, 37
X.	Second Declension: Words in **-er**, **-erī**. — Review. — Conversation	38, 39
XI.	Second Declension: Words in **-er**, **-rī**. — *Apposition*	40, 41
XII.	Uses of the Dative: *Dative of Possessor, Dative with Adjectives.* — Review	42, 43
XIII.	First and Second Conjugations: Active Indicative Imperfect. — *Ablative of Means*	44, 45
XIV.	First and Second Conjugations: Active Indicative Future. — *Ablative of Manner*	46, 47
XV.	First Conjugation: Active Indicative Perfect. — Reading Lesson: The Romans and the Sabines	48, 49
XVI	Second Conjugation: Active Indicative Perfect	50, 51

Lesson		Page
XVII.	The Demonstrative **is**	52, 53
XVIII.	The Interrogative **quis**. — Review	54, 55
XIX.	Third Conjugation: Active Indicative Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect	56, 57
XX.	Review. — Reading Lesson: Icarus	58, 59
XXI.	Third Declension: Mute Stems	60, 61
XXII.	Third Conjugation: Verbs in **-iō**; Active Indicative Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect. — *Place Whence and Whither*	62, 63
XXIII.	Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — *Ablative of Cause.* — Review	64, 65
XXIV.	Third Declension: Stems in **-i**	66, 67
XXV.	Third Declension: Gender	68, 69
XXVI.	Review. — Reading Lesson: Horatius at the Bridge. — Conversation	70, 71
XXVII.	Adjectives of the Third Declension. — Reading Lesson: Caesar in Gaul	72, 73
XXVIII.	Fourth Conjugation: Active Indicative Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect. — *Ablative of Time*	74, 75
XXIX.	All Conjugations: Active Indicative Pluperfect and Future Perfect. — Review	76, 77
XXX.	Syntax of Names of Towns, and of **domus** and **rūs**: *Locative Case*	78, 79
XXXI.	The Demonstratives **hīc** and **ille**. — Reading Lesson: Britain Invaded	80, 81
XXXII.	Passive Voice: Active and Passive Indicative Present. — *Ablative of Agent*	82, 83
XXXIII.	The Relative **quī**. — *Agreement of Relative*	84, 85
XXXIV.	Active and Passive: Indicative Present, Imperfect, and Future of **regō** and **capiō**	86, 87
XXXV.	Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	88, 89
XXXVI.	Active and Passive: Indicative Present, Imperfect, and Future of **audiō**. — Reading Lesson: Coriolanus and his Mother	90, 91
XXXVII.	Possessive Adjectives. — *Ablative of Separation*	92, 93
XXXVIII.	Passive Voice — All Conjugations: Indicative Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect	94, 95
XXXIX.	Review. — Reading Lesson: Scipio and Hannibal	96, 97
XL.	Fourth Declension	98, 99

Lesson		Page
XLI.	Comparison of Adjectives. — *Ablative of Comparison*	100, 101
XLII.	Comparison of Adjectives. — *Partitive Genitive*	102, 103
XLIII.	Comparison of Adjectives. — *Ablative of Degree of Difference*	104, 105
XLIV.	Comparison of Adverbs. — Conversation	106, 107
XLV.	Reading Lesson: A Letter from Pompeii. — Conversation. — Review	108, 109
XLVI.	Fifth Declension. — *Accusative of Extent*	110, 111
XLVII.	The Subjunctive Mood: *Purpose Clauses with* **ut** *and* **nē**	112, 113
XLVIII.	The Subjunctive Mood: *Purpose Clauses.* — *Result Clauses with* **ut** *and* **ut nōn**	114, 115
XLIX.	Indirect Question. — *Sequence of Tenses*	116, 117
L.	Reading Lesson: Caesar wins a Victory. — Review	118, 119
LI.	Numerals. — *Descriptive Ablative and Genitive*	120, 121
LII.	Numerals	122, 123
LIII.	Ten Irregular Adjectives. — Reading Lesson: Caesar and Vergil	124, 125
LIV.	The Infinitive used as in English	126, 127
LV.	Accusative and Infinitive: Indirect Statement. — *Tenses of the Infinitive*	128, 129
LVI.	The Demonstratives **īdem, ipse, iste**	130, 131
LVII.	Indefinite Pronouns. — Reading Lesson: Africa. — Review	132, 133
LVIII.	Imperative and Subjunctive: *Commands and Appeals*	134, 135
LIX.	Compounds of **sum**. — Reading Lesson: Friendship — *Dative with Compounds; Dative of Service*	136, 137
LX.	Participles. — Reading Lesson: Fabricius and the Physician	138, 139
LXI.	Participles. — *Ablative Absolute*	140, 141
LXII.	Participles: The Gerundive	142, 143
LXIII.	The Gerund	144, 145
LXIV.	The Supine. — *Ablative of Specification.* — Reading Lesson: Roman Consuls. — Review	146, 147
LXV.	Review of Verb-Forms: First and Second Conjugations. — Reading Lesson: Romulus and Remus	148, 149
LXVI.	Review of Verb-Forms: Third and Fourth Conjugations. — Reading Lesson: Romulus and Remus	150, 151

Lesson		Page
LXVII.	Deponent Verbs. — *Ablative with Certain Deponents*	152, 153
LXVIII.	The Irregular Verbs **volō, nōlō, mālō.** — *Dative with Intransitive Verbs*	154, 155
LXIX.	**Cum** Temporal, Causal, and Concessive. — Reading Lesson: Quintus Fabius Maximus	156, 157
LXX.	Conditional Sentences	158, 159
LXXI.	Review. — Reading Lesson: Rivalry of two Centurions	160, 161
LXXII.	The Irregular Verbs **eō, ferō, fīō.** — *Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.* — Reading Lesson: Rivalry of Two Centurions	162, 163
LXXIII.	Impersonal Use of Verbs. — *Relative of Purpose.* — Reading Lesson: Rivalry of Two Centurions	164, 165
LXXIV.	Periphrastic Conjugations. — *Dative of Agent*	166, 167
LXXV.	Expressions of Purpose. — Review. — Reading Lesson: The Romans win their First Naval Victory	168, 169
	Selections for Reading:	
	Anecdotes	171–173
	Stories of Hercules	173–180
	Stories of Ulysses	180–186
	Fables	186–190
	Stories from Roman History	190–198
	Caesar: Gallic War	199–202
	Appendix. Tables of Inflection, Conjugation, etc.	203–239
	Rules of Syntax	241–244
	Latin–English Vocabulary	245–290
	English–Latin Vocabulary	293–303
	Index	305–313

ILLUSTRATIONS

A Roman Orator (Statue of Cato) . . . . . *Frontispiece*

PAGE

A Roman Lady 14
Priest, Altar (āra), and Suppliant (supplex) 21
Javelin (pīlum) and Sword (gladius) 27
Trumpet (tuba) 35
Spear (hasta) 43
Roman Headdresses 51
Writing Materials, representing an inkstand (atramentārium, for black and red ink); a papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO FLAM[INI] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[S]) to Marcus Lucretius, priest of Mars, decurion, Pompeii 57
The Fall of Icarus. Icarus, following his father in flight, has fallen unseen and been washed ashore. Daedalus now discovers his lifeless body. A nymph sits near Icarus. On the left is a Greek temple 59
A Roman Coin. Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: Aeneas carrying Anchises and the Palladium. CAESAR 61
A Roman Coin. Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy and captives. CAESAR 69
A Roman Coin. Horatius Cocles at the Bridge 71
Ancient Plough (arātrum) 87
Roman Helmets (galeae) 89
Coriolanus 91
Temple (templum). Restoration of the Temple of Vesta at Rome . 95
Scipio. Ancient Statue 97
Hannibal. Ancient bust in Naples Museum 97
View of Naples and Vesuvius 108
A Roman Coin. Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy of Gallic arms. CAESAR 119
Roman Soldiers. Showing shields, helmets, swords, javelins, sandals, breast armor, sling, pack carried on a pole 123
Caesar. Bust in the Louvre, Paris 125

PAGE

Vergil. Bust at Caproni's, Boston 125
Roman Sandals 143
A Roman Coin. Obverse: veiled head of *Pietas*. CAESAR CO[N]-S[VL]TER. Reverse: *lituus* (augur's crook), *praefericulum* (dish used in sacrifices), and axe. A[VLVS] HIRTIVS PR[AEFECTVS] . 145
The Twins discovered by Faustulus 149
Roman Coins, representing military standards 151
Vinea 155
Shields (**scūta**) 163
Battering Ram (**ariēs**) 202

FIRST YEAR LATIN

ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

NOTE. — These essentials apply in the main to both English and Latin grammar.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH

NOUNS

1. A **Noun** is a word used as the name of a person, place, or thing: *boy, London, ship, book, star.*

a. A **Proper Noun** is the name of a particular person, place, or thing: *George, Boston, September, Monday.*

b. A **Common Noun** is a name that may be applied to any one of a class of objects: *boy, city, month, day.*

c. A **Collective Noun** is a name that in the singular form may be applied to a group of objects: *crowd, family, herd, committee.*

d. A **Verbal Noun** is the name of an action: *seeing, reading, writing, to see, to read, to write.*

e. An **Abstract Noun** is the name of a quality or condition: *goodness, truth, weakness, poverty.*

PRONOUNS

2. A **Pronoun** is a word used to take the place of a noun: *I, you, him, this, who.*

NOTE. — The noun for which a pronoun stands is called its **antecedent**. Thus, in ***John*** *goes to school, but* ***he*** *does not study*, the noun **John** is the antecedent of the pronoun **he**.

a. A **Personal Pronoun** is a pronoun that shows by its form whether it stands for the speaker, *I, we*, etc., that is, the **First Person**; for the person spoken to, *thou, you*, etc., that is, the **Second Person**; or for the person or thing spoken of, *he, she, it, they*, etc., that is, the **Third Person**.

NOTE. — Nouns are almost always in the third person.

b. A **Relative** (or **Conjunctive**) **Pronoun** is a pronoun that connects a subordinate clause (20), in which it stands, with the antecedent: "*The evil* ***that*** *men do lives after them.*" The relative pronouns are *who, which, what*, and *that*.

c. An **Interrogative Pronoun** is a pronoun that is used to ask a question: ***Who*** *is there?* ***What*** *shall we do?* The interrogative pronouns are *who, which*, and *what*.

d. A **Demonstrative Pronoun** is a pronoun that points out an object definitely: *this, that, these, those*.

e. An **Indefinite Pronoun** is a pronoun that points out an object indefinitely: *some, one, any, other, all*, etc.

f. A **Reflexive Pronoun** is a pronoun that refers back to the subject: *He hurt* ***himself***.

ADJECTIVES

3. An **Adjective** is a word used to qualify or limit the meaning of a noun or pronoun: ***good*** *lesson,* ***beautiful*** *moon,* ***the*** *boy,* ***five*** *girls*.

a. *A, an*, and *the*, really limiting adjectives, are sometimes called **Articles**. *The* is the **Definite Article**, *a* or *an* the **Indefinite Article**.

b. **Numeral Adjectives** are adjectives of number. They are either **Cardinal**, denoting how many: *one, two, three, four;* or **Ordinal**, denoting which in order: *first, second, third, fourth.*

c. The demonstrative pronouns, the indefinite pronouns, and the interrogative pronouns *which* and *what* may be used as adjectives, and are then called respectively **Demonstrative Adjectives**: ***this*** *book,* ***that*** *house;* **Indefinite Adjectives**: ***some*** *boys,* ***any*** *pencil;* and **Interrogative Adjectives**: ***Which*** *way shall we go?* ***What*** *man is that?*

d. Adjectives are often used as nouns: "*The land of the* ***free*** *and the home of the* ***brave.***"

VERBS

4. A **Verb** is a word used to declare or assert something about a person or thing: *I* ***ride;*** *you* ***laugh;*** *the leaf* ***falls.***

a. A **Transitive Verb** is a verb that in the active voice (28) commonly requires an object (14) to complete its meaning: *The boy* ***strikes*** *the ball; the cat* ***catches*** *a mouse.*

b. An **Intransitive Verb** is a verb that does not commonly admit an object: *Birds* ***fly;*** *I* ***walk.***

NOTE. — Certain verbs may at one time be transitive and at another intransitive: *The wind* ***blew*** *the snow into our faces; the wind* ***blew*** *furiously.*

c. A **Regular Verb** is a verb that forms its imperfect (past) tense (33) and past participle (34, *a*) by the addition of *d, t,* or *ed* to the present: present *love,* past *loved,* past participle *loved.*

d. An **Irregular Verb** is a verb that does not form its imperfect (past) tense by the addition of *d*, *t*, or *ed* to the present: present *give*, past *gave*, past participle *given*.

e. An **Auxiliary Verb** is a verb that is used in the conjugation of other verbs: *I* ***am*** *loved; do you* ***love***? *he* ***has*** *given*.

f. An **Impersonal Verb** is one that is used only in the third person singular, having no personal subject: *It rains; it snows*.

NOTE. — In Latin there are many more impersonal verbs and impersonal uses of other verbs than in English.

ADVERBS

5. An **Adverb** is a word used to modify the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb: *He walks* ***swiftly****; the orange is* ***very*** *large; he talks* ***too*** *fast*.

a. An **Adverb of Place** answers the question *where?* — *here, below, there, hence*.

b. An **Adverb of Time** answers the question *when?* — *then, now, often, seldom*.

c. An **Adverb of Manner** answers the question *how?* — *so, thus, well, ill*.

d. An **Adverb of Degree** answers the question *how much?* — *little, almost, much, very, enough*.

e. A **Modal Adverb** expresses affirmation or negation, or the degree of confidence with which a statement is made: *yes, no, certainly, perhaps*.

f. A **Relative** (or **Conjunctive**) **Adverb** connects a subordinate clause (20) with that on which it depends: *The army advanced* ***when*** *the day dawned; "Go* ***where*** *glory waits thee."*

PREPOSITIONS

6. A **Preposition** is a word used before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence: "*I stood* ***on*** *the bridge* ***at*** *midnight.*"

CONJUNCTIONS

7. A **Conjunction** is a word used to connect words, phrases (16), clauses (20), and sentences (9): *black* ***and*** *white; he was a man of honor,* ***but*** *of a bad temper; you may go* ***or*** *you may stay.*

a. A **Coördinate Conjunction** is a conjunction that connects words, phrases, clauses, and sentences of equal order or rank (20, *c*). The conjunctions in the examples above are Coordinate.

b. A **Subordinate Conjunction** is one that connects a subordinate clause (20) with a principal clause (20, *b*): *I shall go to town* ***if*** *it is pleasant; he failed* ***because*** *he was not industrious.*

INTERJECTIONS

8. An **Interjection** is a word used to express strong feeling, and is not grammatically related to any other word in the sentence: *oh! ah! alas! hurrah!*

NOTE. — The following couplets have often proved useful to young persons in identifying the parts of speech:

Three little words we often see
Are Articles, *a*, *an*, and *the.*

A Noun 's the name of anything;
As *school* or *garden*, *hoop* or *swing.*

Adjectives tell the kind of noun;
As *great*, *small*, *pretty*, *white*, or *brown.*

Instead of nouns the Pronouns stand;
His head, *her* hat, *your* arm, *my* hand.

Verbs tell of something being done;
As *read*, *write*, *spell*, *sing*, *jump*, or *run*.

How things are done the Adverbs tell;
As *slowly*, *quickly*, *ill*, or *well*.

They also tell us where and when;
As *here* and *there* and *now* and *then*.

A Preposition stands before
A noun; as *in* or *through* a door.

Conjunctions join the words together;
As rain *and* sunshine, wind *or* weather.

Conjunctions sentences unite;
As kittens scratch *and* puppies bite.

An Interjection shows surprise;
As *Oh!* how pretty! *Ah!* how wise!

THE SENTENCE

9. A **Sentence** is a group of words expressing a complete thought: *Stars shine; he walks.*

10. A **Declarative** sentence is a sentence that declares or asserts something as a fact: *Water runs down hill.* An **Interrogative** sentence is a sentence that asks a question: *Who was the second president of the United States?* An **Imperative** sentence is a sentence that expresses a request, a command, or an entreaty: "*Drink, pretty creature, drink*"; "*Stand not upon the order of your going, but go at once.*" An **Exclamatory** sentence is a sentence, whether declarative, interrogative, or imperative, that expresses strong feeling or emotion: "*How sweet the moonlight sleeps upon this bank!*"

11. A **Sentence** is made up of two parts, one called the **Subject**, and the other the **Predicate.**

a. The **Subject** represents that about which something is said or asserted: *Birds sing; you read.*

b. The **Predicate** says or asserts something about that which the subject represents: *Birds* ***sing***; *you* ***read.***

NOTE. — Either the subject or the predicate or both may be enlarged to any extent by the addition of qualifying words and expressions called modifiers: *My sister's small* ***birds*** | ***sing*** *sweetly in the morning.*

12. The **Simple Subject** is the noun or pronoun which signifies that about which the assertion is made. The **Simple Predicate** is the verb that makes the assertion. *Birds* is the simple subject, and *sing* the simple predicate in the preceding note.

13. The **Complete Subject** is the simple subject with all its modifiers. The **Complete Predicate** is the simple predicate with all its modifiers. Thus in the example of the note under 11 the complete subject is all that precedes the vertical line, and the complete predicate all that follows it.

14. The **Object** of a verb is a word or expression that completes the meaning of the verb, and signifies that which receives the action: *I fold the* ***paper.***

NOTE. — The **Direct Object** represents that which is immediately affected by the action of the verb; the **Indirect Object** that to or for which the action is performed. Thus in *he gave* ***me*** *the* ***book***, *book* is the direct object, and *me* the indirect.

15. A **Predicate Noun** or a **Predicate Adjective** is a noun or an adjective used after certain intransitive or passive verbs to complete their meaning, and to describe or define the subject: *George is a* ***farmer***; *Lincoln was elected* ***president***; *the workmen are* ***busy***; *those men are reputed wise.*

a. The predicate noun or adjective is called the **Complement** of the verb. Intransitive verbs that require a complement are called **Copulative Verbs**. The verb *be* in its various forms (*am*, *was*, *has been*, etc.) is often called the **Copula**.

b. The predicate noun has the same case as the subject; hence the term **Predicate Nominative**.

16. A **Phrase** is a combination of words (not subject and predicate) used as a single part of speech. in *a man **of honor**, of honor* is an **Adjective Phrase** because it modifies the noun *man*; in *the sun shines **by day**, by day* is an **Adverbial Phrase** because it limits the verb *shines*.

17. A **Simple Sentence** is a sentence containing but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: *The boy bats the ball.*

18. A **Compound Sentence** is a sentence containing two or more independent statements: "***It rains** and **the wind is never weary**.*"

NOTE. — An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend upon (qualify or limit) another statement.

19. A **Complex Sentence** is a sentence containing one independent (principal) and one or more dependent (subordinate) statements: *We hastened home | when the clouds began to gather.*

NOTE. — A dependent or subordinate statement is one that qualifies or limits another in some way; thus the dependent statement, *when the clouds began to gather* limits the verb *hastened*, telling *when* we hastened.

20. The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called **clauses**, and as has already been seen, they may be either **independent (principal)** or **dependent (subordinate)**.

a. Dependent or subordinate clauses are named from their use **Adjective Clauses**: *A man who is honorable is respected;* **Adverbial Clauses**: *We go in when it rains;* or **Substantive Clauses**: ***That my friend has lost his watch*** *is certainly true.*

b. The independent clause of a complex sentence is called the **Principal Clause**. Any clause that has another dependent upon it may be called a principal clause.

c. Connected clauses that are of the same rank, both independent, or both dependent, are said to be **Coördinate.**

INFLECTION

21. **Inflection** is a change in the form of a word to indicate a change in its meaning or use: *dog, dogs; man, men; love, loves, loved.*

DECLENSION

22. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called its **Declension**. Nouns and pronouns are declined to show number and case, and a few nouns to show gender.

NOTE. — In Latin, adjectives also are declined in gender, number, and case, to agree with the nouns which they modify.

NUMBER

23. A noun or pronoun is in the **Singular Number** when it means one: *hat, ox, I;* in the **Plural Number** when it means more than one: *hats, oxen, we.*

CASE

24. There are three cases in English:

1. The **Nominative**, primarily used as the subject of a sentence: ***He*** *throws the ball.*

2. The **Possessive (Genitive)**, used to denote possession or ownership: *John throws* ***his*** *ball; see the* ***queen's*** *crown.*

3. The **Objective**, used as the object of a transitive verb or of a preposition: *John throws the* ***ball*** *to* ***him.***

a. Only personal pronouns and the relative pronoun *who* have, in English, three case-forms. Nouns have the nominative and objective alike, with a separate form for the possessive (genitive).

b. In Latin there are seven cases; but the forms of the cases are not all different.

Gender

25. The gender of English nouns is what is called **Natural Gender**, and hence has very little to do with grammar. Thus, a noun denoting a male is in the **Masculine Gender**: *man, boy, father;* a noun denoting a female is in the **Feminine Gender**: *woman, girl, mother;* one denoting either male or female is in the **Common Gender**: *cat, dog, parent;* one denoting a sexless object is in the **Neuter Gender**: *river, wind, mountain.*

a. In Latin only nouns that denote persons and some animals have natural gender: **nauta**, *sailor* (masc.), **māter**, *mother* (fem.). All others have an arbitrary gender, called **Grammatical Gender**, determined chiefly by the ending.

COMPARISON

26. The inflection of adjectives and adverbs to show degree (higher or lower) is called **Comparison**. There are three degrees of comparison, the **Positive**, the **Comparative**, and the **Superlative**: positive *wise*, comparative *wiser*,

superlative *wisest;* positive *good*, comparative *better*, superlative *best;* positive *often*, comparative *oftener*, superlative *oftenest.*

a. Adjectives and adverbs are also compared in English by prefixing the adverbs *more* and *most, less* and *least: beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful; wisely, less wisely, least wisely.*

NOTE. — Comparison in Latin is indicated by change of form, and sometimes by the use of adverbs.

CONJUGATION

27. The inflection of a verb is called **Conjugation.** Verbs are conjugated to show voice, mood, and tense, and the number and person of the subject.

a. The English verb has but few changes of form. Thus the verb *love* has in common use only the forms *love, loves, loving*, and *loved;* the verb *rise* has *rise, rises, rising, rose*, and *risen.* Most of the conjugation of the verb is made up of *verb phrases* formed by the use of auxiliaries: *I am loved, I shall love, I shall have been loved*, etc.

NOTE. — The statement in 27, however, is true of the Latin verb, which has many changes of form, as will be seen.

VOICE

28. A verb is in the **Active Voice** when it represents the subject as acting (or being): *James* ***struck*** *John;* in the **Passive Voice** when it represents the subject as acted upon: *John* ***was struck*** *by James.*

a. Intransitive verbs are used only in the active voice.

Mood

29. A verb is in the **Indicative Mood** when it states a fact or is used in a question: *Roses **bloom**; **why do you smile**?*

30. A verb is in the **Subjunctive Mood** when it asserts something doubtfully or conditionally. It is used in subordinate clauses, and is usually introduced by *if*, *though*, and the like: *If he **were** here, I **should** be glad*; "*Though he **slay** me, yet **will** I **trust** in him.*"

Note. — The subjunctive mood as a separate form is very little used in modern English, its place being taken by the indicative. In Latin, on the other hand, the subjunctive has a great variety of uses.

31. A verb is in the **Imperative Mood** when it expresses a command or an entreaty: ***Draw** your swords*; "***Give** me of thy bark, O birch tree.*"

a. The subject of the imperative (*thou* or *you*) is seldom expressed.

The Infinitive

32. The **Infinitive** (*to love*, *to have loved*, etc.) is a verbal noun. It has neither person nor number, and is not used in making assertions. Like a noun it may be the subject or the complement of a verb: ***To see is to believe.*** Like a verb it may have an object and adverbial modifiers: *We like **to begin our work early**.*

a. The infinitive may also be used in other noun relations, and sometimes as an adjective or adverb.

b. The verbal noun in **-ing**, corresponding to the Latin gerund, is by some regarded as an infinitive: ***Seeing is believing = to see is to believe.***

Tense

33. A verb is in the **Present, Imperfect (Past),** or **Future Tense** according as it represents an action as taking place in present, past, or future time: *I love, I loved, I shall love.*

a. The **Perfect (Present Perfect) Tense** represents an action as completed in the present: *I have loved;* the **Pluperfect (Past Perfect)**, as completed in the past: *I had loved;* and the **Future Perfect**, as completed in the future: *I shall have loved.*

The Participle

34. A **Participle** is a verbal adjective. Like an adjective it may qualify a noun: *a **living** death, a **driven** well.* Like a verb it may have an object and adverbial modifiers: *Knowing the **candidate intimately**, we shall not hesitate to vote for him.*

a. There are in English three participles in the active voice: present *loving*, past *loved*, perfect *having loved;* and three in the passive voice: present (*being*) *loved*, past *loved*, perfect *having been loved.*

b. The participle in **-ing** is used with the auxiliary *be* to make the **Progressive Form** of the verb: *You are loving, he was loving.*

Note. — The Latin has no special tenses for the progressive form.

35. A **Finite Verb** is a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood.

A Roman Lady

INTRODUCTORY

The sections on pronunciation may be most profitably used for reference. Pupils catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher, and, if they make mistakes, are interested in being referred to rules. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the poem on page 18, pronouncing slowly each line, the pupils following successively, and then together.

ALPHABET

36. The Latin alphabet has no *j* or *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

37. *I* does service both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the force of a consonant, and is called *i-consonant*.

38. Of the consonants

The mutes are . . . . . **p, b, t, d, c, k, g, q.**
The liquids are . . . . . **l, m, n, r.**
The sibilant is . . . . . **s.**
The double consonants are . . **x** = *cs* or *gs*, **z** = *ds*.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, ROMAN METHOD

39. VOWELS

ā like the last *a* in *aha′*.	**ă** like the first *a* in *aha′*.
ē as in *they*.	**ĕ** as in *met*.
ī as in *machine*.	**ĭ** as in *pin*.
ō as in *note*.	**ŏ** as in *obey*.
ū like *oo* in *boot*.	**ŭ**[1] like *oo* in *foot*.

[1] In *qu*, *gu*, and sometimes in *su*, before a vowel, *u* is a semivowel or consonant, is pronounced like *w*, and joined in utterance with the preceding letter; so likewise in **cui** and **huic**: **quis, quī**, *who*, **an′-guis**, *snake*, **cōn-suē′-tus**, *accustomed*.

40. DIPHTHONGS

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.
ei (rare) like *ei* in *eight*.
eu (rare) like *eu* in *feud*.
au like *ou* in *our*.
oe like *oi* in *boil*.

41. CONSONANTS

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in English. But observe the following:

c as in *come*.
i-consonant like *y* in *yet*.
t as in *time*.
ch like *k* in *kite*.
g as in *get*.
s as in *sun*.
v like *w* in *wine*.
ph like *f* in *far*.

SYLLABLES

42. 1. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **ae-gri-tū′-dō**, *sickness*.

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: **a-mā′-bi-lis**, *amiable*.

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the second vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: **im′-pro-bus**, *bad*; **ho′-spes**, *guest*.

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts: **ab′-est** (**ab**, *away*; **est**, *he is*), *he is away*.

5. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

QUANTITY

43. 1. Vowels are *long* (–) or *short* (⏑). In this book the long vowels are marked, except in some titles; unmarked vowels must be regarded as short.

2. A vowel is short before a vowel or *h*: **pŏ-ē′-ma**, *poem*; **grā′-tĭ-ae**, *thanks*; **nĭ′-hil**, *nothing*.

3. Vowels are long before *nf*, *ns*, and *gn*: **ĭn-fāns**, *infant*; **ī-gnis**, *fire*.

4. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction are long: **in-cau̅′-tus**, *heedless*; **in-ī′-quus** (**inaequus**), *unequal*; **cō′-gō** (**cŏăgō**), *collect*.

5. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **vō′-cēs**, *voices*; **ae′-dēs**, *temple*.

6. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute followed by *l* or *r*), or by *x* or *z*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: **sunt**, *they are*; **tem′-plum**, *temple*; **dux**, *leader*.

ACCENT

44. 1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: **tu′-ba**, *trumpet*.

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when it is long, otherwise on the antepenult: **prae-dī′-cō**, *foretell*; **prae′-di-cō**, *declare*; **il-le′-ce-brae**, *snares*; **pa-ter′-nus**, *paternal*.

3. Several words, called enclitics, of which the commonest are **-ne**, the sign of a question, and **-que**, *and*, are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the enclitic: **amat′-ne**, *does he love?* **dōna′-que**, *and gifts*.

45. The following Latin version of "Twinkle, twinkle, Little Star," from *Arundines Cami*, may be used for practice in pronunciation, and for illustration of the preceding statements. See introductory note, p. 15.

MICĀ, MICĀ

Micā,[1] micā, parva stella!
Mīror quaenam sīs, tam bella!
Splendēns ēminus in illō,
Alba velut gemma, caelō.

Quandō fervēns Sōl discessit,
Nec calōre prāta pāscit,
Mox ostendis lūmen pūrum,
Micāns, micāns per obscūrum.

Tibi, noctū quī vagātur,
Ob scintillulam grātātur;
Nī micārēs tū, nōn scīret
Quās per viās errāns īret.

Meum saepe thálamum lūce
Speculāris cūriōsā;
Neque carpseris sopōrem
Dōnec vēnit Sōl per auram.

CASES

46. The names of the cases in Latin are: *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *ablative*, *vocative*, *locative*. Their characteristics of form, meaning, and use are illustrated in the paradigms and exercises which follow.

[1] The rhythm of these lines depends on accent, as in English poetry, not on quantity, as in classic Latin poetry.

a. The Vocative is always the same as the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the second declension.

b. In neuters the Nominative and Accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in **ă**.

c. The Accusative singular of all masculines and feminines ends in **m**; the Accusative plural in **s**.

d. The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike.

GENDER

47. The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

General Rules of Gender

1. Nouns denoting males and names of rivers, winds, and months are *masculine:* **agricola,** *farmer;* **Cicerō,** *Cicero;* **Padus,** *Po;* **aquilō,** *north wind;* **Iānuārius,** *January.*

2. Nouns denoting females and names of countries, towns, islands, and trees are *feminine:* **rēgīna,** *queen;* **Tullia,** *Tullia;* **Āfrica,** *Africa;* **Rōma,** *Rome;* **Sicilia,** *Sicily;* **pirus,** *pear tree.*

3. Indeclinable nouns are *neuter:* **nihil,** *nothing.*

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION

The Subject — Nominative Case

Singular and Plural of Nouns and Verbs

48. *Models*

	Noun		Verb
Sing.	hasta, *spear.*	*Sing.*	volat, *flies.*[1]
Plur.	hastae, *spears.*	*Plur.*	volant, *fly.*

a. Form the plural of the nouns in the vocabulary, then the plural of the verbs, according to the models.

49. VOCABULARY

Nouns	Verbs
columba, f. *dove.*	ambulat, *walks.*
hasta, f. *spear* (p. 43).	cantat, *sings.*
nauta, m. *sailor.*	natat, *swims.*
puella, f. *girl.*	saltat, *dances.*
sagitta, f. *arrow.*	sonat, *sounds, resounds.*
tuba, f. *trumpet* (p. 35).	volat, *flies, speeds on.*
Conjunction	**Interrogative Pronoun**
et, *and.*	quis, *who?* quid, *what?*

50. *Model Sentences*

1. Puella cantat, *the girl sings.*
2. Puellae cantant, *the girls sing.*
3. Cantatne puella, *does the girl sing?*
4. Cantantne puellae, *do the girls sing?*

[1] Also *is flying, does fly.* So of other verbs.

a. In Latin there is no article: **puella** may be translated *girl*, *a girl*, or *the girl*; and **puellae**, *girls* or *the girls*.

b. What is the subject in each of the model sentences, and what is the predicate?

c. Observe that the verbs agree with their subjects in number.

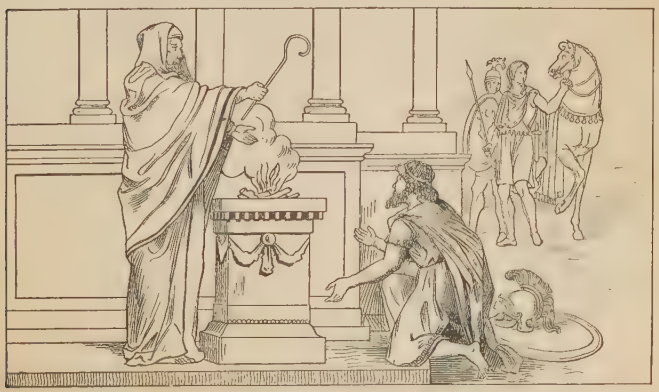
d. Observe that **-ne** is the sign of a question, but is not separately translated (44, 3).

51. Rule. — *The subject of a verb is in the nominative.*

52. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hasta volat. 2. Hastae volant. 3. Nauta natat. 4. Nautae natant. 5. Ambulatne puella? 6. Puellae ambulant. 7. Columbaene volant? 8. Sagitta volat. 9. Sonatne tuba? 10. Quis natat? 11. Puella natat. 12. Quis ambulat? 13. Nauta ambulat. 14. Nautae cantant et saltant.

II. 1. The sailor dances. 2. Do the sailors dance? 3. Who is singing? 4. Girls are singing. 5. What is flying? 6. The spear is flying. 7. Are trumpets resounding? 8. Spears and arrows fly. 9. The dove walks and flies.



PRIEST, ALTAR, AND SUPPLIANT

LESSON II

FIRST DECLENSION — *Continued*

The Stem[1] ends in *a*

The Direct Object — Accusative Case

53. *Paradigm*

	Singular	Terminations
Nom.	hasta, *a spear* (as subject).	-a
Gen.	hastae, *of a spear*, or *spear's*.	-ae
Dat.	hastae, *to* or *for a spear*.	-ae
Acc.	hastam, *a spear* (as object).	-am
Abl.	hastā, *with, from, by a spear*.	-ā
	Plural	
Nom.	hastae, *spears* (as subject).	-ae
Gen.	hastārum, *of spears*, or *spears'*.	-ārum
Dat.	hastīs, *to* or *for spears*.	-īs[2]
Acc.	hastās, *spears* (as object).	-ās
Abl.	hastīs, *with, from, by spears*.	-īs

a. The vocative, the case of address, has the same form as the nominative. For the locative case, see 195–197.

b. Terminations consist of case-endings joined with the final letter of the stem; but sometimes the final letter of the stem disappears, and sometimes the case-ending. That part of the word which remains unchanged in inflection, and to which the terminations are added is called the *base:* hast-.

c. Form the nominative plural and the accusative singular and plural of each noun in 55. Form the plural of the verbs.

[1] The stem is the body of the word to which endings are added to express the relation of the word to other words.

[2] Fīlia, *daughter*, and dea, *goddess*, have the termination -ābus in the dative and ablative plural.

54. Rule of Gender. — *Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.*

55. VOCABULARY

Nouns	Verbs
agricola, m. *farmer.*	**amat**, *loves, likes.*
aqua, f. *water.*	**arat**, *ploughs.*
Galba, m. *Galba.*	**habet**, *has.*
stella, f. *star.*	**laudat**, *praises.*
terra, f. *land, country.*	**videt**, *sees.*

Interrogative Pronoun

Nom.	**quis**, *who?*	**quid**, *what?*
Acc.	**quem**, *whom?*	**quid**, *what?*

56. *Model Sentences*

1. **Agricola terram arat**, *the farmer ploughs the land.*
2. **Nautae agricolās laudant**, *the sailors praise the farmers.*

a. Observe that **terram** is the object of **arat**, and **agricolās** of **laudant**. Point out the objects in the sentences of 58.

b. Imitate the order of the Latin in writing Latin sentences.

57. Rule. — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.*

58. EXERCISES

I. 1. Galba tubam laudat. 2. Tubāsne laudat Galba? 3. Puellae tubās laudant. 4. Nauta stellam videt. 5. Nautae stellās vident. 6. Quis Galbam videt? 7. Quem videt Galba? 8. Galba, quis terram arat? Agricola terram arat. 9. Arantne agricolae terram? 10. Quid volat? Sagitta volat.

II. 1. Who is walking? The sailor is walking. 2. The sailors are walking. 3. What has the farmer? The farmer has land. 4. Does Galba praise the farmers? 5. The girl sees the water and the land. 6. Do the girls love the doves?

LESSON III

FIRST CONJUGATION — Ā-VERBS

Amō, amāre (stem **amā-**), *love*

59. Latin verbs are divided into four classes or conjugations, distinguished from one another by the stem vowel before the ending **-re** of the active infinitive present.

I.	**amāre**, *to love*,	distinguishing vowel		**ā.**
II.	**monēre**, *to advise*,	"	"	**ē.**
III.	**regĕre**, *to rule*,	"	"	**ĕ.**
IV.	**audīre**, *to hear*,	"	"	**ī.**

60. *Paradigm*

ACTIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1st Person.	**amō**, *I love, am loving, do love.*	**-ō** (or **-m**), *I.*
2d Person.	**amās**, *you love, are loving, do love.*	**-s**, *thou* or *you.*
3d Person.	**amat**, *he loves, is loving, does love.*	**-t**, *he, she, it.*
	PLURAL	
1st Person.	**amāmus**, *we love, are loving, do love.*	**-mus**, *we.*
2d Person.	**amātis**, *you love, are loving, do love.*	**-tis**, *you.*
3d Person.	**amant**, *they love, are loving, do love.*	**-nt**, *they.*

a. Observe that in **amō** the final **ā** of the stem disappears, giving **amō** instead of **amaō**. In what forms is this **a** not marked long?

b. In the preceding lessons verbs have been used only in the third person, in the singular ending in **-t**, and in the plural ending in **-nt**. The above paradigm shows that verbs change their ending to denote person as well as number.

61. Rule. — *A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

a. When the subject is in the first or the second person, it is not commonly expressed. Why is it not necessary to express it?

b. When no subject is expressed with the third person of the Latin verb, translate with *he*, *she*, *it* in the singular, and *they* in the plural.

c. Like **amō** inflect the following verbs in the active indicative present.

62.

INDICATIVE PRESENT	INFINITIVE PRESENT
ambulō, *I walk.*	**ambulāre**, *to walk.*
arō, *I plough.*	**arāre**, *to plough.*
cantō, *I sing.*	**cantāre**, *to sing.*
laudō, *I praise.*	**laudāre**, *to praise.*
natō, *I swim.*	**natāre**, *to swim.*
saltō, *I dance.*	**saltāre**, *to dance.*
sonō, *I sound.*	**sonāre**, *to sound.*
volō, *I fly.*	**volāre**, *to fly.*

63. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ambulat, arat, cantat. 2. Arantne? cantantne? laudantne? 3. Natās, saltās, sonās. 4. Amāmus, volāmus, ambulāmus. 5. Arātis, cantātis, amātis. 6. Ambulāre, amant, natat. 7. Cantāre, ambulātis, laudāmus. 8. Amat, volāre, sonant.

II. 1. I do swim, he swims, I am swimming. 2. Do we dance? we sing, does he praise? 3. They are flying, he loves, you walk. 4. You are praising, they swim, he does dance. 5. He ploughs, to swim, do they love?

64. CONVERSATION

1. Quis columbam amat? Puella columbam amat.
2. Quem laudās? Galbam laudō.
3. Quid volat? Columba volat.
4. Arantne agricolae terram? Terram arant.
5. Nautae, quem laudātis? Agricolās laudāmus.

LESSON IV

FIRST DECLENSION — *Continued*

The Genitive Case

65. *a.* Observe in the paradigm (53) that the genitive singular has the same form as the dative singular and the nominative plural.

b. Observe carefully in the paradigm the English equivalents of the genitive.

c. Form the genitive singular and plural of the nouns in the following vocabulary.

d. Like **amō** inflect the verbs in the vocabulary.

66. VOCABULARY

Nouns	Verbs[3]
fēmina, -ae,[1] f. *woman.*	**dēlectō**, **dēlectāre**, *delight.*
fīlia,[2] -ae, f. *daughter.*	**fugō**, **fugāre**, *put to flight, rout.*
fortūna, -ae, f. *fortune.*	**līberō**, **līberāre**, *set free, free.*
poēta, -ae, m. *poet.*	**ōrnō**, **ōrnāre**, *adorn, deck.*
rēgīna, -ae, f. *queen.*	**portō**, **portāre**, *carry, bring.*

Interrogative Pronoun

Gen. **cūius**, *of whom? whose? of what?*

67. *Model Sentences*

1. **Fīliae nautae cantant,** { *the daughters of the sailor sing,* or, *the sailor's daughters sing.*
2. **Columbae puellārum volant,** { *the doves of the girls are flying,* or, *the girls' doves are flying.*

[1] In the vocabularies the genitive ending is added to show the declension.

[2] For peculiarity in declension of **fīlia**, see p. 22, foot-note 2.

[3] Hereafter the general meaning of the verb will be given, not the meaning of any particular form.

a. Observe that **nautae** limits **fīliae**; not all daughters, but only those of the sailor are meant. In the same way **puellārum** limits **columbae.**

68. Rule. — *A noun limiting another, and not denoting the same person or thing, is in the genitive.*

69. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dēlectat, fugāmus, līberās. 2. Ōrnāmus, portant, dēlectās. 3. Dēlectāmus, fugātis, līberant. 4. Līberatne? līberō, portāmus. 5. Dēlectāre, ōrnāre, portāre.

6. Columbās agricolārum līberant. 7. Fortūna poētae rēgīnam dēlectat. 8. Laudāmus fīliās fēminae. 9. Fīliane Galbae rēgīnam ōrnat? 10. Stellae fīliās nautārum dēlectant.

II. 1. I plough the farmer's land. 2. I plough the farmers' land. 3. The poets' daughters love the land. 4. They put to flight the girl's dove. 5. Do they bring Galba's spears? 6. They adorn the queens' daughters.

70. CONVERSATION

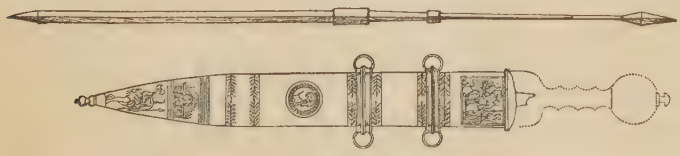
1. Quis poētam laudat? Fīlia rēgīnae poētam **laudat.**

2. Amātisne Galbam? Galbam amāmus.

3. Puella, cūius hastam portās? Galbae hastam portō.

4. Cūius rosae (*roses*) puellam ōrnant? Fēminae rosae puellam ōrnant.

5. Quid portātis? Sagittās et tubam portāmus.



"Thine, Roman, is the pilum,
Roman, the sword is thine."

LESSON V

SECOND CONJUGATION — Ē-VERBS

moneō, monēre (stem **monē-**), *advise*

71. *Paradigm*

ACTIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT

SINGULAR

1st Person.	**moneō**, *I advise, am advising, do advise.*
2d Person.	**monēs**, *you advise, are advising, do advise.*
3d Person.	**monet**, *he advises, is advising, does advise.*

PLURAL

1st Person.	**monēmus**, *we advise, are advising, do advise.*
2d Person.	**monētis**, *you advise, are advising, do advise.*
3d Person.	**monent**, *they advise, are advising, do advise.*

a. Review the table of personal endings (60).

b. Observe that to the stem **monē-** the same endings are added to inflect **moneō** that were added to the stem **amā-** to inflect **amō**.

c. Observe the three forms where **moneō** has not the **e** of the stem marked long. Compare forms of **amō** (60).

d. To the stems **docē-**, **habē-**, **terrē-**, **vidē-** add the personal endings (60) omitting the long mark in the proper places.

72. VOCABULARY

advena, -ae, m. and f. *stranger.*
Cornēlia, -ae, f. *Cornelia.*
incola, -ae, m. and f. *inhabitant.*
pecūnia, -ae, f. *money.*
pīrāta, -ae, m. *pirate.*

docēō, docēre, *teach.*
habeō, habēre, *have.*
moneō, monēre, *advise, warn.*
terreō, terrēre, *scare, frighten.*
videō, vidēre, *see.*

cūr, adv. *why?*
quia, conj. *because.*

73. EXERCISES

I. 1. Habēs, docēs, monēs. 2. Terrentne? videntne? monentne? 3. Monēmus, docēmus, habēmus. 4. Moneō, habētis, terret. 5. Vidētis, vidēmus, habet. 6. Terrēmus, videō, terrētis. 7. Habēre, terrēre, vidēre. 8. Monētis, terreō, docent.

9. Advena fīliās poētae docet. 10. Pīrātae pecūniam incolārum habent. 11. Fortūna fīliārum fēminam dēlectat. 12. Quis incolās monet? Galba incolās monet.

II. 1. They are advising, they have, I am warning. 2. You frighten, we see, does he teach?

3. Do they teach the girls? 4. The pirates frighten the inhabitants. 5. They have the queen's money. 6. The trumpets sound, and scare the doves.

74. REVIEW

1. What is the gender of **stella, terra, tuba**? 2. What is the gender of **agricola, poēta, Galba**? 3. Give the rule for the gender of nouns of the first declension. 4. In the sentence **puella ambulat**, what is the predicate? 5. What is the predicate in **agricola terram arat**? 6. Point out the subject, the predicates, and the object in 73, II. 6. 7. What English case corresponds to the Latin accusative? 8. Is **saltō** a sentence? 9. Is *dances* a sentence?

75. CONVERSATION

1. Quid vidētis? Pīrātās vidēmus.

2. Quem docēs et monēs? Advenam doceō et moneō.

3. Cūr stellās amātis et laudātis? Quia micant (*twinkle*).

4. Cūius pecūniam habet Cornēlia? Poētae pecūniam habet Cornēlia.

LESSON VI

FIRST DECLENSION — *Continued*

THE INDIRECT OBJECT — DATIVE CASE. ABLATIVE WITH in

76. *a.* Like **hasta** decline **fābula, domina, lūna.**

b. Form the dative and the ablative singular and plural of the nouns in the following vocabulary.

77. VOCABULARY

domina, -ae, f. *mistress, lady.*
fābula, -ae, f. *story, tale.*
īnsula, -ae, f. *island.*
lūna, -ae, f. *moon.*
rosa, -ae, f. *rose.*
via, -ae, f. *way, road, street.*

dōnō, dōnāre, *give.*
habitō, habitāre, *dwell, live.*
lūceō, lūcēre, *shine.*
maneō, manēre, *remain.*
mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, *show, point out.*
nārrō, nārrāre, *tell, relate.*

PREPOSITION

in, with abl., *in, on.*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

Dat. **cui**, *to* or *for whom? to* or *for what?*

a. Which of the above are ā-verbs and inflected like **amō**? Which are ē-verbs and inflected like **moneō**? How do you know? Inflect all in the active indicative present.

78. *Model Sentence*

Poēta rēgīnae rosam dōnat, { (*the poet to the queen a rose gives*)[1] / Eng., *the poet gives the queen a rose.*

a. Observe that *what* the poet gives is a *rose* (**rosam**), the *direct object; the person to whom* he gives it is the *queen* (**rēgīnae**), the *indirect object.*

79. Rule. — *The indirect object is in the dative.*

[1] NOTE. — The first rendering of the Latin sentence in 78 into English words is a *metaphrase*, that is, a word by word, or literal, rendering; the second is a *translation*. A metaphrase of every Latin sentence in the exercises should first be given, and then be followed by a translation.

80. *Model Sentence*

Columbās videō in viā, { (*doves I see in the road*)
Eng., *I see doves in the road.*

a. Observe that **in** with the ablative answers the question *where?*

81. Rule. — *Place where, not including names of towns, is expressed by the ablative with a preposition, usually* **in**.

a. Point out the direct and the indirect objects in 82, I. and II.

82. EXERCISES

I. 1. Lūna dominae viam mōnstrat. 2. Cornēlia puellīs fābulam nārrat. 3. Lūcentne lūna et stellae? 4. Agricola poētīs īnsulam mōnstrat. 5. Īnsula poētam dēlectat. 6. Et in īnsulā habitat. 7. Pīrātae in aquā manent. 8. Nautae fēminae īnsulās mōnstrant. 9. Incolae in terrā habitant. 10. Pīrātae fēminās terrent et fugant. 11. Poētae fīliābus fābulās nārrant.

II. 1. For the farmer. 2. On the islands. 3. To the inhabitants. 4. In the road. 5. For the doves. 6. On the ways. 7. In the moon. 8. For the daughters.

9. He shows the woman a rose. 10. They give the daughters roses. 11. They bring roses for the strangers. 12. Do the pirates live on an island?

83. CONVERSATION

1. Cui viam mōnstrat Galba? Advenae viam mōnstrat Galba.
2. Cūr in īnsulīs habitātis? Quia īnsulās amāmus.
3. Cui pecūniam dōnās? Nautae pecūniam dōnō.
4. Cūius columbās līberās? Puellae columbās līberō.
5. Quid poētam ōrnat? Rosae poētam ōrnant.

LESSON VII

SECOND DECLENSION

The Stem ends in *o*

84. *Paradigms*

	hortus, m. *garden.*		**dōnum**, n. *gift.*	
		SINGULAR		
		TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS
Nom.	hortus	-us	dōnum	-um
Gen.	hortī	-ī	dōnī	-ī
Dat.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō
Acc.	hortum	-um	dōnum	-um
Abl.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō
		PLURAL		
Nom.	hortī	-ī	dōna	-a
Gen.	hortōrum	-ōrum	dōnōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	hortīs	-īs	dōnīs	-īs
Acc.	hortōs	-ōs	dōna	-a
Abl.	hortīs	-īs	dōnīs	-īs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension has a special form in ĕ: **hortĕ**, (*O*) *garden*. For the locative case, see 195–197.

b. For rules for case-endings, see 46, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*.

c. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** generally contract the genitive ending **-iī** to **-ī**: **cōnsilium**, gen. **cōnsil'ī**, *advice*, *plan*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative.

d. **Fīlius**, *son*, and proper names in **-ius** also contract **ie** in the vocative to **ī**: **fīlī**, (*O*) *son;* **Mercurius**, voc. **Mercu'rī**, (*O*) *Mercury*. The rule for the accent is the same as in *c*.

85. **Rule of Gender.** — *Nouns of the second declension ending in* **-um** *are neuter; most others are masculine.*

86. VOCABULARY

amīcus, -ī, m. *friend.*
dominus, -ī, m. *master, owner.*
equus, -ī, m. *horse.*
hortus, -ī, m. *garden.*
Mārcus, -ī, m. *Marcus.*
servus, -ī, m. *servant, slave.*
aurum, -ī, n. *gold.*
dōnum, -ī, n. *gift, present.*
frūmentum, -ī, n. *grain.*
oppidum, -ī, n. *town.*
pōculum, -ī, n. *cup.*
vīnum, -ī, n. *wine.*

87. REVIEW

1. What is the case of the subject? Give the rule. 2. What is the case of the direct object? Give the rule. 3. What is the case of the indirect object? Give the rule. 4. What case answers to our possessive? 5. Give the rule for the genitive.

88. EXERCISES

I. 1. Pōculum lūcet; pōcula lūcent. 2. Oppidum videō; oppida vidēmus. 3. Dominusne servum monet? Servōs, domine, monēs. 4. Equus dōnum frūmentī amat. 5. Equī dominōrum servōs dēlectant. 6. Mārcus amīcō fābulam nārrat. 7. Dominī amīcīs dōna aurī dōnant. 8. In oppidīs amīcōs habēmus. 9. Servī equīs frūmentum et aquam portant.

II. 1. The grain delights the horse. 2. The gifts of gold delight the masters. 3. Marcus, have you friends in the garden? 4. The servant brings wine in cups for the friends. 5. Do (his) friends show Marcus a gift? 6. We see the town and the gardens of the town. 7. The lady teaches.

89. CONVERSATION

1. Quid habēs, serve, in pōculō? Vīnum in pōculō habeō.
2. Cui vīnum portās? Amīcō vīnum in pōculō portō.
3. Quem equus terret? Cornēliam equus terret.
4. Cūius equus Cornēliam terret? Mārcīne equus Cornēliam terret?

LESSON VIII

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Agreement of Adjectives

90. Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined like nouns of those declensions, according as they modify masculine, feminine, or neuter nouns.

91. *Paradigm*

	Masculine		Feminine		Neuter	
Nom.	hortus	bonus	hasta	bona	dōnum	bonum
Gen.	hortī	bonī	hastae	bonae	dōnī	bonī
Dat.	hortō	bonō	hastae	bonae	dōnō	bonō
	etc.		etc.		etc.	

a. Complete the declension of the above paradigm. See 84, *a*.

b. For the full declension of **bonus**, see 483.

92. Rule. — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

Note. — The rule does not mean that adjectives must have the *same endings* as their nouns. If, for example, an adjective is joined with a masculine noun of the first declension, the endings of the noun and adjective are not the same, as is shown in the following

93. *Paradigm*

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	nauta	bonus	nautae	bonī
Gen.	nautae	bonī	nautārum	bonōrum
Dat.	nautae	bonō	nautīs	bonīs
	etc.		etc.	

a. Complete the declension of **nauta bonus.** Decline together, adding the vocative case, **amīcus cārus,** *dear friend;* **columba alba,** *white dove;* **pōculum māgnum,** *large cup;* **agricola validus,** *strong farmer;* **poēta grātus,** *pleasing poet.*

94. VOCABULARY

Nouns	Adjectives
carrus, -ī, m. *wagon, cart.*	**bonus, bona, bonum,** *good, kind.*
cibus, -ī, m. *food.*	**cārus, cāra, cārum,** *dear.*
oppidānus, -ī, m. *townsman.*	**clārus, clāra, clārum,** *clear, famous.*
pīlum, -ī, n. *javelin* (p. 27).	**grātus, grāta, grātum,** *pleasing, welcome.*
rēmus, -ī, m. *oar.*	**māgnus, māgna, māgnum,** *great, large.*
ventus, -ī, m. *wind.*	**validus, valida, validum,** *strong, robust.*

nōn, adv. *not.* **ubi,** adv. *where.* **est,** *he, she, it is.* **sunt,** *they are.*

95. EXERCISES

I. 1. Equōs māgnōs laudāmus. 2. Poētae clārī cantant. 3. Galba amīcō cārō aurum dōnat. 4. Dōnum Galbae bonum amīcum dēlectat. 5. Nauta validus rēmōs validōs habet. 6. Clārōs poētās videt puella. 7. Ventī māgnī nautās nōn terrent. 8. Ubi est, cāre Mārce, frūmentum agricolārum? Estne in māgnō carrō? 9. Oppidānī pīla pīrātārum vident.

II. 1. A great wagon; strong oars; the robust pirates. 2. Good inhabitants; of good water; strong townsmen. 3. The good master has a good slave. 4. He gives the good slave a welcome gift. 5. Is the slave's food in the garden? 6. Dear Cornelia, where do (your) daughters live? They live in the great town. 7. They love the town and the kind townsmen. 8. To the famous poet they give white roses.

TRUMPET

LESSON IX

The Verb **sum** — Indicative Present

Predicate Noun and Predicate Adjective

96. *Paradigm*

	Singular	Plural
1st Person.	**sum**, *I am.*	**sumus**, *we are.*
2d Person.	**es**, *you are.*	**estis**, *you are.*
3d Person.	**est**, *he, she,* or *it is.*	**sunt**, *they are.*

97. VOCABULARY

bellum, **-ī**, n. *war.*
Britannia, **-ae**, f. *Britain.*
caelum, **-ī**, n. *sky, heavens.*
dea, **-ae**, f. *goddess.*
Eurōpa, **-ae**, f. *Europe.*
Graecia, **-ae**, f. *Greece.*
inimīcus, **-ī**, m. *enemy.*
Rōma, **-ae**, f. *Rome.*
Vesta, **-ae**, f. *Vesta.*

lātus, **lāta**, **lātum**, *wide, broad.*
longus, longa, longum, *long.*
meus, **mea**, **meum**, *my, mine* (229).
novus, **nova**, **novum**, *new.*
parvus, **parva**, **parvum**, *small, little.*
tuus, **tua**, **tuum**, *your, yours.*

---

erat, *he, she,* or *it was.*
erant, *they were.*

98. *Model Sentences*

1. **Victōria est rēgīna**, *Victoria is a queen.*
2. **Incolae sunt agricolae**, *the inhabitants are farmers.*
3. **Estis oppidānī**, *you are townsmen.*

a. Observe that **rēgīna** denotes the same person as **Victōria**, **agricolae** the same persons as **incolae**, and **oppidānī** the same as the unexpressed subject of **estis**. Nouns thus used with forms of **sum** are called *predicate* nouns (15).

99. Rule. — *A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.*

100. *Model Sentences*

1. **Hortus est māgnus,** *the garden is large.*
2. **Hortī sunt māgnī,** *the gardens are large.*
3. **Poēta est grātus,** *the poet is welcome.*

a. Adjectives used as **māgnus, māgnī,** and **grātus** are above, with forms of **sum**, are called *predicate* adjectives (15). They must of course agree with their nouns, like adjectives otherwise used, in gender, number, and case.

b. Point out the predicate nouns and the predicate adjectives in 102, I. and II.

101. REVIEW

1. Give the rule of gender of nouns of the first declension ; of the second declension. 2. What masculine nouns of the first declension have occurred? 3. Is the ending of the adjective always the same as that of the noun with which it agrees? 4. Why is **nauta bona** not correct?

102. EXERCISES

I. 1. Galba est validus. 2. Galba est agricola. 3. Mea fīlia est parva. 4. Tuum pōculum estne māgnum? 5. Britannia est īnsula Eurōpae. 6. Vesta erat dea Rōmae. 7. Carrī Galbae sunt bonī et validī. 8. Nōn grātum est bellum. 9. Bella nōn sunt grāta. 10. In caelō erant stellae. 11. Graecia est Eurōpae terra parva. 12. Stellās parvās in caelō videō. 13. Clārō[1] in caelō stellās parvās vidēmus. 14. Oppidānī Galbam et equōs validōs vident.

II. 1. The streets of the town are long. 2. The streets of Rome were not broad. 3. The roads of Britain are broad and long. 4. The new gifts are pleasing. 5. The enemies are bringing long javelins. 6. You are my dear friend. 7. The cup was yours.

[1] Adjective, preposition, noun is a common order.

LESSON X

SECOND DECLENSION — *Continued*

103. *Paradigms*

puer, m. *boy*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	puer	puerī
Gen.	puerī	puerōrum
Dat.	puerō	puerīs
Acc.	puerum	puerōs
Abl.	puerō	puerīs

līber, lībera, līberum, *free*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

a. Observe that **puer** and **līber** have no termination **-us** in the nominative singular; elsewhere, except in the vocative singular, they have the same terminations as **hortus** (84). See 46, *a*. Observe that **lībera** has the same terminations as **hasta** (53), **līberum** the same as **dōnum** (84).

b. Decline together **vir līber**, *free man*; **fēmina tenera**, *tender woman*; **bellum asperum**, *fierce war*; **poēta miser**, *wretched poet*.

104. REVIEW

1. What is the ending of the vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension? 2. What cases of the second declension end in **ō**? What cases in **īs**? 3. What is the ending of the accusative singular? 4. What two cases in the neuter plural end in **a**? 5. Decline **dominus**, *master*. 6. Decline **bellum**, *war*. 7. Read again 84, *c* and *d*, and write out the declension of **nūntius**, *messenger*.

105. VOCABULARY

Duīlius, Duīlī, m. *Duilius.*
fīlius, fīlī, m. *son* (478).
līberī, -ōrum, m. plur. *children.*
nūntius, nūntī, m. *messenger.*
puer, puerī, m. *boy.*
vir, virī, m. *man* (478).
asper, aspera, asperum, *rough, fierce.*
līber, lībera, līberum, *free.*
miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, poor.*
superō, superāre, *surpass, overcome.*
tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender.*
vocō, vocāre, *call.*

106. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fīlii virōrum līberōrum. 2. Rēmus nautae asperī. 3. Ventīs asperīs. 4. Miserō in carrō. 5. Cibus puerōrum miserōrum. 6. Ō cāre fīlī! 7. Vocatne? superantne?

8. Puerōs bonōs vocāmus. 9. Līberī parvī sunt lātīs in viīs. 10. Nūntius miser fābulam miseram nārrat. 11. Sunt virī līberī in oppidō līberō. 12. Quid habent puellae tenerae?

II. 1. The owners of poor slaves. 2. For the wretched wars. 3. For your small sons. 4. In the messengers' gardens. 5. O (my) poor friend!

6. The son of Duilius is free. 7. We see fierce pirates. 8. They frighten small boys and tender women. 9. The inhabitants overcome the enemies. 10. We are free men. 11. We live in the land of the free.[1] 12. We are sons of free men.

107. CONVERSATION

1. Quis virō viam mōnstrat? Dea bona viam mōnstrat.
2. Quid clārō in caelō lūcet? Lūna nova lūcet.
3. Virī validī, quem superātis? Inimīcōs asperōs superāmus.
4. Habentne puerī pīla? Duīlī pīla longa habent.
5. Cui nūntius fābulam nārrat? Virīs līberīs fābulam nārrat.

[1] Adjectives are frequently used in the plural in Latin, as in English, without a noun, both in the masculine and neuter. See 3, *d*.

LESSON XI

SECOND DECLENSION — *Continued*

Apposition

108. *Paradigms*

	ager, m. *field.*	piger, pigra, pigrum, *slow, lazy.*		
	Singular	Singular		
		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ager	piger	pigra	pigrum
Gen.	agrī	pigrī	pigrae	pigrī
Dat.	agrō	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō
Acc.	agrum	pigrum	pigram	pigrum
Abl.	agrō	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō
	Plural	Plural		
Nom.	agrī	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
Gen.	agrōrum	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
Dat.	agrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
Acc.	agrōs	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
Abl.	agrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

a. Observe that ager and piger are declined like puer and līber, except that e before r occurs only in the nominative.

109. VOCABULARY

ager, agrī, m. *field.*
liber, librī, m. *book.*
magister, magistrī, m. *master, teacher.*
Sextus, -ī, m. *Sextus.*
multus, multa, multum, *much.*
multī (plur.), multae, multa, *many.*
niger, nigra, nigrum, *black.*
piger, pigra, pigrum, *slow, lazy.*
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful, pretty.*

dominus, *master* of a household or of slaves.
magister, *master* of a school.

Distinguish carefully { **liber, librī**, *book*. / **līber, lībera, līberum**, *free*. / **līberī, līberōrum**, *children*.

110. *Model Sentences*

1. **Galba agricola agrum habet**, *Galba, the farmer, has a field.*
2. **Mārcum amīcum amō**, *I love Marcus, (my) friend.*

a. Observe that **agricola** denotes the same person as **Galba** and is joined to **Galba** as a descriptive or explanatory noun; **amīcum** is related in the same way to **Mārcum**. Such nouns are called *appositives*.

111. Rule. — *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*

a. Read again 98. You will see that the *appositive* closely resembles the *predicate noun*. Wherein do they differ?

112. EXERCISES

I. 1. Virī, oppidī incolae. 2. In agrīs pulchrīs agricolae. 3. Librī pulchrī magistrōrum. 4. Ventōrum asperōrum. 5. Pigrōrum servōrum. 6. Nautae, amīcō meō. 7. Equī albī et nigrī. 8. Puerīs miserīs Duīlī.

9. In agrō Mārcī amīcī equōs videō. 10. Servus Sextum amīcum amat. 11. Liber, dōnum pulchrum Cornēliae, magistrum dēlectat. 12. Pulchrumne est caelum? 13. Servus bonus nōn piger est. 14. Agricolae multī equōs nigrōs habent. 15. Puellae pulchrae sunt dominae fīliae. 16. Tuī librī sunt dōnum grātum.

II. 1. To Galba, my friend, I give a book. 2. To the children of Sextus we give many gifts. 3. To the men's sons they give pretty books. 4. The men dwell in a poor town. 5. They dwell in Greece, a rough country of Europe. 6. Many are the inhabitants in the towns of Britain.

LESSON XII

Additional Uses of the Dative

113. Review the present of **sum** (96) and learn the indicative imperfect and future, and the infinitive present (502).

114. *Model Sentence*

Puerō est sagitta, { (*to the boy is an arrow*)
Eng., *the boy has an arrow.*

a. Observe that the above sentence is equivalent in meaning to **puer sagittam habet.** The dative thus used is called the *dative of the possessor*, or the *possessive dative*. The thing possessed, here **sagitta,** is the subject.

115. Rule. — *The dative is used with* ***est, sunt****, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

116. *Model Sentence*

Dōnum puerō est cārum, { (*the gift to the boy is dear*)
Eng., *the gift is dear to the boy.*

a. Observe that **puerō** limits **cārum** just as the indirect object **rēgīnae** limits the verb **dōnat** in 78.

117. Rule. — *Adjectives meaning* ***near****, also* ***fit, friendly, pleasing, like****, and their opposites, take the dative.*

118. EXERCISES

I. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Suntne? erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Sum, eram, erō. 5. Esne? erās, eris. 6. Estis, erātis, eritis. 7. Esse.

8. Magistrō est liber. 9. Magister librum habet. 10. Duīliō sunt puerī multī. 11. Duīlius puerōs multōs habet. 12. Erantne viae longae et asperae? 13. Nūntiī erunt miserī. 14. Caelum nigrum nautīs nōn est grātum.

II. 1. I am, we are. 2. Were we? I was. 3. I shall be, we shall be. 4. Is he? they are. 5. He was, they were. 6. He will be, they will be. 7. You are, you were. 8. You will be, to be. 9. You will be a free man. 10. Galba has a black horse. 11. A man had lazy and wretched sons. 12. The gifts will be welcome to Marcus, my friend. 13. The good children surpass the lazy (children).

119. REVIEW

1. Decline **servus, vir, magister.** 2. Decline the adjectives **cārus, niger, tener** in the three genders. 3. Decline **oppidānus līber, nauta asper, dōnum pulchrum, poēta clārus.** 4. What adjectives in **-er** have occurred that keep the **e** in declension? 5. After reading the following Conversation point out a direct object, an indirect object, a predicate adjective, an appositive, a dative of the possessor, a genitive, and a dative with an adjective, and give the rule for each.

120. CONVERSATION

1. Quem docet Sextus, amīcus tuus? Fīlium Duīlī docet.

2. Puerōne erat tuba grāta? Puerō tuba erat cāra et grāta.

3. Cui sunt rosae tenerae? Puellīs sunt rosae tenerae.

4. Cūr magistrō mōnstrātis librōs pulchrōs? Quia librōs amat.

5. Vidēsne, Ō nūntie, lūnam novam? Lūnam nigrō in caelō videō.

SPEAR

LESSON XIII

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — *Continued*

Ablative of Means

121. *Paradigms*

Active Indicative Imperfect

Singular	Plural
1. amābam, *I was loving.*[1]	amābāmus, *we were loving.*
2. amābās, *you were loving.*	amābātis, *you were loving.*
3. amābat, *he was loving.*	amābant, *they were loving.*

Singular	Plural
1. monēbam, *I was advising.*	monēbāmus, *we were advising.*
2. monēbās, *you were advising.*	monēbātis, *you were advising.*
3. monebat, *he was advising.*	monēbant, *they were advising.*

a. Observe that the imperfect of **amō** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense-sign **-ba-**, and to that the personal endings (60): **amā + ba + m**, etc. How is the imperfect of **moneō** formed?

b. Review the verbs of 66 and 72 and form the imperfect first person singular of each. Write out the imperfect of the verbs below.

122. VOCABULARY

Note. — Words are sometimes purposely repeated in the vocabularies.

arātrum, **-ī**, n. *plough* (p. 87).
aureus, **aurea**, **aureum**, *golden.*
dēfessus, **dēfessa**, **dēfessum**, *tired.*
deus, **deī**, m. *a god* (482).
gladius, **gladī**, m. *sword* (p. 27).
impleō, **implēre**, *fill.*
Mercurius, **Mercurī**, m. *Mercury.*
noster, **nostra**, **nostrum**, *our, ours.*
ōrnō, **ōrnāre**, *adorn, deck.*
pūgnō, **pūgnāre**, *fight.*
scūtum, **-ī**, n. *shield.*
somnus, **-ī**, m. *sleep, drowsiness.*
terreō, **terrēre**, *scare, frighten.*
vocō, **vocāre**, *call, summon.*

[1] Also *did love, loved.*

123. *Model Sentences*

1. **Virī inimīcōs hastīs et sagittīs fugābant**, *men routed the enemies with spears and arrows.*
2. **Servī pōcula aquā implēbant**, *servants were filling cups with water.*
3. **Equīs frūmentum portant**, *they bring grain by means of horses.*

a. Observe that the ablatives **hastīs**, **sagittīs**, **aquā**, and **equīs** answer the questions *by what? with what? by means of what?* The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of means* or *instrument.*

124. Rule. — *The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.*

125. EXERCISES

I. 1. Amābantne? amābat, dēlectābam. 2. Monēbat, monēbant, docēbam. 3. Fugābāmus, fugābant, līberābāmus. 4. Terrēbāsne? habēbat, habēbant. 5. Vidēbātis, terrēbātis, ōrnābātis. 6. Pūgnābāmus, vocābāmus, implēbant.

7. Vir agrum nostrum arātrō arābat. 8. Līberī columbās tubīs terrēbant. 9. Deus somnō puerum superābat. 10. Puellae pulchrae pōcula nostra rosīs ōrnābant. 11. Agricolae frūmentō carrōs implēbant. 12. Mercurius nūntius erat deōrum. 13. Virīs sunt sagittae et hastae.

II. 1. By means of shields. 2. With horses and ploughs. 3. With our swords. 4. With golden trumpets. 5. They were seeing, was he dancing?

6. We were teaching by means of books. 7. With your sword you were liberating friends. 8. I ploughed the field with a new plough. 9. Sleep was welcome to the tired god, Mercury. 10. The men fought with spears and long javelins.

LESSON XIV

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — *Continued*

Ablative of Manner

126. *Paradigms*

Active Indicative Future

Singular	Plural
1. amābō, *I shall love.*	amābimus, *we shall love.*
2. amābis, *you will love.*	amābitis, *you will love.*
3. amābit, *he will love.*	amābunt, *they will love.*

Singular	Plural
1. monēbō, *I shall advise.*	monēbimus, *we shall advise.*
2. monēbis, *you will advise.*	monēbitis, *you will advise.*
3. monēbit, *he will advise.*	monēbunt, *they will advise.*

a. Observe that the future of **amō** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense-sign **-bi-**, and to that the personal endings (60); but the **i** is dropped in the first person and changed to **u** in the third person plural. How is the future of **moneō** formed?

b. Review the verbs of 66, 72, and 77, and form the future first person singular of each. Write out the future of the verbs below.

127. VOCABULARY

aedificō, **aedificāre**, *build.*
aeger, **aegra**, **aegrum**, *sick.*
agitō, **agitāre**, *drive*, *chase away.*
āra, **-ae**, f. *altar* (p. 21).
cum, prep. with abl. *with.*
cūra, **-ae**, f. *care.*
gaudium, **gaudī**, n. *joy*, *gladness.*
in, prep. with acc. *into*, *upon.*
labōrō, **labōrāre**, *work*, *suffer.*
properō, **properāre**, *hasten.*
quō, adv. *whither?*
studium, **studī**, n. *zeal*, *eagerness.*
templum, **-ī**, n. *temple* (p. 95).
teneō, **tenēre**, *hold*, *keep.*

128. *Model Sentences*

1. **Vir cum studiō labōrat**, *the man works with zeal* (*zealously*).
2. **Vir māgnō cum studiō labōrat**, *the man works with great zeal.*
3. **Vir māgnō studiō labōrat**, *the man works with great zeal.*

a. Observe how *manner* is expressed in the above Latin sentences: (1) **cum studiō**; (2) **māgnō cum studiō**; (3) **māgnō studiō**. Observe that (2) and (3) are translated in the same way. The ablative thus used answers the question *how? in what way?*

129. Rule. — *The ablative with* **cum** *is used to denote the manner of an action; but* **cum** *may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

a. Observe that **cum** and the ablative may often be translated by an adverb: **cum studiō**, *zealously;* **cum cūrā**, *carefully;* **cum gaudiō**, *joyfully, gladly.*

130. EXERCISES

I. 1. Amābunt, monēbunt, properābunt. 2. Amābitne? monēbit, tenēbimus. 3. Manēbuntne? mōnstrābimus, terrēbō. 4. Labōrābisne? docēbitis, properābō.

5. Agricolae sunt equī validī. 6. Quō properābit agricola validus? 7. In[1] agrōs properābunt agricola et puerī. 8. In agrīs labōrābunt māgnō cum studiō. 9. Cum gaudiō frūmentum in oppidum portābunt. 10. Māgnā cūrā equōs agitābunt. 11. Nōn in oppidō manēbunt.

II. 1. You will build. 2. He will hasten. 3. Who will drive? 4. We shall drive. 5. You will hold. 6. For sick children.

7. You will build a temple with great care. 8. You will adorn the temple with an altar. 9. We shall carry the sick children carefully into the temple. 10. They will joyfully see the altar and the goddess. 11. Whose altar will they see? They will see the altar of Vesta, the kind goddess.

[1] Observe the use and meaning of **in** here and in 8 and 11.

LESSON XV

FIRST CONJUGATION — *Continued*

Reading Lesson

131. *Principal Parts of Verbs*

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Part.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus

a. The *principal parts* of a verb, illustrated by the model, are so called because all forms of the verb can be made from them.

b. The principal parts of almost all verbs of the first conjugation are formed after the model of **amō**. Observe that the perfect stem **amāv-** is formed by adding **v** to the verb-stem: **amā-**, **amāv-**. Give the principal parts of the verbs of the first conjugation in 77, 105, 122, 127.

132. *Paradigm*

Active Indicative Perfect

Singular	Personal Endings[1]
1. amāvī, *I have loved, I loved, I did love.*	-ī
2. amāvistī, *you have loved*, etc.	-istī
3. amāvit, *he has loved*, etc.	-it
Plural	
1. amāvimus, *we have loved*, etc.	-imus
2. amāvistis, *you have loved*, etc.	-istis
3. amāvērunt, -ēre, *they have loved*, etc.	-ērunt, -ēre

a. The personal endings of the perfect tense are the same in all the conjugations, as we shall see.

b. Observe that the second translation of the perfect is the same as the last of the imperfect, p. 44, foot-note 1. But there is this difference in the use of the two tenses: the perfect denotes an act or a

[1] With connecting vowel.

state in past time *without reference to its continuance;* the imperfect implies *continuance, progress,* or *repetition.* See 134.

c. Inflect in the perfect the verbs of Vocabularies 66, 105.

133. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vocāvitne? amāvit, superāvit. 2. Pūgnāvērunt, agitāvērunt, labōrāvērunt. 3. Properāvimus, aedificāvimus, amāvimus. 4. Amāvīne? vocāvistī, properāvistis. 5. Portāvit, dēlectāvit, fugāvit.

II. 1. You have praised, you ploughed, you related. 2. I have adorned, I brought, I set free. 3. They danced, they have sung, they swam. 4. We gave, we dwelt, we showed.

134. THE ROMANS AND THE SABINES

Rōmulus Rōmam, pulchrum Ītaliae oppidum, aedificāvit. Incolās oppidī vocāvit Rōmānōs. Validī virī erant Rōmānī et māximē amābant patriam. Saepe cum Sabīnīs, vīcinīs, prō patriā pūgnābant et saepe armīs in bellō superābant. Ōlim erat victōria diū dubia. Nam Sabīnī arma habēbant bona et pīlīs longīs māgnā cum audāciā pūgnāvērunt. Sed Rōmānī Sabīnōs fugāvērunt et multōs sagittīs volnerāvērunt. Cāra Rōmānīs erat illa (*that*) victōria.

135. VOCABULARY

arma, **-ōrum**, n. plur. *arms.*
audācia, **-ae**, f. *boldness, daring.*
diū, adv. *for a long time, long.*
dubius, **-a**, **-um**, *doubtful.*
incola, **-ae**, m. and f. *inhabitant.*
Ītalia, **-ae**, f. *Italy.*
māximē, adv. *very, greatly.*
nam, conj. *for.*
ōlim, adv. *once, formerly.*
patria, **-ae**, f. *native country.*
prō, prep. with abl. *before, for, in defence of.*
Rōmānus, **-ī**, m. *a Roman.*
Rōmulus, **-ī**, m. *Romulus.*
Sabīnī, **-ōrum**, m. plur. *Sabines.*
saepe, adv. *often.*
sed, conj. *but.*
vīcīnus, **-ī**, m. *neighbor.*
victōria, **-ae**, f. *victory.*
volnerō, **-āre**, *wound.*

LESSON XVI

SECOND CONJUGATION — *Continued*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**

136. *Paradigm*

ACTIVE INDICATIVE PERFECT

SINGULAR

1. **monuī**, *I have advised, I advised, I did advise.*
2. **monuistī**, *you have advised*, etc.
3. **monuit**, *he has advised*, etc.

PLURAL

1. **monuimus**, *we have advised*, etc.
2. **monuistis**, *you have advised*, etc.
3. **monuērunt, -ēre**, *they have advised*, etc.

a. Verbs of the second conjugation form the perfect stem variously; **moneō** forms it by dropping final **e** of the verb-stem (71. *b*) and adding **u**; so do **doceō**, *teach*; **habeō**, *have*; **terreō**, *frighten*; **teneō**, *hold*, and most others of this conjugation. The perfect participles are very irregular. For personal endings, see 132 and *a*.

b. Learn the principal parts of the following verbs and inflect them in the perfect tense:

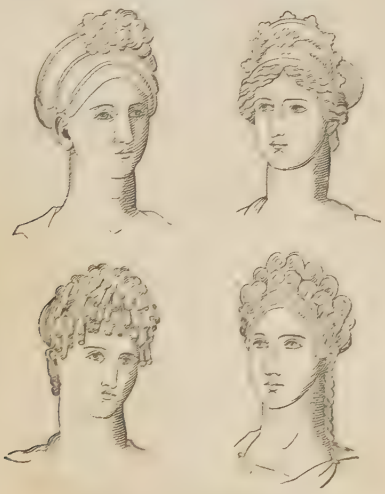
PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctus, *teach.*
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitus, *have.*
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territus, *frighten.*
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	———, *hold.*
lūceō	lūcēre	lūxī	———, *shine.*
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsūrus, *remain.*
impleō	implēre	implēvī	implētus, *fill.*
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus, *see.*

1[illegible]. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Monuit, monuērunt, docuit. 2. Docuērunt, habuít, habuērunt. 3. Terruistī, terruistis, tenuistī. 4. Vīdīne? vidēruntne? mānsimus. 5. Tenuit, tenuērunt, terruērunt.

6. Stellae lūxērunt. 7. Puerō erat pōculum pulchrum. 8. Aqua pōcula implēvit. 9. Puerī pōcula aquā implēvērunt. 10. Cum cūrā puellam aegram portāvērunt. 11. Scūta et gladiōs inimicōrum vidī prō portīs. 12. Ōlim Rōmulus Sabīnōs superāvit et fugāvit.

II. 1. The moon shone into a little town. 2. Often it shone upon the arms of men. 3. The swords and trumpets frightened the children. 4. But the townsmen hastened to fight with the enemies. 5. The women and children gladly remained. 6. The men fought boldly. 7. The women taught the boys and girls carefully.



ROMAN HEADDRESSES

LESSON XVII

The Demonstrative Is

Is, adjective, *this, that;* plur., *these, those.*
Is, pronoun, *this, that, he, she, it;* plur., *these, those, they.*

138. *Paradigm*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

a. Compare the declension of **is**, column by column, with the declension of **bonus** (483). The endings (stem i or e) in the plural are the same as those of **bonus**. Where are they different in the singular?

Note. — Be careful not to confound eī, dative, and eō, ablative.

139. *Table of Meanings for Reference*

Is as a Pronoun

Singular

Nom.	*this, that; he, she, it.*
Gen.	*of this, of that; of him, his; of her, hers; of it, its.*
Dat.	*to* or *for this* or *that; to* or *for him, her* or *it.*
Acc.	*this, that; him, her, it.*
Abl.	*by, with,* etc., *this* or *that; by, with,* etc., *him, her* or *it.*

Plural

Nom.	*these, those; they.*
Gen.	*of these, of those; of them, their.*
Dat.	*to* or *for these* or *those; to* or *for them.*
Acc.	*these, those; them.*
Abl.	*by, with,* etc., *these* or *those; by, with,* etc., *them.*

140. *Model Sentences*

1. **Is vir cum patientiā labōrat,** *that man works patiently.*
2. **Eum laudāmus,** *we praise him*, i.e. *that* (man).
3. **Patientiam ēius laudāmus,** *we praise his* (*of him*) *patience.*

a. **Is** in the first sentence is used with a noun and is a demonstrative *adjective*. It designates its noun in connected speech unemphatically, as previously mentioned or understood: *the aforesaid*. See also 201, *c*, and 212, *b*.

b. **Is** in 2 and 3 is used without a noun and is a demonstrative *pronoun*. The meanings of **is** as a pronoun are shown in 139.

c. Learn the indicative perfect of **sum** (502).

d. Decline together **id dōnum**, *that gift*; **is nūntius**, *that messenger*; **ea patria**, *this country*.

141. EXERCISES

I. 1. Id scūtum, is gladius, ea fābula. 2. Eō gladiō, eī gladiō, eō bellō. 3. Eō cibō, eā pecūniā, in eā terrā. 4. In eō somnō, eōrum hortōrum, ēius aurī.

5. Ea arma fuērunt mea, sed ea pecūnia fuit tua. 6. Iī virī asperī fuērunt vīcīnī nostrī. 7. Eōsne vīdistis? Nōn eōs, sed eōrum filiōs vīdimus. 8. Dominus ēius equī fuit vir piger. 9. Equus ēius fuit dēfessus. 10. Sed puer parvus eī aquam dōnāvit et dominō et dominae pōcula vīnō implēvit.

II. 1. For this goddess, Vesta. 2. For these goddesses, by these arms. 3. On that black horse, for him, for them. 4. Of the aforesaid townsman, of their fortune, those men.[1]

5. I have had kind friends. 6. Their sons I have taught, but not their daughters. 7. You have seen and praised them. 8. You gave them many presents. 9. They have kept them carefully.

[1] As subject and as object.

LESSON XVIII

The Interrogative Quis

142. *Paradigm*

Quis? *who? which? what?*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

143. *Table of Meanings for Reference*

Note. — The meanings are not tabulated with reference to gender.

Nom. *who? which? what?*
Gen. *of whom? whose? of which? of what?*
Dat. *to* or *for whom? to* or *for which? to* or *for what?*
Acc. *whom? which? what?*
Abl. *by*, etc., *whom? by*, etc., *which? by*, etc., *what?*

144. *Model Sentences*

1. **Quis (quī) vir patriam nōn amat?** *What man does not love his country?*
2. **Quis patriam nōn amat?** *Who does not love his country?*
3. **Quod dōnum amat puella?** *What gift does the girl like?*
4. **Quid amat puella?** *What does the girl like?*

a. Observe that **quis** has two distinct uses: in 1 and 3 it is an interrogative *adjective;* in 2 and 4 it is an interrogative *pronoun*. As an interrogative adjective it agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case. As a pronoun it has no feminine.

b. The form **quod** is always used in place of **quid** as an interrogative *adjective*, and often **quī** is so used in place of **quis.**

145. EXERCISES

NOTE. — The learner should accustom himself, in making out the meaning of the Latin, to pronounce any Latin word, the sense of which is not evident, as a part of his English sentence. For example, taking sentence 12 below, if the meaning of **cūius** is not clear, say: "**Cūius** arms has that boy?" Probably this would suggest: "Whose arms has that boy?"

I. 1. Quī id templum aedificāvērunt? 2. Quī virī id templum aedificāvērunt? 3. Quid est in eō templō? 4. Quae fēmina nōn amat līberōs? 5. Cui dōnat Mārcus id pōculum? 6. Quibus virīs nōn est patria cāra? 7. Quōs agrōs arat is agricola? 8. Quem laudātis? 9. Quid in pōculō habet servus? 10. Quam puellam laudat magister? 11. Quō arātrō eōs agrōs arāvit agricola? 12. Cūius arma habet is puer?

II. 1. Who was a messenger of the gods? 2. Whose messenger was Mercury? 3. Whose shield did that boy have? 4. To whom did he give the shield? 5. Whom have you overcome? 6. With what arms have you overcome those men?

146. REVIEW

1. What are the two personal endings of the third person plural of the perfect? 2. In 134 explain the difference in the use of the tenses of **vocāvit**, line 2, and **amābant**, line 3. 3. What forms of the verb make up the principal parts? 4. What is the perfect stem of **sum**? 5. From 141, I. 5–10, select five examples of **is** used as a pronoun and four of **is** used as an adjective. 6. What form of **quis** is used interrogatively in the neuter as an adjective? What forms in the masculine?

LESSON XIX

THIRD CONJUGATION — Ĕ-VERBS

NOTE. — Observe that verbs of this conjugation have stems ending in short e, those of the second conjugation in long e. See 59.

regō (stem rege-), *rule*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

147. Learn the active indicative present, imperfect, future, and perfect of **regō** (499).

a. Observe that the personal endings are the same as those already learned, one set (60) applying to the first three tenses, the other (132) to the perfect.

b. Compare the present of **regō** with the present of **moneō** in respect to the vowel that precedes the personal ending.

c. Compare the future of **regō** with the present of **moneō**. Compare the two imperfects.

d. Like **regō** inflect in the same tenses **dūcō**, *lead*; **emō**, *buy*; **mittō**, *send*. For the principal parts, see Vocabulary. The perfect and perfect participles of verbs of the third conjugation are very irregular. No rule can be given.

148. VOCABULARY

aurum, -ī, n. *gold.*
bene, adv. *well.*
hodiē, adv. *to-day, now.*
incola, -ae, m. and f. *inhabitant.*
ōlim, adv. *once, formerly.*
plēnus, plēna, plēnum, *full.*
terra, -ae, f. *land, country.*
tum, adv. *then, at that time.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead.*
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy.*
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send, throw, hurl.*
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *rule, manage.*
reportō, reportāre, reportāvī, reportātus, *bring back, gain.*

149. EXERCISES

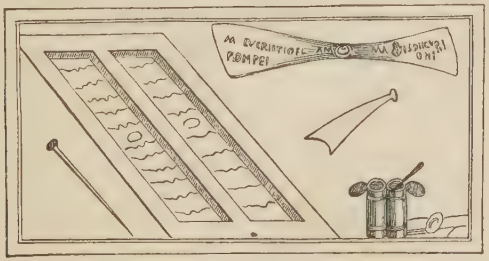
I. 1. Regit, regēbat, reget. 2. Emō, emēbam, emam. 3. Dūcunt, dūcent, dūcēbat. 4. Rēxit, rēxērunt, dūxit. 5. Dūxērunt, ēmistī, ēmistis. 6. Mīsī, mīsimus, mīsit. 7. Mittimus, mittunt, mittent.

8. Agricolae[1] sunt agrī plēnī frūmentī. 9. Id frūmentum in oppidum māgnum mittet. 10. Id in carrīs plēnīs equīs validīs mittit. 11. Quī eōs equōs longā in viā agitābunt? 12. Fīliī ēius, Mārcus et Brūtus, eōs dūxērunt et hodiē dūcent. 13. Incolae ēius oppidī frūmentum agricolae, nōn carrōs, ēmērunt. 14. Puerī aurum et dōna amīcīs reportāvērunt. 15. Cāra erant amīcīs eā pulchra dōna.

II. 1. They rule, they were ruling, they will rule. 2. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 3. I have bought, we bought, they bought. 4. I am sending, I will send, I have sent. 5. You (sing.) send, you will send, you (plur.) have sent. 6. To send, to buy, to lead.

7.[2] The Romans once had many lands. 8. Often they did not rule them well. 9. Then the inhabitants of those lands fought boldly. 10.[2] What arms had they? 11. Their arms were long spears. 12. These they hurled; with these they wounded the Romans.

[1] Dative of possessor. [2] Translate in two ways.



WRITING MATERIALS

LESSON XX

150. REVIEW: READING LESSON

1. Give the infinitives of **amō**, **moneō**, and **regō**. 2. What letter of the infinitive needs to be especially noticed? Why? 3. What are the perfect stems of **amō**, **moneō**, **emō**, **mittō**? 4. What are the personal endings of the perfect? 5. To the perfect stem of **amō** add the personal endings of the perfect. 6. Translate the third person singular in three ways. 7. Give the table of personal endings of the present, imperfect, and future. 8. What is the tense-sign of the imperfect? 9. What is the tense-sign of the future in the first and second conjugations? 10. Write the future of **emō**. 11. Review Vocabularies 72, 77, 122, 127, 135.

151. EXERCISES

I. 1. Advena dēfessus. 2. Plēnā in lūnā. 3. Cum studiō. 4. Cum gaudiō ēius puerī aegrī. 5. Cuius aureus gladius? 6. Quod deorum templum? 7. Ārum fābularum grātārum. 8. Eā victōriā nostrā (*of ours*).

9. Quis agrum arātrō diū arāvit? 10. Cūr es dubius, puer bone? 11. Cūr in īnsulīs manēbis? 12. Mārcō et Brūtō fuērunt equī nigrī. 13. Mārcus et Brūtus equōs nigrōs habuērunt.

II. 1. You have managed the strangers well. 2. Who are sending sick men into the temples? 3. We shall lead our friends into the towns. 4. He will buy arms with great care. 5. With whose gold does he buy arms?

152. ICARUS

See 179, note.

Frāter et Sorōrcula (*brother and little sister*)

F. Fābulam bonam amīcus hodiē nārrāvit.

S. Dē quō tibi (*to you*) nārrāvit amīcus?

F. Dē Īcarō, Daedalī filiō, puerō miserrimō (*most unlucky*).

S. Ubi (*where*) habitābat Īcarus? In Britanniā?

F. Minimē; in Crētā, īnsulā māgnā et pulchrā. Daedalus Īcarō alās fīnxit et eī cērā aptāvit. Alae Īcarō erant māximē grātae. Tum Daedalus puerum volāre docuit, sed altius (*too high*) volāvit Īcarus. Sōl (*sun*) cēram solvit et alae dēcidērunt.

S. Sed quid dē Īcarō?

F. Īcarus quoque dēcidit in mare (*sea*).

S. Ēheu, miserrimum Īcarum!

153. VOCABULARY

ala, **-ae**, f. *wing.*
cēra, **-ae**, f. *wax.*
dē, prep. with abl. *from*, *about.*
ēheu, interj. *alas!*
minimē, adv. *not at all.*
quoque, adv. *also*, *too.*

aptō, **aptāre**, **aptāvī**, **aptātus**, *fit.*
dēcidō, **dēcidere**, **dēcidī**, ——, *fall off* or *down.*
fingō, **fingere**, **fīnxī**, **fictus**, *fashion*, *devise.*
solvō, **solvere**, **solvī**, **solūtus**, *melt.*

THE FALL OF ICARUS

LESSON XXI

THIRD DECLENSION

The stem ends in a consonant or in *i*

Consonant Stems: Mutes (38)

154. *Paradigms*

	rēx, m. *king*	mīles, m. *soldier*	virtūs, f. *virtue*	caput, n. *head*	Terminations M. & F.	N.
Stems:	rēg-	mīlit-	virtūt-	capit-		
			Singular			
Nom.	rēx	mīles	virtūs	caput	-s or —	—
Gen.	rēgis	mīlitis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
Dat.	rēgī	mīlitī	virtūtī	capitī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	rēgem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput	-em	—
Abl.	rēge	mīlite	virtūte	capite	-e	-e
			Plural			
Nom.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Gen.	rēgum	mīlitum	virtūtum	capitum	-um	-um
Dat.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Abl.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

a. Review 46, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*. For the locative case, see 195–197.

b. To decline a noun with stem ending in a consonant it is necessary to know the gender, the nominative, the genitive, and the stem. Repeat the stem for all cases except the nominative, and in neuters the accusative singular, and add the proper terminations.

c. The stem can be found by dropping -is of the genitive singular, which is always given in the vocabularies.

d. Observe that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

e. Observe that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in forming the nominative. No rule can be given.

f. Following the directions of *b*, decline **eques**, **lapis**, and **pedes** (155).

g. Decline together **mīles bonus**, *good soldier*; **ea virtūs**, *that virtue*; **id caput**, *this head*.

155. VOCABULARY

caput, **capitis**, n. *head*.
dux, **ducis**, m. *leader*, *general*.
eques, **equitis**, m. *horseman*.
et . . . et, conj. *both . . . and*.
fortiter, adv. *bravely*.
lapis, **lapidis**, m. *stone*.
mīles, **mīlitis**, m. *soldier*.
pedes, **peditis**, m. *foot-soldier*.
rēx, **rēgis**, m. *king*.
virtūs, **virtūtis**, f. *courage*, *virtue*.

156. EXERCISES

I. 1. Et rēgēs et ducēs mīlitēs dūxērunt. 2. Rēgem et ducem vīdī hodiē. 3. Capita multōrum peditum vīdimus. 4. Equitēs prō rēge et duce pūgnābant. 5. Virtūte et studiō reportāvērunt victōriam. 6. Lapidibus et sagittīs multōs volnerāvērunt. 7. Virtūs equitum et studium peditum victōriam rēgī reportābant. 8. Quis scūta emet equitibus? 9. Eum mīlitem lapide asperō volnerābam. 10. Nostrōs mīlitēs lapidibus volnerābunt.

II. 1. On the head of a king. 2. On the heads of kings. 3. By the courage of soldiers. 4. To wound with stones and spears. 5. For the general of the foot-soldiers.

6. In a town I saw a king. 7. The king was a good general and ruled well. 8. He bought food for the inhabitants. 9. He sent arms into the town. 10. He led the soldiers bravely, and they loved him.

A Roman Coin

LESSON XXII

THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN -IŌ

Place Whence and Whither

capiō (stem **cape-(i-)**), *take*

Principal Parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

157. Learn the active indicative present, imperfect, future, and perfect of **capiō** (500).

a. Wherein does the inflection of **capiō** differ from that of **regō** in the present? In the imperfect? In the future? The final stem vowel of **capiō** varies between **-e** (**capere**) and **-i** (**capiō**).

b. All verbs in **-iō** with the infinitive in **-ere** are conjugated like **capiō**. Like **capiō** inflect in the same tenses **fugiō**, *flee;* **iaciō**, *hurl* (161).

158. *Model Sentences*

1. **Magister līberōs ā scholā dīmīsit,** *the teacher dismissed the children from school.*
2. **Oppidānī dē mūrō lapidēs iaciunt.** *Townsmen throw stones down from the wall.*
3. **Mīlitēs ex portā properāvērunt.** *soldiers hastened forth from the gate.*
4. **Lēgātōs ad oppidum mīsērunt,** *they sent deputies to the town.*

a. Observe that **ā scholā, dē mūrō, ex portā** denote *place from which* motion is directed. On the other hand, **ad oppidum** (as also expressions like **in īnsulam**, *into the island*, **in terram**, *upon the land*) denotes the *place to which* motion is directed. Hence two rules.

159. Rule. — *Place whence, not including names of towns, is expressed by the ablative with* **ā** *(***ab***),* **dē**, **ē** *(***ex***).*

Note. — Before words beginning with a vowel or **h**, **ab** and **ex** are used instead of **ā** and **ē**.

160. Rule. — *Place whither, not including names of towns, is expressed by the accusative with* **ad** *or* **in.**

161. VOCABULARY

ā (ab), prep. with abl. *away from, from, by.*
ad, prep. with acc. *to, towards.*
dē, prep. with abl. *down from, from.*
ē (ex), prep. with abl. *out of, from.*
lēgātus, -ī, m. *deputy, lieutenant.*
mūrus, -ī, m. *wall.*
pēs, pedis, m. *foot.*
quia, conj. *because.*
quō, adv. *whither.*
schola, -ae, f. *school.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take, receive.*
dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *dismiss, send away.*
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, ——, *flee, run away.*
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl, cast.*

162. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dē capite ad pedem. 2. Ā scholā in oppidum. 3. Ā ducibus ad mīlitēs. 4. Capiet, capit, capiunt. 5. Fugiunt, fugient, fūgit. 6. Iaciō, iaciam, iaciēbam. 7. Cēpērunt, iēcit, iēcimus. 8. Fūgimus, fugimus, dīmīsimus.

9. Quī lēgātōs ad rēgem mīsērunt? Incolae eōs dē multīs oppidīs mīsērunt. 10. Cūr dīmittent agricolae carrōs et equōs? Quia mīlitēs eōs capient. 11. Quō eōs dīmīsērunt et quō fūgērunt? In (*within*) mūrōs. 12. Quae arma mīlitibus fuērunt (115)? 13. Eīs mīlitibus fuērunt scūta et gladiī.

II. 1. From the feet of the horsemen. 2. With stones from heaven. 3. Both in school and from school. 4. He will hurl, they will hurl, they hurl. 5. You hurl, you will hurl, you hurled.

6. Women and children were fleeing from the fields. 7. Boys were throwing stones from the wall. 8. They were hastening from school to the water. 9. The master will send the children away from school to-day. 10. The lieutenant led the soldiers within the walls.

LESSON XXIII

THIRD DECLENSION — *Continued*

Consonant Stems: Liquids (38)

Ablative of Cause

163. *Paradigms*

	pater, m. *father*	**homō**, m. *man*	**volnus**, n. *wound*	**corpus**, n. *body*
Stems:	**patr-**	**homin-**	**volner-**	**corpor-**
		Singular		
Nom.	pater	homō	volnus	corpus
Gen.	patr**is**	homin**is**	volner**is**	corpor**is**
Dat.	patrī	hominī	volnerī	corporī
Acc.	patr**em**	homin**em**	volnus	corpus
Abl.	patr**e**	homin**e**	volner**e**	corpor**e**
		Plural		
Nom.	patrēs	hominēs	volner**a**	corpor**a**
Gen.	patr**um**	homin**um**	volner**um**	corpor**um**
Dat.	patr**ibus**	homin**ibus**	volner**ibus**	corpor**ibus**
Acc.	patrēs	hominēs	volner**a**	corpor**a**
Abl.	patr**ibus**	homin**ibus**	volner**ibus**	corpor**ibus**

a. Review the table of terminations (154); also 154, *b* and *c*.

b. Decline is **homō**, id **corpus**, **pater cārus**.

164. *Model Sentences*

1. Homō puerum virtūte laudat, *the man praises the boy for (on account of) his bravery.*
2. Equus aquae inopiā labōrat, *the horse suffers from want of water.*
3. Tuō volnere sum miser, *I am wretched because of your wound.*
4. Pedes longā viā est dēfessus, *the foot-soldier is tired with the long march.*

a. Observe that the ablatives **virtūte, inopiā, volnere, viā** all denote *cause* or *reason.* Notice the various prepositions used in translating these ablatives: *for, on account of, from, because of, with.*

165. Rule. — *The ablative is used to express cause.*

166. VOCABULARY

corpus, corporis, n. *body.*	**laus, laudis,** f. *praise, glory.*
homō, hominis, m. *man.*	**pater, patris,** m. *father.*
inopia, -ae, f. *want, lack.*	**volnus, volneris,** n. *wound.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, ——, *grieve.*

167. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hominēs eōs mīlitēs lapidibus et hastīs volnerāvērunt. 2. Mīlitēs miserī, multa volnera habētis! 3. Volnera sunt et in pedibus et in corporibus. 4. Hodiē patrēs volneribus vestrīs (*your*) dolēbunt. 5. Sed laudem capiētis māgnam ā rēge. 6. Nam tum nōn in mūrōs oppidī fugiēbātis. 7. Cum audāciā pūgnābātis et peditēs et equitēs. 8. Victōriam māgnam virtūte reportāvistis.

a. Point out five different uses of the ablative above, and tell how you can distinguish them.

II. 1. The teachers dismiss the children from school. 2. Children hurl stones from the walls. 3. What king will flee on account of wounds? 4. We shall lead the deputies away from the town to the water. 5. The soldiers suffered from lack of food and water.

168. REVIEW

1. Give the rule for the *place* of an action. 2. For the *place whence.* 3. For the *place whither.* 4. For *means* or *instrument.* 5. For *manner.* 6. What question does the ablative of *place* answer? 7. What the ablative of *manner?* 8. What the ablative of *means* or *instrument?* 9. What the ablative of *cause?* 10. What two cases of a noun with consonant stem must be known to enable you to decline it? What else must you know?

LESSON XXIV

THIRD DECLENSION — *Continued*

Stems in *i*

169. *Paradigms*

	hostis, m. *enemy*	**nūbēs**, f. *cloud*	**urbs**, f. *city*	**animal**, n. *animal*	TERMINATIONS M. & F.	N.
STEMS:	**hosti-**	**nūbi-**	**urbi-**	**animāli-**		
			SINGULAR			
Nom.	hostis	nūbēs	urbs	animal	**-s**	—
Gen.	hostis	nūbis	urbis	animālis	**-is**	**-is**
Dat.	hostī	nūbī	urbī	animālī	**-ī**	**-ī**
Acc.	hostem	nūbem	urbem	animal	**-em**	—
Abl.	hoste	nūbe	urbe	animālī	**-e**	**-ī**
			PLURAL			
Nom.	hostēs	nūbēs	urbēs	animālia	**-ēs**	**-ia**
Gen.	hostium	nūbium	urbium	animālium	**-ium**	**-ium**
Dat.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	animālia	**-īs**, **-ēs**	**-ia**
Abl.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus	**-ibus**	**-ibus**

a. Compare the first table of endings above with the first under 154. What differences do you find?

b. Compare the terminations of the neuter with those of 154 and point out the differences.

c. The following sometimes have the ablative singular in ī and e: avis, cīvis, fīnis, īgnis, nāvis (171). A few sometimes have the accusative in **-im**: **turris, turrim**, *tower*.

d. As a guide to the learner, all nouns having i-stems will be followed by the stem in the succeeding vocabularies.

e. To decline a noun with stem ending in i, add the proper terminations to the stem with i dropped, except in the nominative. Decline **avis pulchra**, *pretty bird*, and **mare māgnum**, *great sea*.

170. *Nouns with I-Stems*

1. Nouns in **-is** and **-ēs** not increasing[1] in the genitive. 2. Neuters in **-e, -al, -ar.** 3. Nouns in **-ns** and **-rs.** 4. Monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** following a consonant.

171. VOCABULARY

animal, animālis (animāli-), n. *animal.*
avis, -is (avi-), f. *bird.*
cīvis, -is (cīvi-), m. and f. *citizen.*
ferrum, -ī, n. *iron, sword.*
fīnis, -is (fīni-), m. *end, border,* plur. *boundaries, territory.*
hostis, -is (hosti-), m. *enemy, foe.*
īgnis, -is (īgni-), m. *fire.*
mare, -is (mari-), n. *sea.*
nāvis, -is (nāvi-), f. *ship.*
nūbēs, -is (nūbi-), f. *cloud, flock.*
-que, conj. *and* (44, 3).
urbs, urbis (urbi-), f. *city.*

hostis, general word for *enemy; a public enemy.*
inimīcus, *a private* or *personal enemy;* opposite of **amīcus.**

172. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quī pīla dē mūrīs urbium iaciunt? 2. Pīrātae ē fīnibus Ītaliae fugiēbant ad īnsulās. 3. Eī animālī fuit māgnum corpus, sed caput parvum. 4. Māgnā nāvium inopiā labōrāmus. 5. Hostēs terrā[2] marīque vāstant ferrō īgnīque. 6. Pater ēius equitis laudem virtūte fīlī capiet. 7. Cīvēs nūbem equitum in fīne terrae vīdērunt. 8. Eī hostēs pīla iēcērunt; cīvēs ex urbe fūgērunt.

II. 1. The deputies are tired from head to foot. 2. Boys see great fires in the city. 3. They take (their) books and hasten from school. 4. Whither will that cloud of birds fly? From the sea to the land. 5. Why did the citizens praise those men? On account of their courage. 6. We grieved at the wounds of those men.

[1] That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative. [2] *By land.*

LESSON XXV

THIRD DECLENSION — *Continued*

Gender

Masculine

173. Rule. — *Nouns in* **-ō, -or, -ōs, -er,** *and* **-es** *increasing*[1] *in the genitive, are masculine.*

Feminine

174. Rule 1. — *Nouns in* **-dō, -gō,** *together with abstract and collective nouns in* **-iō,** *are feminine.*

Rule 2. — *Nouns in* **-ās, -ēs** *not increasing in the genitive,* **-is, -ūs, -x,** *and* **-s** *following a consonant are feminine.*

Neuter

175. Rule. — *Nouns in* **-a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -ŭs** *are neuter.*

Note. — The above rules are subordinate to the general rules of gender (47, 1 and 2).

176. *Table for Review of Nouns of Third Declension*

Masculine

* **cīvis, cīvis** (cīvi-), m. *citizen.*
* **dux, ducis,** m. *leader.*
eques, equitis, m. *horseman.*
* **fīnis, fīnis** (fīni-), m. *end, border,* plur. *territories.*
homō, hominis, m. *man.*
* **hostis, hostis** (hosti-), m. *enemy.*
* **īgnis, īgnis** (īgni-), m. *fire.*
* **lapis, lapidis,** m. *stone.*
mīles, mīlitis, m. *soldier.*
pater, patris, m. *father.*
pedes, peditis, m. *foot-soldier.*
pēs, pedis, m. *foot.*
* **rēx, rēgis,** m. *king.*

[1] That is, having more syllables than in the nominative.

FEMININE

avis, avis (**avi-**), f. *bird.*	**nūbēs, nūbis** (**nūbi-**), f. *cloud.*
laus, laudis, f. *praise.*	**urbs, urbis** (**urbi-**), f. *city.*
nāvis, nāvis (**nāvi-**), f. *ship.*	**virtūs, virtūtis**, f. *courage.*

NEUTER

animal, animālis (**animāli-**), n. *animal.*	**corpus, corporis**, n. *body.*
caput, capitis, n. *head.*	**mare, maris** (**mari-**), n. *sea.*
	volnus, volneris, n. *wound.*

a. Exceptions to the rules of gender (173–175) are starred. See how many of these exceptions come under the general rules of gender (47, 1 and 2). In future note exceptions as they occur.

b. Apply the appropriate rule of gender to each noun not starred.

c. Distinguish carefully nouns ending in **-ūs** and **-us**; as, for example, **virtūs** and **corpus**.

d. Make a list of all the above nouns having consonant stems (38) and another of **i**-stem nouns.

177. Read again 85. Apply the rules of gender, decline, and learn the meanings of the following:

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. *endurance.*	**salūs, salūtis**, f. *safety.*
fragor, fragōris, m. *crash.*	**socius, socī**, m. *comrade, ally.*
imperātor, imperātōris, m. *general.*	**tēlum, -ī**, n. *weapon.*
pōns, pontis (**ponti-**), m. *bridge.*	**terror, terrōris**, m. *terror.*

A ROMAN COIN

LESSON XXVI

Review: Reading Lesson

178. REVIEW

1. Remember that to decline a noun of the third declension you must know: (1) its gender; (2) whether it is a consonant or an i-stem noun; (3) its nominative and genitive singular; (4) the appropriate table of terminations. 2. How do you know that **eques, equitis**, is not an i-stem noun and that **nūbēs, nūbis** is? 3. How can you tell, without knowing the genitive, that **cliēns**, *client*, **mare**, *sea*, and **arx**, *citadel*, are i-stem nouns? 4. Write down the table of terminations of masculine and feminine nouns with consonant stems (154); then, by the side of it, the table of masculine and feminine nouns with i-stems (169). 5. Compare the two tables. Is there any difference in the singular? 6. What are the differences in the plural? 7. In the same way write side by side the tables of terminations of neuter nouns. 8. What difference do you note in the singular? 9. What in the plural? 10. Decline **fragor māgnus**, *loud crash*; **tua salūs**, *your safety*; **pulchra nūbēs**, *beautiful cloud*; **mare asperum**, *rough sea*; **novum volnus**, *new wound*.

179. HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE

Note. — Some proper names and less common words that are not to be used again soon are given only in the general vocabulary.

Porsena, Rōmānōrum hostis, fuit rēx clārus. Ōlim urbem Rōmam obsidēbat. Māgnus erat Rōmānōrum terror, quia parva eis erat spēs (*hope*) salūtis. Sed virtūs validī virī eōs dēfendit. Nam paucīs cum sociīs prō ponte Subliciō Horātius hostīs sustinet, dum Rōmānī ā tergō (*behind him*) pontem rescindunt. Mox sociōs dimittit et sōlus sē (*himself*) pontemque contrā hostīs dēfendit. Tandem conruit pōns māgnō fragōre. Tum inter hostium tēla Horātius armātus in Tiberim dēsilit (*jumps down*) et ad sociōs trānat.

180. VOCABULARY

armātus, -a, -um, *armed.*
contrā, prep. with acc. *against.*
dum, conj. *while.*
inter, prep. with acc. *between, among.*
mox, adv. *soon, presently.*
paucī, -ae, -a, plur. *few.*
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone* (312).
tandem, adv. *at last.*

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *defend, protect.*
obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus, *besiege.*
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *bear, hold in check.*
trānō, trānāre, trānāvī, ——, *swim across.*

181. CONVERSATION

1. Quis fuit Porsena? Rēx Etrūscōrum fuit. 2. Mīlitēsne multī eī fuērunt? Nōn paucōs habuit mīlitēs. 3. Cūr urbem Rōmam nōn cēpit? Virtūte virī validī. 4. Cūius virtūtem nōn superāvit Porsena? Virtūtem Horātī, virī Rōmānī. 5. Diūne hostīs sustinēbat Horātius? Nōn diū, nam hostēs erant multī. 6. Fūgitne tandem Horātius? Tandem in Tiberim dēsiluit (*jumped down*) et ad sociōs trānāvit.

A Roman Coin

LESSON XXVII

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

The Stem ends in *i*

READING LESSON

182. *Paradigms*

audāx, *bold*; stem audāci-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audāx	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
Abl.	audācī, -e	audācī, -e	audācibus	audācibus

brevis, breve, *short*; stem brevi-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	brevis	breve	brevēs	brevia
Gen.	brevis	brevis	brevium	brevium
Dat.	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus
Acc.	brevem	breve	brevīs, -ēs	brevia
Abl.	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus

ācer, ācris, ācre, *keen, eager*; stem ācri-

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. Adjectives having one form in the nom. sing. for all genders, like audāx, are called adjectives of one ending; those having two

forms, like **brevis, breve**, adjectives of two endings; those having three forms, like **ācer, ācris, ācre**, adjectives of three endings.

b. Observe that adjectives of two and three endings have only **-ī** in the ablative singular. Compare the endings of i-stem adjectives with those of i-stem nouns (169). What differences are there?

NOTE.— Adjectives of one ending have the genitive given in the vocabularies; those of two or three endings have only the nominative given.

c. Decline **ācre animal**, *keen animal;* **breve corpus**, *short body;* **hostis audāx**, *bold enemy;* **avis ācris**, *keen bird.*

183. CAESAR IN GAUL (B.C. 58-51)

See 179, note.

Gāius Iūlius Caesar, audāx dux Rōmānōrum, Gallōs superāvit. Mīlitēs Caesarem māximē amābant, nam exemplum omnibus praebēbat cōnstantiae et fortitūdinis. Mīlitum salūtem imperātor diligenter cūrābat, omnīsque tolerābat labōrēs aeque āc (*equally with*) mīlitēs. Multae et fortēs erant in Galliā gentēs, sed commūne perīculum eās nōn coniūnxit. Itaque Caesar bellum cum eīs gessit et tandem omnem Galliam in (*under*) potestātem populī Rōmānī redēgit.

184. VOCABULARY

Caesar, Caesaris, m. *Caesar.*
commūnis, -e, *common.*
cōnstantia, -ae, f. *steadfastness.*
exemplum, -ī, n. *example.*
fortis, -e, *brave, strong.*
Gallia, -ae, f. *Gaul.*
gēns, gentis (genti-), f. *race, tribe.*
labor, labōris, m. *toil, hardship.*
omnis, -e, *all, the whole, every.*
perīculum, -ī, n. *danger.*
populus, -ī, m. *people.*
potestās, potestātis, f. *power.*

cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus, *care for, take care.*
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *manage, carry on* (war).
praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus, *cause, furnish, show.*
redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctus, *reduce.*
tolerō, tolerāre, tolerāvī, tolerātus, *bear, endure.*

LESSON XXVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION — Ī-VERBS

Ablative of Time

audiō (stem **audī-**), *hear*

Principal Parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus,** *hear*

185. Learn the active indicative present, imperfect, future, and perfect of **audiō** (501).

a. Compare the inflection of **audiō** with that of **capiō** (500). Observe that three syllables of **audiō** in the present differ in quantity from the corresponding ones of **capiō**: **audīs, audīmus, audītis.**

b. Observe that the perfect stem **audīv-** is formed by adding **v** to the verb-stem: **audī-, audīv-**. For the personal endings, see 132.

Note. — A few verbs of the fourth conjugation form the perfect irregularly; for example, **veniō** simply lengthens the e of the verb-stem: **veniō, vēnī**; **reperiō** doubles the p of the verb-stem: **reperiō, repperī.**

c. Like **audiō** inflect in the same tenses **reperiō**, *find*, and **veniō**, *come* (189).

186. EXERCISES

I. 1. Audiō, audiēbam, audiam. 2. Auditne? audiēbat, audiet. 3. Audiunt, audiēbant, audient. 4. Audīmus, audīvimus, audiētis. 5. Audīvī, audīs, audīvērunt. 6. Venīs, venit, vēnistī. 7. Vēnit, venīmus, vēnimus. 8. Reperīsne? repperistis, reperītis. 9. Repperī, reperit, repperit.

II. 1. He has found, they have found, they came. 2. You are hearing, you did come, he heard. 3. We have heard, we found, we came. 4. You are coming, they were finding, we shall come. 5. I shall hear, we hear, they heard. 6. He came, he has come, they hear.

187. *Model Sentences*

1. **Hominēs aestāte et hieme labōrant**, *men toil in summer and winter.*
2. **Decem annīs Caesar multa bella gessit**, *within ten years Caesar carried on many wars.*

a. Observe that the ablatives above are expressions of time. They answer the questions *when? in* or *within what time?*

188. Rule. — *Time* ***when or within which*** *is expressed by the ablative.*

189. VOCABULARY

aestās, aestātis, f. *summer.*
annus, -ī, m. *year.*
decem, num. adj. indecl. *ten.*
hiems, hiemis, f. *winter.*
hōra, -ae, f. *hour.*
lūx, lūcis, f. *light.*
nox, noctis (nocti-), f. *night.*
prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*
secundus, -a, -um, *second.*
tempus, temporis, n. *time.*
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *find.*
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus,[1] *come.*

190. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hieme ventus mare nūbīsque agitat. 2. Aestāte somnus est hominibus dēfessīs grātus. 3. Puerī nūbem avium prīmā lūce in marī vīdērunt. 4. Secundā noctis hōrā māgna avium nūbēs vēnit ex marī in terram. 5. Caesar bellum fortibus cum gentibus gessit eāsque paucīs annīs superāvit. 6. Perīculum commūne labōrēs Rōmānīs sociīsque praebuit.

II. 1. Welcome summer will come in a short time. 2. Who reduced the Gauls under (in with acc.) the power of the Roman people? 3. At what time did they come to the city? 4. At the second hour of the night (there) will be a full moon. 5. We have found an example of constancy.

[1] Future active participle. This is given in the principal parts, if it occurs, where the perfect passive participle is not in use.

LESSON XXIX

Pluperfect and Future Perfect — All Conjugations

191. Read again 59 and 131, *b*, and review the principal parts of all verbs that have occurred in the vocabularies, beginning with Lesson XVI.

192. *Paradigms*

Pluperfect

	I had loved, etc.		*I had advised*, etc.	
1.	amāveram	amāverāmus	monueram	monuerāmus
2.	amāverās	amāverātis	monuerās	monuerātis
3.	amāverat	amāverant	monuerat	monuerant

Future Perfect

	I shall have[1] *loved*, etc.		*I shall have*[1] *advised*, etc.	
1.	amāverō	amāverimus	monuerō	monuerimus
2.	amāveris	amāveritis	monueris	monueritis
3.	amāverit	amāverint	monuerit	monuerint

a. Observe that the pluperfect is formed on the perfect stems **amāv-**, **monu-**, by adding the imperfect of **sum** (502), and the future perfect by adding the future of **sum**. There is an exception in one form. Which?

b. Form in the same way as those above the first person singular of the pluperfect and future perfect of **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, **sum** on the perfect stems **rēx-**, **cēp-**, **audīv-**, **fu-**. Inflect and verify by reference to 499–502.

c. All verbs form the pluperfect and future perfect on the perfect stem in the same way.

d. Inflect the pluperfect and future perfect of **tolerō**, *bear*; **obsideō**, *besiege*; **gerō**, *manage*; **veniō**, *come*.

e. Review Vocabularies 180, 184, 189.

[1] Translate the second and third persons *will have*, etc.

193. EXERCISES

I. 1. Amāverat, monuerat, rēxerat. 2. Cēperat, audīverat, audīverant. 3. Audīverit, audīverint, cēperit. 4. Amāverant, monuerant, rēxerant. 5. Cēperō, rēxerō, audīverō. 6. Gesserās, vēnerās, obsēderās. 7. Gesseram, tolerāveram, obsēderam. 8. Fuerat, fuerant, fueris. 9. Fuerimus, fuerāmus, fuerō.

10. Dux fīlium virtūte laudāverat. 11. Fortī hominī fuerint multī et ācrēs amīcī (115). 12. Caesar multa bella in Galliā decem annīs gesserat. 13. Gallī oppida māgnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 14. Quō tempore noctis arma cēperis? 15. Inopia cibī populō fortī māgnōs praebuerit labōrēs. 16. Inter tēla ācrium hostium vēnerant ad mūrōs.

II. 1. We shall have come. 2. You had found. 3. He will have held in check. 4. They had caused. 5. They had come. 6. They will have defended. 7. Whom had he cared for?

8. Horatius had long held the enemy in check. 9. Soon he had dismissed (his) comrades. 10. Then he jumped down (**dēsiluit**) into the Tiber. 11. Alone he swam across to (his) comrades. 12. The common danger had not frightened the Gauls.

194. REVIEW

1. What word must always be used in translating the pluperfect? Ans. *had*. 2. Recall the three ways of translating the perfect, as **amāvit**. 3. Compare the pluperfect of **sum** with the imperfect of the same verb. 4. Compare the future of **sum** with the future perfect of the same verb. 5. How can you tell whether an **-iō** verb is of the third or the fourth conjugation? 6. What is the Latin way of saying "the Roman people"?

LESSON XXX

Syntax of Names of Towns: Locative Case

195. Names of towns and a few other words have a form called the *locative case*, which expresses the idea of *at, in, on.*

a. The locative has the following endings for names of towns:

	Sing.	Plur.	
1st Declension	**-ae**	**-īs** :	**Rōmae**, *at* or *in Rome;* **Athēnīs**, *at* or *in Athens.*
2d Declension	**-ī**	**-īs** :	**Corinthī**, *at* or *in Corinth;* **Delphīs**, *at* or *in Delphi.*
3d Declension	**-ī (e)**	**-ibus** :	**Carthāginī**, *at* or *in Carthage;* **Trallibus**, *at* or *in Tralles.*

b. Other locative forms are **domī**, *at home;* **humī**, *on the ground;* **mīlitiae**, *in the field* (of war); **rūrī**, *in the country.*

196. *Models*

1. **in oppidō**, *in the town.* — **in Ītaliā**, *in Italy.*
   Capuae, *at* or *in Capua.* — **Delphīs**, *at* or *in Delphi.* — **domī**, *at home.* — **rūrī**, *in the country.*

2. **ad flūmen**, *to the river.* — **in urbem**, *into the city.* — **in Ītaliam**, *to* or *into Italy.*
   Athēnās, *to Athens.* — **Rōmam**, *to Rome.* — **domum**, *home.* — **rūs**, *to* or *into the country.*

3. **ab, dē, ex agrīs**, *from the fields.* — **ab, dē, ex Ītaliā**, *from Italy.*
   Athēnīs, *from Athens.* — **Rōmā**, *from Rome.* — **domō**, *from home.* — **rūre**, *from the country.*

a. For the syntax of expressions of *place where*, *place whither*, and *place whence* other than names of towns, see the rules, 81, 160, 159.

b. Observe that the foregoing expressions of place denoted by names of towns, together with **domus**, **rūs**, etc., have no preposition.

197. Rules for names of towns and *domus* and *rūs*

1. *Place* **where** (*or* **in which**) *is expressed by the locative.*

2. *Place* **whither** (*or* **to which**) *is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.*

3. *Place* **whence** (*or* **from which**) *is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

198. VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur. *Athens.*
Capua, -ae, f. *Capua.*
Carthāgō, -inis, f. *Carthage.*
Corinthus, -ī, f. *Corinth* (47, 2).
Delphī, -ōrum, m. plur. *Delphi.*
frāter, frātris, m. *brother.*
Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal.*
Poenus, -ī, m. *a Carthaginian.*

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, iacitūrus, *lie down, lie.*

199. EXERCISES

I. 1. Prīmā lūce, hieme, aestāte. 2. Secundā noctis hōrā, decem hōrīs, annō secundō. 3. Rūre Rōmam venīre.

4. Meus frāter domī rūrī manēbat. 5. Rōmānī domī mīlitiaeque erant clārī. 6. Corinthī et Delphīs templa pulchra vīdimus. 7. Hannibal equitēs peditēsque Capuam mīsit. 8. Tandem ex Ītaliā Carthāginem communī periculō[1] properāvit. 9. Cūr, pigrī puerī, humī iacētis?

II. 1. From Delphi you came to Athens. 2. From Athens you hastened to Corinth. 3. From Corinth you came home to Rome. 4. From home we will send you (tē) into the country. 5. The boys were lying on the ground because they were tired.

[1] See 165.

LESSON XXXI

THE DEMONSTRATIVES **Hīc** AND **Ille**: READING LESSON

200. *Paradigms*

hīc, *this*; plur. *these* — **ille**, *that*; plur. *those*

SINGULAR

Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

a. Compare the declension of ille with that of is (138).

201. *Model Sentences*

1. Hīc puer est laetus, illa puella est trīstis. *this boy is merry, that girl is sad.*
2. Brūtus et Mārcus sunt amīcī: ille est impiger, hīc est piger. *Brutus and Marcus are friends; the former is active, the latter is lazy.*
3. Hōc dōnum deae est grātum, illud deō. *this gift is pleasing to the goddess, that (one) to the god.*

a. Observe in the model sentences two different uses of hīc and ille: in 1 and the first part of 3 they are used as demonstrative *adjectives* in agreement with nouns; in 2 and the last part of 3 they are used alone as demonstrative *pronouns*.

b. **Hīc** and **ille** are sometimes used as personal pronouns, like **is**, but less frequently, meaning *he, she, it;* often in contrast **hīc** means *the latter*, **ille** *the former*, as in the second model sentence.

c. Observe that **is** has been used in the exercises indifferently for *this* or *that* without emphasis, in agreement with a noun; while **hīc** means *this* and **ille** *that* with a certain emphasis. **Hīc** is applied to what is *near* the speaker in place, time, or thought. **Ille** is applied to what is *not near* the speaker in place, time, or thought.

d. **Ille** sometimes means *that well-known, that famous;* with this meaning it is commonly placed after its noun.

202. BRITAIN INVADED (B.C. 55 AND 54)

In īnsulā illā Britanniā ōlim habitābant Britannī. Hanc terram Rōmānī bis invāsērunt. Illī Britannī māgnā cum virtūte prō patriā pūgnābant; Rōmānī imperium aurumque capere tentābant. Illōs Cassivelaunus, dux impiger et audāx, hōs Caesar dūcēbat. Illī (dat.) erant mīlitēs multī et fortēs, sed hīc bellum cum eō fēliciter gerēbat. Caesar illīus agrōs vāstāvit oppidaque cēpit. Tandem Britannus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsit. Hīc obsidēs imperāvit (*demanded*). Hōs obsidēs trīstis ex Britanniā Rōmam dūxit.

203. VOCABULARY

bis, adv. *twice.*
Britannus, -ī, m. *a Briton.*
fēlīciter, adv. *successfully.*
imperium, imperī, n. *power, rule.*
impiger, -gra, -grum, *active.*
laetus, -a, -um, *merry, joyful.*
obses, obsidis, m. *hostage.*
trīstis, -e, *sad, gloomy.*
invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus, *invade.*

204. EXERCISES

1. Caesar gave his soldiers that (well-known) example of steadfastness. 2. Caesar had found a brave people in Britain. 3. They carried on war with him. 4. Great was the power of those tribes. 5. The hostages were not joyful, for Caesar had led them from (their) home.

LESSON XXXII

Passive Voice: Ablative of Agent

Active and Passive Indicative Present

205. *Paradigms*

Active Singular	Pers. End.	Passive Singular	Pers. End.
1. amō, *I love.*	-ō	amor, *I am loved.*	-r
2. amās, *you love.*	-s	amāris, -re, *you are loved.*	-ris, -re
3. amat, *he loves.*	-t	amātur, *he is loved.*	-tur
Plural		**Plural**	
1. amāmus, *we love.*	-mus	amāmur, *we are loved.*	-mur
2. amātis, *you love.*	-tis	amāminī, *you are loved.*	-minī
3. amant, *they love.*	-nt	amantur, *they are loved.*	-ntur

a. Observe that the passive forms above differ from the active only in the personal endings. To the stem amā- (final ā dropped in the first person) the passive endings are added, instead of the active.

b. Compare in the same way the imperfect and future active and passive (407). The passive endings are added to the tense-stems amābā- and amābi-, except in the second person singular of the future, where -bi- is changed to -be-. What is true of amō in the present, imperfect, and future holds true of moneō.

c. Review the active and learn the present, imperfect, and future of amō (405) and moneō (408) in the passive. Like amō inflect in the same tenses laudō, *praise;* and like moneō inflect doceō, *teach.*

206. EXERCISES

I. 1. Amat, amātur. 2. Amābat, amābātur. 3. Amābit, amābitur. 4. Amant, amantur. 5. Amābant, amābantur. 6. Amābuntne? amābunturne? 7. Amābō, amābor. 8. Amāmus,

amāmur. 9. Moneō, moneor. 10. Monēbam, monēbar. 11. Monēbō, monēbor. 12. Monēs, monēris. 13. Monēbitis, monēbiminī. 14. Monētis, monēminī.

II. 1. You praise, you are praised. 2. They were praising, they were praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. I teach, I am taught. 5. We teach, we are taught. 6. We shall teach, we shall be taught. 7. They teach, they are taught. 8. You will teach, you will be taught.

207. *Model Sentences*

1. **Agricola agrum arat**, *the farmer ploughs the field.*
2. **Ager ab agricolā arātur**, *the field is ploughed by the farmer.*

a. Observe the changes in turning the active into the passive: (1) the object in the active becomes the subject in the passive; (2) the subject, that is, the *doer* or *agent*, in the active is expressed in the passive by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

208. Rule. — *The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with* **ā** *or* **ab**.

NOTE. — When the doer is not a person, the preposition is omitted.

209. EXERCISES

I. 1. Meus frāter hunc puerum impigrum laudābat. 2. Hīc puer ā meō frātre laudābātur. 3. Illī hominēs hōs omnīs sustinēbunt Britannōs. 4. Ā quō nōn amātur imperium? 5. Haec puella laeta docet; illa trīstis ā nostrō magistrō docētur. 6. Īnsulam Britanniam bis fēlīciter invāsērunt Rōmānī. 7. Hī obsidēs Rōmam ā Caesare portābuntur; eōrum patria vāstābitur. 8. Mārcus domī iacet aeger.

II. 1. Who does not love power? 2. All these Britons will be held in check by those men. 3. This merry girl was taught by the master. 4. My brothers were praised by this boy.

LESSON XXXIII

The Relative Quī

210. *Paradigm*

quī, *who, which, what, that*

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

211. *Table of Meanings for Reference*

Note. — The meanings are not tabulated with reference to gender.

Nom. *who, which, what, that.*
Gen. *of whom, of which, of what, whose.*
Dat. *to* or *for whom, to* or *for which, to* or *for what.*
Acc. *whom, which, what, that.*
Abl. *by*, etc., *whom, which, what.*

a. Compare the declension of **quī** with that of **quis** (142). In what does the difference consist?

212. *Model Sentences*

1. **Puellae quās laudāvimus bonae erant**, *the girls whom we praised were good.*
2. **Cōnsilium quod ille homō dat laudātur**, *the advice which that man gives is praised.*
3. **Homō cui sunt multī rēmī est nauta**, *the man who has (to whom there are) many oars is a sailor.*
4. **Is quī est fortis laudātur**, *he who is brave is praised.*

a. Observe that the relative has the same gender and number as its antecedent, but the case may be different. In the model sentences the antecedents are in the nominative, while the relatives are (1 and 2) in the accusative, (3) in the dative, (4) in the nominative.

b. Observe that is in the fourth sentence does not refer to any particular person, but means *one, a man;* this is a common use of is as the antecedent of **quī**.

213. Rule. — *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its relation to some word in its own clause.*

214. VOCABULARY

captīvus, **-ī**, m. *prisoner, captive.*
cōnsilium, **cōnsilī**, n. *advice, plan.*
frūstrā, adv. *in vain.*
gaudium, **gaudī**, n. *joy.*
ingēns, **ingentis**, *huge, great.*
māter, **mātris**, f. *mother.*

servō, **servāre**, **servāvī**, **servātus**, *save.*

215. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hostēs impigrī ā quibus patria nostra vāstātur sunt Rōmānī. 2. Hostēs quī patriam nostram invāsērunt sunt Rōmānī. 3. Iī hominēs quōrum virtūte urbs tenēbātur et servābātur domum ē bellō venient. 4. Frūstrā, māter misera, dolēs volnere quod filius tuus habet. 5. Ingēns fuit fēminārum gaudium quārum virī (*husbands*) ē bellis vēnērunt. 6. Laetus est ille obses quī nōn tenētur sed līberātur. 7. Cōnsilia quae illī hominēs dabant urbem servāvērunt ingentem.

II. 1. That poor mother whose son is lying on the ground is grieving bitterly (**māximē**). 2. This (man) was a soldier at Zama. 3. He was wounded by the sword that you see. 4. The man to whom the sword belonged (**fuit**) at that time is a prisoner at Capua. 5. The prisoner by whom this soldier was wounded will be led (**dūcētur**) to Rome.

LESSON XXXIV

Active and Passive of Regō and Capiō

216. *a.* Review the active voice of **regō** and **capiō**, present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (499, 500).

b. Observe that to form the passive you have only to substitute the passive personal endings (205) for the active except in one form. Which one is that, and what is the change?

217. EXERCISES

I. 1. Regit, regitur. 2. Regēbat, regēbātur. 3. Reget, regētur. 4. Regunt, reguntur. 5. Regent, regentur. 6. Regis, regeris. 7. Regēbās, regēbāris. 8. Regēs, regēris. 9. Regimus, regimur. 10. Regitis, regiminī. 11. Regam, regar. 12. Capiunt, capiuntur. 13. Capiēbat, capiēbātur. 14. Capiet, capiētur. 15. Capient, capientur. 16. Capiēs, capiēris. 17. Capis, caperis. 18. Capiēbās, capiēbāris. 19. Capimus, capimur. 20. Capitis, capiminī.

a. Like **regō** inflect in both voices the same tenses of **dūcō**, *lead;* **mittō**, *send;* **scrībō**, *write.*

b. Like **capiō** inflect in both voices the same tenses of **iaciō**, *throw;* **recipiō**, *receive.*

II. 1. He leads, he is led. 2. They will lead, they will be led. 3. They lead, they are led. 4. You lead, you are led. 5. We shall lead, we shall be led. 6. We send, we are sent. 7. Is he sent? Are they sent? 8. He will send, he will be sent. 9. You are sent, you will be sent. 10. They were writing, I was writing. 11. We write, we shall write. 12. We throw, we are thrown. 13. We threw, we were thrown. 14. He will throw, they will be thrown. 15. Who receives? Who was received? 16. Who will receive? They will be received. 17. We shall receive, you will be received.

218. VOCABULARY

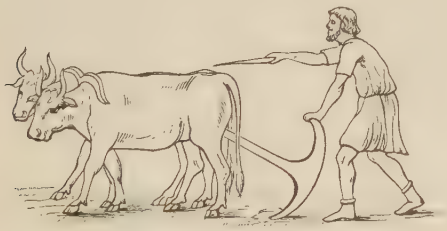
castra, **-ōrum**, n. plur. *camp.*
cōnsul, **cōnsulis**, m. *consul.*
exsul, **exsulis**, m. *exile.*
iam, adv. *already, now.*
īra, **-ae**, f. *anger, wrath.*
pāx, **pācis**, f. *peace.*

abdūcō, **abdūcere**, **abdūxī**, **abductus**, *lead away.*
recipiō, **recipere**, **recēpī**, **receptus**, *receive.*
scrībō, **scrībere**, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptus**, *write.*
vincō, **vincere**, **vīcī**, **victus**, *defeat, conquer.*

219. EXERCISES

1. Mīlitem gladiō volnerātum (*wounded*) vidēbāmus. 2. Exsul mātrem ingentī cum gaudiō vīdit. 3. Trīstēs erunt mātrēs quae cum captīvīs capientur. 4. Iam ad cōnsulem mittentur lēgātī. 5. Lēgātī dē pāce in castra cōnsulis vēnērunt. 6. Bene ā cōnsule recipiēbantur. 7. Nōn iam[1] fuit imperātor īrae plēnus. 8. Īra cōnsulis vincitur, hostēs ab eō abdūcuntur. 9. Frūstrā epistulās quās repperī scrīpsistī.

[1] **Nōn iam**, *no longer.*



ANCIENT PLOUGH

Nudus ara, sere nudus. — *Vergil*

LESSON XXXV

Personal and Reflexive Pronouns

220. *a.* Learn the personal and reflexive pronouns (42) with their meanings: **ego**, *I*; **tū**, *you*; **sē**, *himself, herself, itself.*

b. The personal pronoun of the third person, when not reflexive, is supplied by the demonstrative **is**, and sometimes by **hīc** or **ille**.

221. *Model Sentences*

1. **Ego tē laudō**; **tū mē culpās**, *I praise you; you blame me.*
2. **Omnēs hominēs sē** (or **sēsē**) **amant**, *all men love themselves.*
3. **Tū tē amās**; **omnēs nōs amāmus**, *you love yourself; we all love ourselves.*
4. **Fīlius mēcum domī manet**, *my son stays at home with me.*

a. Observe that verbs have often been used in the first and second persons without the subjects **ego**, **tū**, **nōs**, **vōs** being expressed (61. *a*). As subjects they are used only for emphasis or contrast.

b. The reflexive pronoun **sē** refers back to the subject of the clause in which it stands, as, in 2 above, **sē** refers to **hominēs**.

c. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are often used with reflexive sense, as in 3 above: **tē** and **nōs**.

d. The preposition **cum** with the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns is appended to them: **mēcum**, instead of **cum mē**; **vōbīscum**, instead of **cum vōbīs**, etc. So also usually with relative and interrogative pronouns: **quibuscum**, *with whom.*

222. *Model Sentences*

1. **Ego quī scrībō sum tuus amīcus**, *I who write am your friend.*
2. **Tū quī scrībis es meus amīcus**, *you who write are my friend.*

a. Observe that the relative does not change to conform to the *person* of the antecedent, but that the verb of the relative clause is in the same person as the antecedent.

223. VOCABULARY

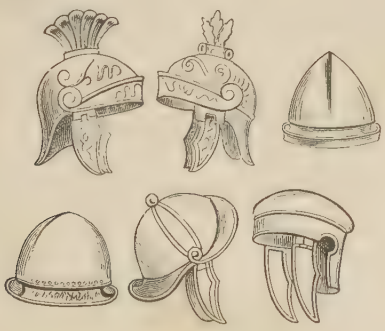
culpa, -ae, f. *blame, fault.*
epistula, -ae, f. *letter.*
galea, -ae, f. *helmet.*
numquam, adv. *never.*
sine, prep. with abl. *without.*
vīta, -ae, f. *life.*

culpō, culpāre, culpāvī, culpātus, *blame.*

224. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ad castra cōnsulis veniam. 2. Quis exsulis īram vīcit? 3. Frūstrā dē culpā tuā scrībitur. 4. Captīvī recipiuntur et abdūcuntur. 5. Puella sē culpat. 6. Līberōs nostrōs amāmus nōs omnēs. 7. Nōs sumus miserī, laetī estis vōs. 8. Tua vīta tibi, mea mihi est cāra. 9. Sine vōbīs et vōbīscum sumus miserī. 10. Omnia vestra cōnsilia nōbīs sunt grāta. 11. Vōs quī estis laetī ad nōs epistulās scrībitis.

II. 1. We who praise you blame them. 2. I shall walk in the garden with you. 3. Never shall I be miserable with you. 4. I who write this letter to you am at Carthage. 5. We praise ourselves; you blame yourselves. 6. What helmets do you see? Roman helmets.



HELMETS

LESSON XXXVI

Active and Passive of Audiō: Reading Lesson

225. *a*. Review the active voice of audiō, present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (501).

b. Observe that to form the passive you have only to add to the stem the passive personal endings (205) in place of the active. Compare 216, *b*.

226. EXERCISES

I. 1. Audit, auditur. 2. Audiēbat, audiēbātur. 3. Audiet, audiētur. 4. Audimus, audimur. 5. Audiēmus, audiēmur. 6. Audiam, audiar. 7. Auditis, audimini. 8. Audiētis, audiēminī. 9. Audis, audiris. 10. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 11. Audiunt, audiuntur. 12. Audiēbant, audiēbantur.

a. Like audiō inflect in the same tenses pūniō, *punish*; reperiō, *find*.

II. 1. I punish, am punished. 2. I was punishing, was punished. 3. I shall punish, shall be punished. 4. They punish, are punished. 5. They will punish, will be punished. 6. He finds, is found. 7. He found, was found. 8. He will find, will be found. 9. You will find, will be found. 10. You find, are found.

a. Review Vocabularies 218, 223.

227. CORIOLANUS AND HIS MOTHER

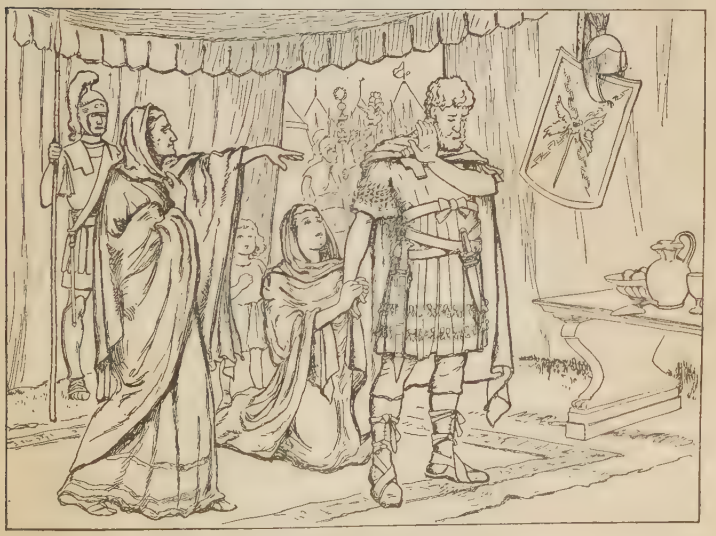
Ōlim ingēns terror urbī Rōmae ā Volscīs, quī erant populī Rōmānī hostēs audācēs, praebēbātur. Nam Volscī ā Coriolānō, exsule Rōmānō, concitābantur et dūcēbantur. Iam aedificia multa in agrīs ab hostibus dēlentur. Cīvēs ā cōnsule armantur, urbs cibō complētur. Frūstrā. Tum terrōre

ingentī Rōmānī mātrem Coriolānī ad eum mīsērunt dē pāce, quia illa ā fīliō māximē amābātur. Veturia, māter, in castra ad fīlium vēnit. Eam vidēns (*seeing*), "Ō mea patria," clāmāvit Coriolānus, "vīcistī īram meam!" et statim hostīs abdūxit. Sīc Rōma servābātur.

228. VOCABULARY

aedificium, -ī, n. *building.*
Coriolānus, -ī, m. *Coriolanus.*
sīc, adv. *thus.*
statim, adv. *at once.*
Veturia, -ae, f. *Veturia.*
Volscī, -ōrum, m. plur. *Volscians.*

armō, armāre, armāvī, armātus, *arm.*
clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus, *cry out, exclaim.*
compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *fill.*
concitō, concitāre, concitāvī, concitātus, *stir up, rouse.*
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *destroy, wipe out.*



"Patriae, fīlī, bellum īnfers?"

LESSON XXXVII

Possessive Adjectives: Ablative of Separation

229. The possessive adjectives are formed from the stems of the personal pronouns (492). They are also used without a noun as possessive pronouns.

meus, -a, -um (voc. sing. masc. **mī**), *my, mine.*
noster, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*
suus, sua, suum, *his* (*own*), *her* (*own*), *its* (*own*), *their* (*own*): *his, hers, its, theirs.*
tuus, -a, -um, *your, yours.*
vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours.*

Note. — When *your, yours* refers to one person, **tuus** is used; when to more than one, **vester**.

230. *Model Sentences*

1. **Mārcum ēius cūrā laudāmus**, *we praise Marcus for his care.*
2. **Puer amīcō librum suum dat**, *the boy gives his book to a friend.*

a. Observe that in 1 **ēius** does not refer to the subject of the sentence, but to the object: while in 2 **suum** does refer to the subject **puer**, as **suīs** to **Germānī** in 231. 3. **Suus** is *reflexive*, that is, refers back to the subject; the genitives of **is** are not reflexive. This distinction is important, because forms of **suus** may very often be translated like the genitives of **is**, — *his, her, its, their.*

b. **Suus** is emphatic also; hence it is often omitted in Latin where the meaning is clear without it and where its use would give too much emphasis. See, for example, 144, 1 and 2; also 234, II. 5.

231. *Model Sentences*

1. **Hīc homō cibō caret**, *this man lacks food.*
2. **Illō mē līberat perīculō**, *he frees me from that danger.*
3. **Germānī Rōmānōs ā fīnibus suīs arcēbant**, *the Germans kept the Romans off from their*[1] *lands.*

[1] That is, the Germans'.

a. Observe the use of the ablative to denote that from which there is freedom, removal, or separation, or that which is lacking. The ablative so used answers the questions *from what? of what?* and is called the *ablative of separation*. The ablative of *place whence*, with or without a preposition (158, 159) is of the same nature.

232. Rule. — *Words signifying* ***privation, removal, or separation*** *are followed by the ablative, without a preposition, or with the prepositions* **ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).**

233. VOCABULARY

aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick*.
avārus, -a, -um, *greedy*.
dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. *defender*.
Germānus, -ī, m. *a German*.
pecūnia, -ae, f. *money*.
vacuus, -a, -um, *empty, destitute of*.

arceō, arcēre, arcuī, ——, *keep off*.
careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus, *be in want of, lack*.
dēmigrō, dēmigrāre, dēmigrāvī, dēmigrātus, *remove, go away*.
prīvō, prīvāre, prīvāvī, prīvātus, *deprive*.
spoliō, spoliāre, spoliāvī, spoliātus, *rob, plunder*.

NOTE. — A preposition is used with the ablative after **dēmigrō**.

234. EXERCISES

I. 1. Germānī galeīs, hastīs scūtīsque armābantur. 2. Aedificiōrum dēfēnsōrēs culpābantur. 3. Quis nōn dolet culpīs suīs? 4. Statim clāmābant fēminae. 5. Sīc urbs complēbātur terrōre. 6. Statim hostēs concitābantur. 7. Avārī mīlitēs ārās spoliāvērunt dōnīs. 8. Urbem dēfēnsōribus vacuam repperērunt. 9. Vōs, pīrātae, arcēbit deus ā suā ārā. 10. Ille vir aeger aquā prīvābātur.

II. 1. Our friends lacked money. 2. My boy, that horse lacks grain and water. 3. We shall remove from the city into the country. 4. The goddess kept off the enemy from her own temple. 5. Those women were robbed of (their) children. 6. You will free us from care.

LESSON XXXVIII

PASSIVE VOICE — ALL CONJUGATIONS

Indicative Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect

235. *a*. Recall the principal parts of **amō** and examine the formation of the passive indicative perfect (497). Observe that it is formed by adding the present tense of **sum** to the perfect participle **amātus**.

Note. — The participle is declined like **bonus** in the nominative singular and plural to agree with the subject of the verb in gender and number.

b. Now examine the pluperfect and future perfect. How are these tenses formed?

c. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of all verbs are formed in the same way.

d. Recall the principal parts of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, and examine the formation of the three tenses in the same way (498–501). What do you discover? Learn these three tenses.

236. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vir amātus est, fēmina amāta est, bellum amātum est. 2. Virī amatī sunt, fēminae amātae sunt, bella amāta sunt. 3. Mīlitēs monitī erant, puer monitus erit, animal monitum est. 4. Agricola rēctus est, urbs rēcta est, oppidum rēctum est. 5. Captus sum, captus eram, captus erō. 6. Auditī sumus, auditī erāmus, auditī erimus. 7. Rēctus es, rēctus erās, rēctus eris. 8. Templa spoliāta sunt. 9. Volsci Rōmā abductī sunt.

II. 1. The greedy soldier was warned, had been warned, will have been warned. 2. The buildings have been taken, had been taken, will have been taken. 3. The territories had been ruled. 4. The cities will have been defended. 5. You had not been loved. 6. Thus we (fem.) shall have been heard. 7. Germans had been defenders of their country.

237. VOCABULARY

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient, old.*
arx, arcis (arci-), f. *citadel.*
cōpia, -ae, f. *plenty*, plur. *troops.*
crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*
ingēns, -ntis, *great, huge.*
mora, -ae, f. *delay.*
sine, prep. with abl. *without.*
verbum, -ī, n. *word.*

238. EXERCISES

1. Multa in Ītaliā oppida ā Rōmānīs aedificāta sunt. 2. Omnēs puellae rosis ōrnātae erant. 3. Tua verba ā mē audīta erunt. 4. Eō tempore urbs cibō mīlitibusque fuit vacua. 5. Bellum quod ā Caesare gestum est crūdēle fuit. 6. Cōpiae quae ab eō in Galliam missae sunt frūmentō caruērunt. 7. Aurum quod ā Caesare ex Galliā portātum erat in templō habitum est antīquō. 8. Ad tē sine morā scrībam. 9. In arce quae ab hominibus antīquīs aedificāta erat ignis fuit ingēns. 10. Omnia templa aurō spoliāta erant.

TEMPLE

LESSON XXXIX

239. REVIEW: READING LESSON

1. Give four locative forms, not names of towns, with their meanings. 2. Give the table of locative endings, singular and plural, of the first three declensions. 3. How do you say in Latin: (1) *in the town, to the town, from the town?* (2) *in Rome, to Rome, from Rome?* Give the four rules that apply. 4. What is the Latin for *the former, the latter?* 5. Write side by side the tables of active and passive personal endings for the first three tenses. 6. Give the passive future second person singular of **amō** and **moneō**. 7. Point out five examples of the ablative of agent in 227. 8. In what respects must the relative agree with its antecedent? 9. In 215, I. point out a relative in the accusative with its antecedent in the ablative. 10. Express in Latin *I who love, you who love, he who loves.* 11. What do the foregoing examples show about the Latin relative as to the *person* of the antecedent? 12. When do you express *your* by **tuus**, and when by **vester**? 13. Point out a sentence in 234, I. where **suus** is both reflexive and emphatic. 14. What two cases are used with **spoliō** and **prīvō**? (See 234, I. 7.) 15. In *we blame the man for his fault* should you translate *his* by **suus** or **ēius**?

240. SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL

See 179, note.

Scīpiō et Hannibal erant clārī imperātōrēs. Ille erat Rōmānus quī victoriās māgnās reportāvit; hīc Poenus quī Rōmānōs multīs pūgnīs vīcit. Hannibal puer[1] ad ārās ā patre adductus[2] odium iūrāvit in[3] Rōmānōs. Adulēscēns oppida in Hispāniā multa expūgnāvit, tum Alpīs montīs superāvit[4] Rōmānōsque saepe vīcit in Italiā. Scīpiō ad[5] Ticīnum flūmen vītam patris virtūte servāvit posteāque ad Cannās contrā Hannibalem sē fortem praebuit.

[1] *when a boy.* [2] *led.* [3] *against.* [4] *passed over.* [5] *near.*

Bellum in Āfricam est trānsportātum ibique Scīpiō Hannibalem ad Zamam superāvit. Māgnificum triumphum Rōmae habuit et ā populō Rōmānō appellātus est Āfricānus.

241. VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, -ntis, m. *a youth.*
flūmen, flūminis, n. *river.*
ibi, adv. *there.*
māgnificus, -a, -um, *splendid.*
mōns, -tis (monti-), m. *mountain.*
odium, odī, n. *hatred.*
posteā, adv. *afterwards.*
pūgna, -ae, f. *fight, battle.*

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *lead to.*
appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus, *call.*
expūgnō, expūgnāre, expūgnāvī, expūgnātus, *take by storm.*
iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātus, *swear, take an oath.*

SCIPIO

HANNIBAL

LESSON XL

FOURTH DECLENSION

The Stem ends in *u*

242. *Paradigms*

	gradus, m. *step*	**cornū**, n. *horn*		
STEMS:	**gradu-**	**cornu-**	TERMINATIONS	
		SINGULAR	MASC.	NEUT.
Nom.	**gradus**	**cornū**	**-us**	**-ū**
Gen.	**gradūs**	**cornūs**	**-ūs**	**-ūs**
Dat.	**graduī (-ū)**	**cornū**	**-uī (-ū)**	**-ū**
Acc.	**gradum**	**cornū**	**-um**	**-ū**
Abl.	**gradū**	**cornū**	**-ū**	**-ū**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	**gradūs**	**cornua**	**-ūs**	**-ua**
Gen.	**graduum**	**cornuum**	**-uum**	**-uum**
Dat.	**gradibus**	**cornibus**	**-ibus (-ubus)**	**-ibus (-ubus)**
Acc.	**gradūs**	**cornua**	**-ūs**	**-ua**
Abl.	**gradibus**	**cornibus**	**-ibus (-ubus)**	**-ibus (-ubus)**

a. Dissyllables in **-cus**, **artus**, *joint*, **portus**, *harbor*, and a few other nouns have the dative and ablative plural in **-ubus**.

243. Rule of Gender. — *Nouns of the fourth declension in* **-us** *are masculine; those in* **-u** *are neuter.*

NOTE. — For general rules of gender, see 47, 2.

a. **Domus**, *house*, **Īdūs**, *the Ides*, **manus**, *hand*, and a few others are feminine.

b. For the declension of **domus**, see 482. **Domī** is used only as a locative (195, *b*).

c. Decline **exercitus māgnus**, *large army;* **mea manus**, *my hand;* **cornū longum**, *long horn.*

244. VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, m. *coming.*
altus, -a, -um, *high, tall, deep.*
cantus, -ūs, m. *song, singing.*
cīvitās, cīvitātis, f. *the state.*
cornū, -ūs, n. *horn, wing* (of an army).
domus, -ūs, f. *house, home.*
exercitus, -ūs, m. *army.*
frōns, frondis, f. *leaf, foliage.*
gradus, -ūs, m. *step, degree.*
lacus, -ūs, m. *lake.*
manus, -ūs, f. *hand.*
ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. *ornament.*
palūs, palūdis, f. *marsh.*
quercus, -ūs, f. *oak tree.*

congregō, congregāre, congregāvī, congregātus, *gather, assemble.*
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *do, make.*

245. EXERCISES

I. 1. Inter scholam et domum multōs facimus gradūs. 2. Adventus avium nōs dēlectat. 3. Eārum cantūs cum gaudiō audīmus. 4. Hieme cantūs nōn iam[1] audiuntur. 5. Avēs in lacubus palūdibusque sē congregant. 6. Puerī avium domōs altīs in quercubus reperiunt. 7. Quercūs frōns antīquīs temporibus erat victōris ōrnāmentum. 8. Salūs cīvitātis in manibus cōnsulum erat. 9. Cōnsulēs erant exercituum imperātōrēs.

II. 1. Many animals fight with their[2] horns. 2. Many lakes are seen among the mountains. 3. The songs of birds were heard among the oaks. 4. We had been delighted by the coming of the birds. 5. Their[3] songs were gladly heard by us, by you, by all. 6. Our house lacks children. 7. The state will not lack brave citizens.

[1] See foot-note, p. 87.
[2] Is this word to be translated into Latin? See 230, *b.*
[3] Is this word to be omitted in translation or not?

LESSON XLI

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Ablative of Comparison

246. Latin adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

247. *Models*

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus (alto-), *high, deep*	**altior, altius**	**altissimus, -a, -um**
brevis (brevi-), *short*	**brevior, brevius**	**brevissimus, -a, -um**
audāx (audāci-), *bold*	**audācior, audācius**	**audācissimus, -a, -um**

a. Observe that the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by dropping the stem vowel and adding **-ior** for the masculine and feminine and **-ius** for the neuter: the superlative by adding **-issimus, -issima, -issimum.**

248. *Declension of a Comparative*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	**altior**	**altius**	**altiōrēs**	**altiōra**
Gen.	**altiōris**	**altiōris**	**altiōrum**	**altiōrum**
Dat.	**altiōrī**	**altiōrī**	**altiōribus**	**altiōribus**
Acc.	**altiōrem**	**altius**	**altiōrēs, -īs**	**altiōra**
Abl.	**altiōre, -ī**	**altiōre, -ī**	**altiōribus**	**altiōribus**

a. Compare **cārus** (cāro-), *dear;* **levis** (levi-), *light;* **prūdēns** (prūdenti-), *wise;* and decline the comparative of each like **altior.**

249. *Model Sentences*

1. **Pīnus altior est quam quercus,**
2. **Pīnus altior est quercū,** } *the pine is taller than the oak.*

a. Observe that you can say in Latin, without difference of meaning, **altior quam quercus** and **altior quercū**.

250. Rule. — *The comparative is followed by the ablative when* ***quam*** *(than) is omitted.*

a. When **quam** is expressed, the same case follows that precedes it. See 252, I. 7.

251. VOCABULARY

albus, -a, -um, *white.*
brevis, -e, *short, brief.*
canis, canis, m. and f. *dog.*
elephantus, -ī, m. *elephant.*
fidēlis, -e, *faithful, trusty.*
iter, itineris, n. *way, march* (482).
leō, leōnis, m. *lion.*
nix, nivis, f. *snow.*
pīnus, -ī (abl. **pīnū**), f. *pine tree.*
prūdēns, prūdentis, *wise, sagacious.*
quam, conj. *than.*
vīta, -ae, f. *life.*

252. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quod iter brevius est quam illud? 2. Quod iter brevius est illō? 3. Cōpiae ad (*near*) palūdem māgnam sē congregāvērunt. 4. Inter exercitūs iacet lacus. 5. Patria nōbīs est cārior vītā. 6. Mare est altius flūminibus altissimīs. 7. Fortiōrem exercitum quam tuum nōn vīdī. 8. Mihi grātior est amīcī adventus cantū avium. 9. Cūius canis nostrō est fidēlior? 10. Montēs altissimī aestāte nive sunt albī. 11. Cīvēs sapientissimī sunt cīvitātis ōrnāmentum māgnum.

II. 1. My hand is broader than yours. 2. The elephant is bolder than the horse. 3. Elephants are more sagacious than lions. 4. I have seen a white oak taller than your house. 5. Lions are the boldest animals. 6. Oaks are broader than pines. 7. That man took (**faciō**) steps longer than mine. 8. Why was I deprived of my money? 9. The foliage of the oak is most dear to me.

LESSON XLII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES — *Continued*

Partitive Genitive

253. *Models*

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
miser (misero-), *wretched*	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, **-a, -um**
ācer (ācri-), *keen*	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, **-a, -um**

a. Observe that the comparative of adjectives in **-er** is formed regularly (247, *a*), but the superlative is formed by adding **-rimus, -a, -um** to the positive.

254. The following six adjectives in **-lis** form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by dropping the final vowel of the stem and adding **-limus, -a, -um**. Commit these to memory with their meanings and comparison.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
facilis, -e, *easy*	facilior, **-ius**	facillimus, **-a, -um**
difficilis, -e, *hard*	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, *like*	similior, **-ius**	simillimus, **-a, -um**
dissimilis, -e, *unlike*	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, *low*	humilior, **-ius**	humillimus, **-a, -um**
gracilis, -e, *slender*	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um

255. *Model Sentences*

1. **Via est asperior,** *the road is rather* (or *too*) *rough.*
2. **Via est asperrima,** *the road is very rough.*

a. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used without making comparison between two objects; then the comparative means *rather* or *too* and the superlative *very* or *exceedingly*.

256. *Model Sentences*

1. **Ille vir plūs pecūniae habet quam tū,** *that man has more (of) money than you.*
2. **Multī mīlitum volnerātī sunt,** *many of the soldiers were wounded.*
3. **Nihil novī audīvī,** *I have heard nothing (of) new.*

a. Observe that each genitive denotes a whole, and the word on which it depends denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, of which a part is taken, is called a *partitive genitive.*

b. Sometimes ē (ex) with the ablative is used instead of the partitive genitive; regularly so with cardinal numerals: **quīnque ex mīlitibus,** *five of the soldiers.*

257. Rule. — *The partitive genitive is used to denote a whole of which a part is taken.*

258. VOCABULARY

āēr, āeris (acc., **āera**), m. *air.*
angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*
frīgidus, -a, -um, *cold.*
Latīnus, -a, -um, *Latin.*
lēnis, -e, *gentle, soft.*
lingua, -ae, f. *tongue, language.*
lītus, lītoris, n. *shore.*
pars, partis (parti-), f. *part.*

259. EXERCISES

I. 1. Multum itineris est angustum sed facillimum. 2. Prīmā lūce partem hostium vīdimus in monte. 3. Omnium urbis viārum illa fuit brevissima. 4. Hominēs Āfricae hominibus Eurōpae sunt dissimillimī (117). 5. Āēr hōc in lītore est lēnior; nōn saepe est frīgidissimus. 6. Linguam Latīnam repperī difficiliōrem. 7. Hannibal in (*against*) Rōmānōs ingēns odium iūrāvit. 8. Ēius fīnis vītae nōn fuit fēlīx.

II. 1. Your faithful dog is very like mine. 2. Snow lies white and very deep on these shores in winter. 3. My sword is rather long. 4. You have plenty of courage, but not much money. 5. Have you a friend more sagacious than you (are)?

LESSON XLIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES — *Continued*

Ablative of Degree of Difference

260. Both the comparative and the superlative of several common adjectives are irregular. Commit to memory the following with their meanings and comparison: —

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um, *good*	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, *great*	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, *bad*	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, *much*	——, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī, -ae, -a, *many*	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
parvus, -a, -um, *small*	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
iuvenis, -e, *young*	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
senex, senis, *old* (482)	senior (māior nātū)	maximus nātū
vetus, veteris, *old*	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

261. *Declension of* plūs, *more;* plural, *more, many, several.*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

262. Certain adjectives form their comparative and superlative from prepositions or adverbs, and certain others have two forms in the superlative. See 489. These should be learned as they occur in the vocabularies.

263. *Model Sentences*

1. **Lūna est multō minor quam terra**, *the moon is much smaller than the earth.*
2. **Pater pede altior est fīliō**, *the father is a foot taller than his son.*

a. Observe that the ablatives **multō** and **pede** answer the question (*by*) *how much?* They denote the *degree of difference* between the objects compared.

264. Rule. — *Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.*

265. VOCABULARY

centum, num. adj. indecl. *a hundred.*
Cicerō, -ōnis, m. *Cicero.*
cīvis, -is (cīvi-), m. *citizen.*
īnferus, -a, -um, *low, below* (489).
interdum, adv. *sometimes.*
mendācium, -ī, n. *lying, falsehood.*
nātū (abl.), m. *by birth, in age.*
opera, -ae, f. *work.*
ōrātor, -ōris, m. *orator.*
pigritia, -ae, f. *laziness.*
plūs, plūris, *more.*
Pompēius, -ī, m. *Pompey.*
sapiēns, sapientis, *wise.*
sex, num. adj. indecl. *six.*
superus, -a, -um, *high, above* (489).

266. EXERCISES

I. 1. Aliquid (*something*) novī saepe audiō. 2. Caesar sex annīs minor nātū erat quam Pompēius. 3. Āēr urbis nostrae est asperrimus. 4. Hieme centum gradibus frīgidius est quam aestāte. 5. Rūrī sunt viae pedibus multis angustiōrēs quam in urbe. 6. Optimōs cīvīs amāmus, timēmus pessimōs. 7. Tua operae pars est māior meā. 8. Summum montem īmamque palūdem videō.

II. 1. Pompey was six years older than Caesar. 2. Cicero was the most famous of Roman orators. 3. The greatest orators are sometimes the worst citizens. 4. But Cicero saved Rome by the wisest plans. 5. What is worse than laziness? 6. Lying is much worse than laziness.

LESSON XLIV

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

267. *Models*

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
cārē (from **cārus**), *dearly*	cārius	cārissimē
miserē (from **miser**), *wretchedly*	miserius	miserrimē
ācriter (from **ācer**), *eagerly*	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (from **facilis**), *easily*	facilius	facillimē
bene (from **bonus**), *well*	melius	optimē
male (from **malus**), *badly*	pēius	pessimē
multum (from **multus**), *much*	plūs	plūrimum

a. Review the comparison of the adjectives from which the above adverbs are derived and learn the comparison of the adverbs and their meanings.

b. Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective; and that the superlative, with one exception, is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final **-us** to **-ē**.

c. Compare the adjectives **brevis**, *short;* **fēlix**, *lucky;* **līber**, *free;* **similis**, *like;* then compare the adverbs formed from them: **breviter**, *briefly;* **fēlīciter**, *successfully;* **līberē**, *freely;* **similiter**, *similarly*. Commit to memory the meaning of these adverbs.

268. EXERCISES

I. 1. Parentēs līberōs māximē amant. 2. Eīs cōnsilia dant optima. 3. Prō eīs labōrant dīligentissimē. 4. Mox grāmen arborēsque virēbunt. 5. Tum in illam silvam amplam quam hinc vidēmus errābimus. 6. Cūr linguae Lātīnae plūs operae nōn dās? 7. Eam multō facilius discēs quam frāter māior nātū tuus. 8. Ex hōc summō monte facile videō sex urbēs centumque viās. 9. In īmīs terrae partibus sunt flūmina

parva. 10. Sapientissimē dīxit pater meus: "Mendācium est pēius pigritiā." 11. Sed sine dubio est pigritia pessimum vitium.

II. 1. A very famous orator was six years older than Caesar. 2. Sometimes Caesar's enemies fought more bravely than his soldiers. 3. But his soldiers fought very bravely. 4. Often he suddenly changed his camp. 5. He carried on many wars successfully. 6. He ruled Rome wisely and well. 7. He was killed there by his enemies.

269. VOCABULARY

amplus, -a, -um, *large, honorable.*
arbor, -oris, f. *tree.*
dīligenter, adv. *diligently.*
diū (diūtius, diūtissimē), adv. *long.*
dubium, dubī, n. *doubt.*
grāmen, -inis, n. *grass.*
hinc, adv. *hence, from here.*
parēns, parentis, m. and f. *parent.*
prō, prep. with abl. *for, on behalf of.*
sapienter, adv. *wisely.*
subitō, adv. *suddenly.*
vitium, vitī, n. *fault.*

discō, discere, didicī, discitūrus, *learn.*
dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give.*
errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus, *wander, err.*
mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus, *change.*
necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus, *kill.*
vireō, virēre, viruī, ——, *be green.*

270. CONVERSATION

1. Cūr in hōc lītore manēs? Quia hīc (*here*) āera lēnissimum repperī; hīc mare est pulcherrimum.

2. Diūne manēbis hōc in locō angustō? Nōn diū; mox in urbem ambulābō, ibique diūtissimē manēbō.

3. Viane in urbem est asperrima? Pars viae est asperior, pars facillima.

4. Quandō (*when*) in hanc terram vēnistī? Proximo (*last*) annō dē Germaniā dēmigrāvī cum parentibus.

5. Quantō (*how much*) altior es frātre? Capite altior.

VIEW OF NAPLES AND VESUVIUS

LESSON XLV

READING LESSON: REVIEW

271. A LETTER FROM POMPEII

Sī tū valēs, bene est; ego quoque valeō. Hanc epistulam ad tē laetus scrībō. Medicī cōnsiliō cum parentibus in Ītaliā hiemāvī. Dum apud vōs nivēs omnia implent, nōs hīc nivem rārō vidēmus; āēr est lēnissimus; rīdet, ut (*as*) est apud poētās, caelum. Interdum in hortore ambulō vel in hortīs amplīs erro, nam grāmen arborēsque iam virent. Hinc videō Vesuvium montem, hinc tōtam ferē urbem, hinc pulchrās īnsulās in marī sitās. Linguae Latīnae cotidiē multum dō operae. Eam linguam facilius Graecā discō. Sed iam fīnem faciam epistulae; mox cōram omnia tibi nārrābō. Valē, mī amīce.

272. CONVERSATION

1. Num Ītalia hieme implētur nive? Montēs altissimī nive implentur.

2. Nōnne semper rīdet caelum? Ferē semper caelum rīdet.

3. Ubi est terra pulchrior Ītaliā? Pulchrior terra nōn est quam Ītalia.

4. Num Ītaliae sunt flūmina longissima? Tiberis et Padus sunt longiōrēs.

5. Suntne ēius urbēs pulcherrimae? Pulcherrimae Eurōpae sunt urbēs.

273. VOCABULARY

apud, prep. with acc. *at, with.*
cōram, adv. *face to face.*
cotīdiē, adv. *daily.*
ferē, adv. *almost.*
hīc, adv. *here.*
medicus, -ī, m. *doctor, physician.*
nōnne, interrog. adv. *not?* Suggests the answer *yes.*
num, interrog. adv. Suggests the answer *no.*
quoque, adv. *also, too.*
rārō, adv. *seldom.*
sī, conj. *if.*
situs, -a, -um, *situated.*
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole* (312).
vel, conj. *or.*

hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātūrus, *spend the winter.*
impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus, *fill, cover.*
rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus, *smile, laugh.*
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, *be well;* **valē**, *farewell.*

274. REVIEW

1. Give the endings of the comparative in the nominative. 2. Give the six adjectives that form the superlative in **-limus**. 3. How do adjectives in **-er** form the superlative? Compare **ācer** and **asper**; also **iuvenis** and **senex**. 4. Give the genitive plural of **melior** and **plūs**; give the masculine and feminine accusative plural. 5. How do you make the comparative and superlative of most adverbs derived from adjectives? 6. Compare **pulchrē**, *beautifully*, and **ācriter**, *eagerly*. 7. Express in Latin *six of the oak trees; I am a head taller than you.*

LESSON XLVI

FIFTH DECLENSION: The Stem ends in ē

Accusative of Extent

275. *Paradigms*

	diēs, m. *day*		rēs, f. *thing*			
	Stems: diē-		rē-		Terminations	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ĕī	-ērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ĕī	-ēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

a. Only diēs and rēs are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and accusative plural.

276. Rule of Gender. — *Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except* **diēs**, *which is commonly masculine in the singular and always in the plural.*

277. *Model Sentences*

1. Decem annōs Trōia oppūgnābātur, *Troy was besieged for ten years.*
2. Turris alta est centum pedēs, *the tower is a hundred feet high.*

a. The accusative annōs denotes duration or extent of *time;* pedēs, extent of *space*. Such accusatives answer the questions *how long? how far?* in time or space, and may be called *accusatives of extent.*

278. Rule. — *Extent of* **time** *or* **space** *is expressed by the accusative.*

279. VOCABULARY

– **aciēs, -ēī**, f. *line of battle.*
castra, -ōrum, n. plur. *camp.*
decem, indecl. *ten.*
– **diēs, -ēī**, m. *day.*
– **fidēs, -eī**, f. *trust, confidence.*
Gallus, -ī, m. *a Gaul.*
impetus, -ūs, m. *attack.*
mīlle, *thousand* (304).
mīlle passuum, *thousand (of) paces, mile* (305, *e*).
passus, -ūs, m. *pace, step.*
plānitiēs, -ēī, f. *plain.*
posterus, -a, -um, *next* (489).
quīnque, indecl. *five.*
rēs, -eī, f. *thing, event, fact.*
– **spēs, -eī**, f. *hope.*

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrus, *go off, depart.*
exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātus, *await, expect.*
īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, *draw up, marshall.*
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *put, place, pitch* (*camp*).

280. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar castra summō in monte posuit. 2. Castra summō in monte ā Caesare posita sunt. 3. Hinc hostēs māgnā in plānitiē vīsī sunt. 4. Inter hunc montem et illam plānitiem erat flūmen quod centum pedēs erat lātum. 5. Caesar aciem īnstrūxit impetumque hostium exspectābat. 6. Ēius equitēs māiōrem diēī partem in cornibus manēbant. 7. Sed hostēs impetum nōn fēcērunt. 8. Nam parvam victōriae spem habuērunt. 9. Posterō diē quīnque mīlia [1] passuum ex illō locō discessērunt. 10. Tum frūmentō plūrīs diēs caruērunt.

II. 1. Caesar heard about this fact from several messengers. 2. His soldiers, too, saw the camp of the enemy not many miles away from (ab) their own [2] camp. 3. Caesar had the greatest confidence in his soldiers.[3] 4. But the river was much too deep. 5. This fact deprived the soldiers of all hope. 6. His soldiers were deprived of all hope by this event.

[1] See 305, *e*. [2] See 229. [3] *in his soldiers:* expressed by the dative.

LESSON XLVII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Purpose Clauses with ut and nē

281. *Paradigms*

Act. Subjv. Pres.		Pass. Subjv. Pres.	
1. amem	amēmus	1. amer	amēmur
2. amēs	amētis	2. amēris, -re	amēminī
3. amet	ament	3. amētur	amentur

282. *Subjunctive Present*

	Active				
mone, reg, capi, audi	-am, -ās,	-at,	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant
	Passive				
	-ar, -āris (-re),	-ātur,	-āmur,	-āminī,	-antur

a. Learn the present subjunctive of **sum** (502).

283. *Model Sentences*

1. Cīvēs sē armant ut pūgnent, *the citizens arm themselves that they may fight, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, for the purpose of fighting, to fight.*
2. Puerī labōrant nē culpentur, *the boys work that they may not be blamed, so that they may not be blamed, in order not to be blamed, lest they be blamed.*

a. Observe that the dependent clauses express the *purpose* of the action in the principal clauses, **ut** introducing affirmative and **nē** negative clauses.

b. Observe the various ways of translating **ut** (*that*, etc.) and **nē** (*that . . . not*, etc.) and the subjunctive. Purpose clauses may be translated by the English infinitive, but the Latin infinitive must not be used to express purpose.

284. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used with* **ut** *and* **nē** *to express purpose.*

285. VOCABULARY (REVIEW)

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *destroy.*
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead.*
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *make, do.*
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send.*
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*
pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī, pūnītus, *punish.*
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *receive.*
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *find.*
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see.*

286. EXERCISES

I. 1. Mittitur ut { ōrnet, moneat, regat, capiat, ōrnētur, moneātur, regātur, capiātur, audiat, audiātur.

2. Eōs mittimus ut { ōrnent, moneant, regant, capiant, ōrnentur, moneantur, regantur, capiantur, audiant, audiantur.

3. Tē moneō ut { amēs, moneās, regās, capiās, audiās, amēris, moneāris, regāris, capiāris, audiāris.

4. Eum monēmus nē miles sit. 5. Eōs monēmus nē mīlitēs sint. 6. Vōs moneō ut prūdentēs sītis. 7. Nōs monet ut sīmus ācrēs diem noctemque.

II. 1. He is sent in order that he may fight, destroy, write, do, find. 2. He will send them that they may destroy, write, do, find. 3. You (sing.) are sent to destroy, write, do, find. 4. They are sent that the city may not be destroyed, ruled, taken, punished. 5. He advises us not to be called, moved, led, taken, found. 6. We advise them not to move, see, write, do, find. 7. I advise him to be active.

LESSON XLVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — *Continued*

PURPOSE CLAUSES — *Continued:* RESULT CLAUSES

287. *Paradigm*

SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT

amāre **monēre** **regere**	ACTIVE		
	-m, -s,	**-t**	**-mus, -tis, -nt**
capere **audīre** **esse**	PASSIVE		
	-r, -ris (-re), -tur		**-mur, -minī, -ntur**

a. Observe that the subjunctive imperfect can always be formed by adding the personal endings (205) to the active infinitive present, but the final *e* of the infinitive is sometimes lengthened. See 497–502.

288. *Model Sentences*

1. **Cīvēs sē armābant ut pūgnārent,** *citizens armed themselves that they might fight, to fight,* etc. (283).
2. **Cīvēs pūgnābant nē oppidum dēlērētur,** *citizens fought that the town might not be destroyed.*

a. Compare the above sentences with those of 283. The subjunctive present follows the indicative present, the subjunctive imperfect follows the indicative imperfect or perfect. So also in 289.

289. *Model Sentences*

1. **Iter tam longum est ut puer sit dēfessus,** *the journey is so long that the boy is tired out.*
2. **Puer tam malus fuit ut ā magistrō nōn laudārētur,** *the boy was so bad that he was not praised by his master.*

a. Observe that the above dependent clauses express *result*, **ut** introducing affirmative and **ut nōn** negative clauses.

290. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used with* **ut** *and* **ut nōn** *to express result.*

291. VOCABULARY

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m. *consul.*
epistula, -ae, f. *letter.*
ita, adv. *so, in such a way.*
paucī, paucae, pauca (plur.), *few.*
semper, adv. *always.*
tam, adv. *so, so very.*

accidō, accidere, accidī, ——, *fall upon, happen.*
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *act, do.*
cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *learn, know.*
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, ——, *live.*

292. EXERCISES

I. 1. Accidit (pres.) ut — vocem, dūcātur, recipiās, mittantur. 2. Accidit (perf.) ut nōn — vocārēs, dēlērētur, mitterem, reciperet. 3. Accidit ut lūna plēna esset. 4. Puer ita ēgit ut ab omnibus amārētur. 5. Urbs dēlēta est nē ab hostibus caperētur. 6. Urbs tam fortiter dēfēnsa est ut decem diēbus nōn caperētur. 7. Hostēs in silvās fūgērunt nē ā nostrīs mīlitibus vidērentur. 8. Hostēs in silvās fūgērunt ut ā nostrīs mīlitibus nōn vidērentur. 9. Illī parentēs ita vīxērunt ut līberī essent cārissimī. 10. Caesar tantam (*so great*) fidem mīlitibus[1] habuit ut impetum posterō diē faceret.

II. 1. It happened that — I sent, he was sent, they were led, they wrote. 2. It happens that he does not — punish, call, receive, find. 3. They were so few that they fled. 4. They were so brave that they did not flee. 5. I was sent to carry a letter to Rome. 6. Who of us[2] is so wise as to know all things (**omnia**)? 7. The lieutenant led the soldiers out of the camp in order to draw up a line of battle. 8. It happened that the enemy did not draw up a line of battle for six hours.

[1] Compare 280, II. 3, and note.

[2] **nostrum**, not **nostrī**.

LESSON XLIX

Indirect Question: Sequence of Tenses

293. *Paradigm*

amāv monu rēx	Active Subjunctive Perfect	-erim, -eris, -erit -erimus, -eritis, -erint
cēp audīv fu	Active Subjunctive Pluperfect	-issem, -issēs, -isset -issēmus, -issētis, -issent

a. Make similar tables to illustrate the passive subjunctive perfect and pluperfect in all conjugations (497–502).

294. *Model Sentences*

Direct Question	Indirect Question
1. Ubi sunt? *where are they?*	2. Audit ubi sint, *he hears where they are.*

a. Observe that the dependent clause in 2 begins with an interrogative word (ubi) and contains the substance of the direct question 1. Such a dependent clause is called an *indirect question.*

295. Rule. *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

296. *Model of Sequence*

Principal Tenses

1. Audit, *he hears*
2. Audiet, *he will hear*
3. Audīverit, *he will have heard*

} ubi sint, *where they are,* ubi fuerint, *where they were* or *have been.*

Historical Tenses

1. Audiēbat, *he was hearing*
2. Audīvit, *he heard*
3. Audīverat, *he had heard*

} ubi essent, *where they were,* ubi fuissent, *where they had been.*

a. Observe what tenses of the subjunctive follow the present, future, and future perfect (*principal tenses*), and what tenses follow the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect (*historical tenses*).

297. Rule. — *A principal tense is followed by the subjunctive present or perfect; an historical tense by the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect.*

a. Occasionally the perfect (classed as an historical tense) meaning *have, has* . . . , is followed by the subjunctive present or perfect.

298. VOCABULARY

cūr, adv. *why?*
dīc (imperative), *say, tell.*
num, adv. *whether* (in indirect questions). See 273.
quō, adv. *whither?*
quot, adv. *how many?*
ubi, adv. *where?*
unde, adv. *whence?*

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus, *ask.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*

299. EXERCISES

I. 1. Scit quid agant, quid ēgerint. 2. Sciēbat quid agerent, quid ēgissent. 3. Dīc mihi cūr rīdeant, cūr rīserint. 4. Audīverant unde mīlitēs venīrent, unde mīlitēs vēnissent. 5. Rogāvērunt cūr laudārētur, cūr laudātus esset. 6. Rogat cūr laudentur, cūr laudātī sint. 7. Num in manibus ambulās? 8. Quid illī puerī fēcērunt? 9. Dīc nōbīs quid illī puerī fēcerint. 10. Quō volant eae columbae? 11. Bene scīmus quō volent; domum volant. 12. Rogāvī num saepe Rōmae fuisset.

II. 1. Tell me where you were, what you did. 2. These came to see, those to be seen. 3. They are so lazy that they do not work. 4. He asked me why I had come. 5. I had heard where he had been. 6. The general asked whether they had all come from home. 7. How many soldiers are coming? 8. Do you know how many soldiers are coming?

LESSON L

READING LESSON: REVIEW

300. CAESAR WINS A VICTORY

Posterō diē Caesar ex castrīs exercitum ēdūxit et iter[1] ad flūmen fēcit.[1] Quae rēs hostibus nōta est, quōrum peditātus ā nostrīs summō in colle vidēbātur.

Tum Caesar equitēs in cornibus conlocāvit ut peditātum iuvārent, et mīlitum suōrum animōs ad pūgnam ita concitāvit. "Mīlitēs, omnis reī pūblicae spēs in nostrā virtūte posita est. Audācēs fortūna iuvat. Fortibus erit victōria." Hostēs tam ācriter in nostram aciem impetum fēcērunt ut hī paululum (*a little*) cēderent. Brevī autem tempore hostēs ita superātī sunt ut ex omnibus pūgnae partibus trāns flūmen fugerent. Eōrum dux captus[2] et Rōmam missus est.

301. VOCABULARY

ācriter, adv. *spiritedly*.
animus, -ī, m. *mind, spirit*.
autem,[3] conj. *but*.
collis, -is (colli-), m. *hill*.
equitātus, -ūs, m. *cavalry*.
peditātus, -ūs, m. *infantry*.
pūgna, -ae, f. *battle, field (of battle)*.
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f. *republic, commonwealth, state*.
trāns, prep. with acc. *across*.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, *give way, retire*.
conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, *set, station, place*.
ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus, *lead out, draw out, draw*.
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *aid, help*.

302. EXERCISES

1. Caesar drew up his line of battle on a hill. 2. There the soldiers remained a part of the day. 3. In order to rouse

[1] **iter fēcit**, *marched*.
[2] Supply est.
[3] Never first in a sentence.

the spirits of the soldiers, he said[1]: "Be (**este**) bold, soldiers, and the victory will be yours." 4. "The cavalry will aid the infantry; the enemy will not withstand (**sustineō**) your attack." 5. "They are brave men, but you are much braver." 6. Then the Romans fought very spiritedly. 7. Soon the enemy fled. 8. We do not know whither they fled.

303. REVIEW

1. Give the rule for the gender of nouns of the fifth declension. 2. What case is used in Latin in such expressions as *during three days* he walked *ten miles?* 3. Find two similar examples in 280, I. 4. Complete the English sentence, "The farmer bought a plough," so as to illustrate *purpose.* 5. In turning your sentence into Latin, with what word would the purpose clause begin? 6. What mood must you use? 7. In English we often express purpose by the infinitive. Can you do so in Latin? 8. How does a negative purpose clause begin in Latin? 9. In the sentence **venit ut audiat**, translate **ut audiat** in as many ways as you can. 10. If **venit** were changed to **vēnit**, what would **audiat** be changed to? 11. What tenses of the indicative are classed as *principal?* What tenses as *historical?* 12. Give an example in English of a direct question and change it into an indirect question. 13. Give the rule for the mood of an indirect question in Latin. 14. Show from the model sentences in 289 and 294 how the subjunctive in a result clause and in an indirect question is translated.

[1] See 354 and 355, lines 5 and 6.

A Roman Coin

LESSON LI

NUMERALS

Descriptive Ablative and Genitive

304. *Paradigms*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
Nom.	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**	**trēs**	**tria**
Gen.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**trium**	**trium**
Dat.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**tribus**	**tribus**
Acc.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**	**trīs, trēs**	**tria**
Abl.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**	**tribus**	**tribus**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**	**mīlle**	**mīlia**
Gen.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**	**mīlle**	**mīlium**
Dat.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**mīlle**	**mīlibus**
Acc.	**duōs, duo**	**duās**	**duo**	**mīlle**	**mīlia**
Abl.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**mīlle**	**mīlibus**

305. Learn the cardinals as far as eighty (491) and the declension of **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, and **mīlle**.

a. Compare the declension of **ūnus** with that of **ille** (200).

b. Observe that **trēs** is declined like the plural of **brevis** (182).

c. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are indeclinable: **quattuor hominēs**, *four men*; **quattuor hominum**, *of four men*.

d. The hundreds, except **centum**, are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

e. **Mīlle** in the singular is indeclinable and is used as an adjective or as a neuter noun: **mīlle** (adj.) **hominēs**, *a thousand men*, or **mīlle** (noun) **hominum**, *a thousand* (*of*) *men*. In the plural it is a noun only. As a noun it is followed by the partitive genitive in both numbers: **quattuor mīlia hominum**, *four thousand* (*of*) *men*.

f. In **vīgintī ūnus**, **vīgintī duo**, **centum ūnus**, and similar cases, the declinable numeral retains its inflection: **centum trium pūgnārum**, *of a hundred* (*and*) *three battles*.

306. *Model Sentences*

1. **Brūtus fuit puer animō tardō,**
2. **Brūtus fuit puer animī tardī,** } *Brutus was a boy of slow mind.*

a. Observe that in each sentence an adjective is used with an ablative or a genitive for the purpose of description. These sentences, then, illustrate the *descriptive ablative* and the *descriptive genitive.*

307. Rule. — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing.*

308. EXERCISES

I. 1. Virī summā virtūte. 2. Urbs duōbus portubus. 3. Pīlum sex pedum. 4. Vīgintī duae domūs. 5. Duodētrīgintā epistulae. 6. Tria flūmina septuāgintā pedēs lāta. 7. Cīvēs ūnīus reī pūblicae. 8. Cum duābus manibus. 9. Ā tribus agricolīs. 10. Decem mīlia passuum.

11. Omnis Gallia trīs partīs habuit. 12. Frāter meus hodiē duodēvīgintī annōs nātus[1] est. 13. In urbe nostrā sunt quīnque ōrātōrēs, novem poētae, quīnquāgintā mīlia cīvium. 14. Pīlum Rōmānum fuit sex pedēs longum. 15. Trium frātrum Mārcus fuit māximus nātū. 16. Mea fīlia tribus annīs est minor nātū quam fīlius tuus. 17. Dic mihi quot mīlitēs sint in illīs castrīs. 18. Caesar quīnquāgintā sex annōs vīxit; fuit animō prūdentissimō.

II. 1. These are children of one mother. 2. In that camp were ten thousand soldiers. 3. Your daughter is eleven years old. 4. The oak is a tree of very beautiful foliage. 5. The sailors see a thousand horsemen on the shore. 6. Have you a son who is twenty-two years old? 7. We have come to aid you.

21 = 20 + 1

[1] **nātus**, *having been born*, hence *old.*

LESSON LII

NUMERALS — *Continued*

309. Learn the cardinals from eighty and the first twenty-one ordinals; read the others.

310. VOCABULARY

annō Dominī, *in the year of our Lord = A.D.*
ante Chrīstum nātum, *before the birth of Christ = B.C.*
dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right.*
Februārius, -ī, m. *February.*
gēns, gentis (genti-), f. *family.*
ingenium, -ī, n. *genius.*
legiō, -ōnis, f. *legion.*
Mārtius, -ī, m. *March.*
mēnsis, -is (mēnsi-), m. *month.*
nōbilis, -e, *of high birth, noble.*
Octōber, -bris, m. *October.*
September, -bris, m. *September.*
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *left.*
soror, -ōris, f. *sister.*

dēcēdō, dēcēdere, dēcessī, dēcessūrus, *depart, die.*

311. EXERCISES

I. 1. Prīmus cōnsul, secundus impetus, tertia legiō. 2. Quīntā diēī hōrā, quārta noctis hōra, nōnī passūs. 3. Tertium decimum flumen, undēvicēsimus puer, vicēsima puella. 4. Duodecimae legiōnī, in colle sextō, ad urbem octāvam.

5. Rōmānī annī fuit September mēnsis septimus, Octōber octāvus. 6. Quō nomine nōs appellāmus mēnsem nōnum? 7. Legiō Rōmāna quīnque mīlia peditum, trecentōs equitēs habuit. 8. Caesar in dextrō cornū decimam, in sinistrō sextam legiōnem conlocāvit. 9. Scīsne quot annōs Rōmānī Britanniam īnsulam tenuerint? 10. Rōmānī Britanniam īnsulam annōs trecentōs quīnquāgintā tenēbant. 11. Augustus annō Dominī quārtō decimō dēcessit. 12. Fuit gentis nōbilis et ingenī māximī. 13. Caesar quadrāgēsimō quārtō annō ante Chrīstum nātum dēcessit.

II. 1. On the fifteenth day they removed without delay from the country into the city. 2. Brutus is older than his sister by five years. 3. The king has ruled so well that he is loved by all. 4. The king ruled so well that he was loved by all. 5. An hour is the twenty-fourth part of a day. 6. In February there are twenty-eight days. 7. How many days has the month (of) March? 8. It happened that we were not at home (for) two days.

1. SLINGER 2, 2. LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIERS 3, 3. LEGIONARY SOLDIERS

LESSON LIII

Ten Irregular Adjectives: Reading Lesson

312. The following adjectives end in **-īus** in the genitive singular and in **-ī** in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of **alter** ends in **-ĭus**). See the declension of **ūnus** (304). The plural is regular. Commit them to memory with their meanings.

alius, alia, aliud, *other, another* (486).
alter, altera, alterum, *the other (of two)*.
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither (of two)*.
nūllus, -a, -um, *no, none, no one*.
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, sole, only*.
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, all*.
ūllus, -a, -um, *any*.
ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*.

uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two)?*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), both*.

313. Commit to memory the following idioms:

alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other (of two only)*.
alius . . . alius, *one . . . another*.
aliī . . . aliī, *some . . . others*.
alius . . . aliud (acc.), *one one thing . . . another another*.

314. EXERCISES

I. 1. In alterā flūminis rīpā (*bank*) urbs, in alterā erat mōns. 2. Aliī alia (acc.) dixērunt. 3. Duorum hominum alter imperātor, alter poēta fuit. 4. Decimae legionis sōlius virtūte totus exercitus servātus est. 5. Nomen Caesaris tōtī urbī cārum fuit. 6. Altera legiō in dextrō, altera in sinistrō cornū ā Caesare conlocāta est. 7. Uter puer est fīlius tuus?

II. 1. Caesar praises the bravery of the whole legion. 2. Which of the (two) boys has (115) the greater courage?

3. One does one thing, another another. Do you blame both (sing.)? 4. Caesar will march without any delay with the tenth legion alone. 5. Which of the (two) sisters is the more beautiful?

315. CAESAR AND VERGIL

Rōma duōs hominēs summō ingeniō habuit, alterum imperātōrem, alterum poētam. Alterius gēns nōbilis, alterius rūstica fuit. Ille victor fuit Britanniae et tōtius Galliae; hīc tōtī orbī terrārum gaudium dedit. Nūllī imperātōrī plūs laudis quam Caesarī, nūllī poētae plūs quam Vergiliō datum est. Nātus est (*was born*) Caesar centēsimō annō ante Chrīstum nātum; Vergilius annō ūndēvīcēsimō ante Chrīstum nātum dēcessit. Neutrius fuit vīta longissima, sed utrīusque erit laus sempiterna. Utrī fuit melior fortūna? Dē illīs hominibus alius aliud dīcit; nōs utrumque laudāmus.

CAESAR

VERGIL

LESSON LIV

The Infinitive used as in English

316. *Infinitive Paradigms*

	Act. Pres. *to love*, etc.	Pass. Pres. *to be loved*, etc.	Act. Perf. *to have loved*, etc.	Pass. Perf. *to have been loved*, etc.
I.	amāre	amārī	amāvisse	amātus esse
II.	monēre	monērī	monuisse	monitus esse
III.	regere	regī	rēxisse	rēctus esse
III.	capere	capī	cēpisse	captus esse
IV.	audīre	audīrī	audīvisse	audītus esse
Irreg.	esse	——	fuisse	——

a. Write out similarly in two columns the active and passive infinitives future (497–502).

b. Commit to memory all these infinitives with their meanings.

317. *Model Sentences*

1. Laudārī est grātum, *to be praised is pleasant.*
2. Vincere potest, *he can (is able to) conquer.*
3. Puer primus esse cupit, *the boy wishes to be first.*
4. Urbs capta esse dīcitur, *the city is said to have been taken.*
5. Nōs esse bonōs cupiunt, *they wish us to be good.*

a. Observe that in 1 the infinitive is the subject; in 2, 3, and 4 it completes the meaning of the main verb and is called the *complementary infinitive;* in 5 it takes the accusative as its subject.

b. Observe that in 3 the predicate adjective after esse agrees with the subject of the main verb; so also in 4 the participle capta.

318. Rule 1. — *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

Rule 2. — *A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

319. VOCABULARY

dīves, dīvitis, *rich.*	**potest,** *is able, can.*
pēnsum, -ī, n. *task.*	**possunt,** *are able, can.*
perīculum, -ī, n. *danger.*	**praemium, -ī,** n. *reward.*

cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātus, *save, preserve.*
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought.*
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iūssus, *bid, order.*
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus, *read.*
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, *think.*

320. EXERCISES

I. 1. Potest legere, iubēre, iuvāre. 2. Possunt iubērī, iuvārī, rogārī. 3. Puer discere, rogāre, ēdūcī dēbet. 4. Dīcuntur cessisse, conlocāvisse, rēxisse. 5. Putātur scrīptūrus esse, pūnītum īrī. 6. Epistula scrīpta esse putātur.

7. Mē ornārī iussit. 8. Dīcitur ōrnātus esse. 9. Quī pater fīlium fortem esse nōn cupit? 10. Aliī alia pēnsa facere dēbent. 11. Quis tōtīus exercitūs tam fortis fuit ut impetum hostium sustinēret? 12. Vergilius et Caesar summō ingeniō fuisse putantur. 13. Omnēs hominēs dīvitēs esse cupiunt. 14. Pēnsum tuum scrīptum esse dēbuit. 15. Uter māior nātū fuisse dictus est? 16. Agricolae vēnērunt ut iuvārent.

II. 1. We ought to be brave and good. 2. Who is said to have received a greater reward? 3. Do you bid me to be prudent? 4. Your task is greater than mine, but my brother can do both (sing.). 5. The safety of the commonwealth ought to be preserved. 6. They were thought to have worked diligently. 7. The danger ought to be seen. 8. Augustus is said to have died in the year of our Lord 14.

LESSON LV

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

Indirect Statement

321.

Direct Statement	Indirect Statement
Tū scrībis,	**Dīcunt tē scrībere,**
you write,	*(they say you to write)*
you are writing.	*they say that you are writing,*
	they say you are writing.

a. Observe the changes made in Latin in turning direct into indirect statement: the nominative **tū** becomes the accusative, and the indicative **scrībis** becomes the infinitive.

b. Observe how the Latin and English idioms differ in indirect statement, the metaphrase exactly representing the Latin.

322. Rule. — *Indirect statements follow verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving, and are expressed by the infinitive with subject accusative.*

323. *Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statement*

Dīcit sē scrībere, *he says he is writing.*
Dīxit sē scrībere, *he said he was writing.*

324. Rule. — *The present infinitive denotes the* ***same*** *time as that of the verb on which it depends.*

Dīcit sē scrīpsisse, *he says he has written.*
Dīxit sē scrīpsisse, *he said he had written.*

325. Rule. — *The perfect infinitive denotes time* ***before*** *that of the verb on which it depends.*

Dīcit sē scrīptūrum esse, *he says he will write.*
Dīxit sē scrīptūrum esse, *he said he would write.*

326. Rule. — *The future infinitive denotes time after that of the verb on which it depends.*

327. VOCABULARY

arbor, arboris, f. *tree.*
dīvitiae, -ārum, f. plur. *riches, wealth.*
frīgus, -oris, n. *cold, frost.*
iam, adv. *already, now, at last.*
nōn iam, *no longer.*
post, prep. with acc. *after.*
rūrsus, adv. *again.*
vēr, vēris, n. *spring.*

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *be here, be present.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *loose, break up.*
spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, *hope.*
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover.*

328. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vēr adest; vēre frīgus solvitur. 2. Vidēmus vēr adesse et vēre frīgus solvī. 3. Terra nive nōn iam tegitur. 4. Omnēs vident terram nive nōn iam tegī. 5. Mox in arboribus cantābunt multae avēs. 6. Scīmus mox in arboribus cantātūrās esse multās avīs. 7. Agricolae agrōs iam arant. 8. Quis nōn videt agricolās agrōs arāre? 9. Quis nōn videt agrōs ab agricolīs arātōs esse? 10. Quis nōn putat agrōs ab agricolīs mox arātum īrī? 11. Agricolae spērant dīvitiās sibi futūrās esse. 12. Nōs quoque spērāmus deōs iīs benignōs futūrōs esse.

II. 1. At last cold winter is here again. 2. Who does not know that cold winter is here at last? 3. All the trees are covered with snow. 4. You can (potes) see that all the trees are covered with snow. 5. Soon no birds will be singing. 6. Who knows that no birds will soon be singing? 7. Many of them have been killed by winter's cold. 8. We think many of them have been killed by winter's cold. 9. The farmers hope the gods will be kind to them.

LESSON LVI

The Demonstratives Īdem, Ipse, Iste

329. *Paradigms*

	īdem, *same*			ipse, *-self*		
			Singular			
Nom.	īdem	e'adem	idem	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
			Plural			
Nom.	iīdem / eīdem	eaedem	e'adem	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	iīsdem / eīsdem	iīsdem / eīsdem	iīsdem / eīsdem	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	e'adem	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	iīsdem / eīsdem	iīsdem / eīsdem	iīsdem / eīsdem	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

330. *a.* Review the declension of is (138), hīc and ille (200).

b. Observe that īdem is declined like is with dem added, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural m is changed to n.

c. Learn the declension of iste, *that* (493).

d. Decline together īdem diēs, rēs ipsa, istud animal.

331. *Model Sentences*

1. Eōdem diē amīcum vīdī, *I saw my friend the same day.*
2. Istam epistulam lēgī, *I have read that letter* (*of yours*).
3. Amīcus ipse ad mē vēnit, *my friend himself came to me.*
4. Homō sē culpāvit nimium, *the man blamed himself too much.*

a. Observe in 1 and 2 that **īdem** and **iste** are used as *demonstrative adjectives*. They may also be used without a noun; that is, as demonstrative pronouns. Compare the uses of **is** (140, *a* and *b*).

b. **Iste** is used of that which has some relation to the second person, and may often be translated *this of yours* or *that of yours*.

c. **Ipse** means *-self* (*himself*, *itself*, etc.); it may sometimes be translated *even* or *very*. It is the intensive pronoun, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood, with which it agrees like an adjective. It must be sharply distinguished from **sē**, *-self*, which is reflexive, not emphatic (221, *b*). Compare 331, 3 and 4.

332. VOCABULARY

difficultās, -ātis, f. *difficulty*.
īdem . . . quī, *same . . . as*.
malus, -a, -um, *bad* (260).
numquam, adv. *never*.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. *speech*, *plea*.
studium, studī, n. *desire*, *study*.
varius, -a, -um, *various*.
voltus, -ūs, m. *face*, *looks*.

praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātus, *proclaim*, *boast*.

333. EXERCISES

I. 1. In eōdem perīculō. 2. Pēnsum ēiusdem difficultātis. 3. Ipsīus hominis dīvitis. 4. Dīvitiae ipsae cīvium. 5. Dīvitiae cīvium ipsōrum. 6. Post eandem ōrātiōnem.

7. Nōn iam eandem arborem videō. 8. Hīc est cibus istīus canis, ille meī. 9. Quis est semper eōdem voltū? 10. Hīc ōrātor sē suāsque ōrātiōnēs laudat. 11. Is quī dē sē ipsō praedicat nōn sapiēns esse dīcitur. 12. Hodiē eadem putāsne quae herī (*yesterday*)? 13. Dē istīs rēbus mē ad tē scrībere iubet. 14. Sciunt ipsōs vestrōs amīcōs culpāre vōs.

II. 1. The very trees are covered with snow. 2. Do you know, my father, where those servants of yours are? They are never at home. 3. That song of yours does not delight us; it is the worst of all. 4. You have the same task as I. 5. Various birds are singing in yonder (**ille**) trees. 6. I love and praise those studies of yours.

LESSON LVII

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

334. READING LESSON: REVIEW

a. Review the interrogative **quis** (142) and the relative **quī** (210) and learn the declension of the following indefinite pronouns, carefully distinguishing the meanings.

335. *Indefinite Pronouns*

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
aliquis	**aliqua**	**aliquid, aliquod**, *some one, any one* (496).
quīdam	**quaedam**	**quoddam, quiddam**, *a certain one* (496).
quisquam	——	**quidquam** (no plur.), *any one* (*at all*).
quīvīs	**quaevīs**	**quodvīs, quidvīs**, *any one* (*you please*).
quisque	**quaeque**	**quidque, quodque**, *each one, every one*.

NOTE. — The meanings of the neuters, *something*, etc., are easily inferred.

a. Observe how **aliqua**, which is both the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative plural of **aliquis**, differs from the corresponding forms of **quis**.

b. Observe that **quīdam** (**quī** + **dam**) is declined like **quī**, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural **m** of **quī** becomes **n**: **quendam, quandam, quōrundam, quārundam**; also that the neuter has **quiddam** and **quoddam** in the nominative and accusative singular.

c. **Quisquam** and **quisque** are declined like **quis**; **quīvīs** like **quī**.

d. In the neuter of all the indefinites **quid**-forms are used as pronouns, **quod**-forms as adjectives.

336. AFRICA

NOTE. — Hereafter in the reading lessons consult the general vocabulary for new words.

In Āfricā, terrā māximā, sunt multae gentēs plūrium linguārum, urbēs autem sunt paucae. Scrīptor quīdam vetus

scrīpsit Āfricam īnsulae esse similem. Cuīvīs, quī Āfricae figūram spectābit, hōc esse vērum vidēbitur.[1] Iam rē vērā[2] est Āfrica īnsula ingēns, nam isthmus angustissimus fossā trānsītur.[3] Dē Nīlī fontibus nēmō antīquīs temporibus quidquam certī[4] cōgnōverat[5]; nunc eīdem fontēs cuique nōtī sunt, nam ā quibusdam virīs audācibus sunt repertī.[6] Cotīdiē aliquid novī[7] ex Africā audīmus. Alius aliud[8] scrībit; quae sint vēra iudicābit quisque. Crūdēlia, ōlim bella in Āfricā gesta sunt et hodiē fortēs gentēs dē imperiō dīmicant. Ēheu! Agrī vāstantur, prīvāta aedificia incenduntur, profunditur sanguis.

[1] **vidēbitur**, *will seem*. [2] **rē vērā**, *in fact*. [3] **trānsītur**, *is crossed*. [4] **quidquam certī**, *anything at all* (*of*) *certain*. [5] **cōgnōverat**, *had learned*. [6] **repertī**, from **reperiō**. [7] **aliquid novī**, *something* (*of*) *new*. [8] See 313.

337. EXERCISES

1. He does that which every one says. 2. I have read a certain writer. 3. Nobody relates anything at all new. 4. That girl has something in her right hand. 5. A part of each summer we live in the country. 6. To-day a story was told to us by somebody. 7. At the same time certain (men) come to Caesar.

338. REVIEW

1. Give with their meanings the nine adjectives that have the genitive singular in **-īus** and the dative in **-ī**. 2. Give five pronouns that make the genitive and dative singular in the same way. 3. What case is the neuter accusative always like? 4. Give the meanings of **is, īdem, hīc, ille, iste, ipse**. 5. What is **īdem** compounded of? 6. What part of **īdem** remains unchanged in declension? 7. How is the accusative masculine singular written? 8. Pronounce the neuter nominative singular. 9. What does **ipse** do in a sentence? 10. Give the ordinals corresponding to 6, 9, 11, 17. 11. Express in Latin in two ways *a thousand men*. 12. Give the rule for the descriptive ablative. 13. Tell what time is denoted in respect to the main verb by the infinitive in 328, I. 2, 9, 11.

LESSON LVIII

IMPERATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

Commands and Appeals

339. *Imperative Paradigms*

Act. Imv. Pres. 2d Pers.		Pass. Imv. Pres. 2d Pers.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
amā, *love*	amāte	amāre, *be loved*	amāminī
monē, *advise*	monēte	monēre, *be advised*	monēminī
rege, *rule*	regite	regere, *be ruled*	regiminī
cape, *take*	capite	capere, *be taken*	capiminī
audī, *hear*	audīte	audīre, *be heard*	audīminī
es, *be*	este	——	——

a. Read the future imperatives (407–502) and form the present imperative of rogō, dēleō, legō, recipiō, pūniō. Dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō have the imperatives dīc, dūc, fac, fer.

340. *Subjunctive and Imperative Paradigms*

Affirmative	Negative
amem, *let me love.*	nē amem, *let me not love.*
amā, *love.*	nōlī amāre, *do not love.*
amet, *let him love.*	nē amet, *let him not love.*
amēmus, *let us love.*	nē amēmus, *let us not love.*
amāte, *love.*	nōlīte amāre, *do not love.*
ament, *let them love.*	nē ament, *let them not love.*

a. Observe in the above paradigm (1) that the subjunctive is used in affirmative commands and appeals in the first and third persons, the simple imperative in the second person; (2) that the subjunctive with nē (*not*) is used in negative commands and appeals in the first and third persons; (3) that nē is not used with the

imperative in the second person, but instead the imperatives **nōlī, nōlīte** (*be unwilling*) with the infinitive.

341. EXERCISES

I. 1. Librum lege. 2. Illum librum legant. 3. Es bonus imperātor. 4. Este fortēs mīlitēs. 5. Nōlī castra movēre. 6. Nē regāmus. 7. Nē audiantur. 8. Legite eundem librum. 9. Nōlīte dēlēre. 10. Rogēmus, recipiātur. 11. Id sciātur. 12. Dīc nōbīs unde veniās. 13. Ēdūc, Labiēne, mīlitēs.

II. 1. Be merry, girls. 2. Do not laugh, boys. 3. Bid him come, friend. 4. Be warned. 5. Do not destroy birds. 6. Let not birds be destroyed. 7. Rule your minds.

342. VOCABULARY

memoria, -ae, f. *memory*.
memoriā teneō, *remember*.
mors, mortis (morti-), f. *death*.
vīnum, -ī, n. *wine*.

dēcipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī, dēceptus, *deceive*.
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch*.
timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, *fear*.

343. EXERCISES

I. 1. Nē mīles mortis perīculum timeat. 2. Nūntium ad Caesarem mittāmus. 3. Eum moneāmus nē domō discēdat. 4. Nōlīte cōnsilia malōrum audīre. 5. Scrībite, puellae, cotīdiē ad parentēs quae faciātis. 6. Scrīpsērunt quae facerent. 7. Istōs tuōs voltūs, nōn ōrātiōnēs, memoriā teneō. 8. Quisque suam domum fortiter dēfendat. 9. Nē tē quisquam dēcipiat dē istīs rēbus.

II. 1. A certain man told me something new.[1] 2. Touch not wine, boys. 3. Men, let us not touch it. 4. Let not the same difficulty scare us. 5. I will read that book of yours to any one you please. 6. We hear that even[2] the women in Africa are[3] brave. 7. Do you remember your task?

[1] See 336, note 7. [2] See 331, *c*. [3] See 322.

LESSON LIX

COMPOUNDS OF SUM: READING LESSON

Dative with Compounds: Dative of Service

344. *a.* Learn the inflection of **possum** (503) and **prōsum** (504).

b. **Possum**, *be able*, *can*, is compounded of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**, *be*.

c. **Prōsum**, *benefit*, is compounded of **prod** (old form of **prō**, *for*) and **sum**. In inflection the **d** of **prōd** is retained before **e**.

345. *Compounds of* **sum**

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be away, be absent.*
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *be present, aid.*
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *be lacking, fail.*
īnsum, inesse, īnfuī, ——, *be in, be among.*
intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *be among, be present.*
obsum, obesse, obfuī, —, *be against, hinder, injure.*
possum, posse, potuī, ——, *be able, can.*
praesum, praeesse, praefuī, ——, *be at the head, command.*
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *be of advantage to, benefit.*
supersum, superesse, superfuī, ——, *be over, survive.*

346. *Model Sentences*

1. **Vērus amīcus amīcō prōdest,** *a true friend benefits a friend.*
2. **Quis equitibus praefuit?** *who commanded the horsemen?*

a. Observe that **prōsum** and **praesum** are intransitive and govern the dative, while the corresponding English verbs, *benefit* and *command*, are transitive.

347. Rule. — *Many verbs compounded with* **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** *and* **super** *often govern the dative.*

a. Some of these compounds are transitive and take both an accusative and a dative. **Īnsum** is often followed by **in** with the ablative, and **intersum** by **inter** with the accusative; see 350, lines 1 and 5.

348. *Model Sentences*

1. **Mīlitēs ibi erant praesidiō**, *soldiers were there as* (*for*) *a defence.*
2. **Auxiliō eīs mittuntur cōpiae**, *troops are sent as* (*for*) *a help to them.*

a. Observe that the datives **praesidiō** in 1 and **auxiliō** in 2 are used to denote the *end* or *purpose*, that for which a thing *serves;* hence called the *dative of service.* This dative may be accompanied by another, as **eīs**, in 2, the ordinary indirect object. See 78 and 79.

349. Rule. — *The dative is used with* **sum** *and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing* **serves.**

350. FRIENDSHIP

In vērā amīcitiā māgnum inest praesidium. Amīcus vērus adest amīcō neque deerit in difficultātibus. Amīcō prōdesse dulce est, amīcō deesse turpe est. Amīcus fīdus nōn aberit ab amīcō in malā fortūnā. Mōrēs malī amīcitiae obsunt. Inter hominēs malōs vēra amīcitia nōn interest. Cicerō cōnsul reī pūblicae praefuit et amīcīs prōfuit. Multae Cicerōnis epistulae ēiusque amīcōrum supersunt. Prōdeste, puerī puellaeque, amīcīs. Amīcīs (dat.) in perīculō este auxiliō et praesidiō. Īnfelīx est is quī amīcīs superfuit omnibus.

351. EXERCISES

1. Caesar had (*in Caesar was*) a very good memory. 2. He never lacked courage (courage was never lacking to him). 3. He commanded brave men, and was present at many battles. 4. He benefited and injured his country. 5. He was a terror (dat.) to his foes. 6. He did not survive his last (**proximus**) wars many years.

LESSON LX

Participles: Reading Lesson

352. *a.* Learn the participles of the model verbs (497–501).

b. Participles in **-ns** are declined like **amāns** (485); those in **-us**, like **bonus** (483).

c. Participles agree with nouns and pronouns like adjectives.

353. *Model Sentences*

1. **Tē in urbe manentem vīdī.** *I saw you while you were staying (you staying) in the city.*
2. **Urbs diū oppūgnāta nōn capta est.** *the city, though it was besieged (having been besieged) for a long time, was not taken.*
3. **Caesar eā rē commōtus in Galliam properāvit.** *Caesar, because he was alarmed (having been alarmed) by this circumstance, hastened into Gaul.*
4. **Dux victus sē recipiet.** *if the general is defeated (the general defeated), he will retreat.*
5. **Dōna missa recēpit.** *he received the gifts which had been sent (gifts sent).*
6. **Caesar prīncipem captum Rōmam mīsit.** *Caesar took a chieftain and sent him to Rome (sent a taken chieftain).*

a. Observe that in each of the first five sentences the Latin participle is equivalent to a clause in English. In 6 the participle is best rendered by a verb coördinate with the main verb. The tenses of the participle denote time relatively to the time of the main verb, like the tenses of the infinitive (324–326).

354. VOCABULARY

contrā, prep. with acc. *against.*
historia, **-ae**, f. *history.*
vēnēnum, **-ī**, n. *poison.*
vīcīnus, **-a**, **-um**, *neighboring.*

commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, *move, rouse.*
redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus, *lead back.*
inquit (defective, used after one or more quoted words), *said.*
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus, *kill, put to death.*
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus, *fortify.*
vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind.*

355. FABRICIUS AND THE PHYSICIAN

Fabricius cōnsul factus contrā Pyrrhum, rēgem quendam, missus est. Accidit ut cōnsul ipse et Pyrrhus castra habērent vīcīna. Nē rēx impetum faceret, castra mūnīvit Fabricius. Dē[1] nocte Pyrrhī medicus ad Fabricium vēnit. "Ego," inquit, "sī mihi praemium dederis, dominum meum vēnēnō interficiam." "Tū, pessime,"[2] inquit Fabricius īrā commōtus, "ad tuum dominum statim vinctus mittēris." Tum medicum vinctum ad Pyrrhum rēgem redūcī iussit. Nōnne illum pessimum hominem morte pūnīvit Pyrrhus? Historia nōn nārrat num medicus ā Pyrrhō interfectus sit.

356. EXERCISES

I. 1. Aliquis fābulam quandam nārrābat. 2. Quōque annō discō aliquid novī. 3. Numquam quemquam vīdī pēiōrem illō homine. 4. Haec mihi rīdēns dixit. 5. Pūgnae interfuit. 6. Medicum Pyrrhī in Fabricī castrīs manentem vīdimus. 7. Verba pessima ēius dīcentis[3] audiēbāmus.

II. 1. Do not, Roman, put the doctor to death. 2. Order him to be bound[4] and led back to the king. 3. Let him punish him with death. 4. Let him be led back that he may be punished. 5. Fabricius, though[5] moved with anger, did this. 6. If[6] the physician is set free, he will be glad. 7. They say the physician was glad because[7] he was set free.

[1] *in.* [2] *miscreant.* [3] *of him speaking = as he spoke.* [4] 353, 6. [5] 353, 2. [6] 353, 4. [7] 353, 3.

LESSON LXI

PARTICIPLES — *Continued*

Ablative Absolute

357. *Model Sentences*

1. Cōnsul, castrīs mūnītīs, Rōmam vēnit,	*the camp having been fortified,* *when the camp had been fortified,* *when he had fortified the camp,* *having fortified the camp,* *after fortifying the camp,*	*the consul came to Rome.*
2. Hōc factō vincēmus,	*this having been done,* *since this has been done,* *if this is done,* *by doing this,*	*we shall conquer.*

a. Observe in 1 that the noun **castrīs** and the participle **mūnītīs** agreeing with it are in the ablative, and denote the time of the action expressed by **vēnit**; in 2 that **hōc** and **factō** are in the ablative and denote the *cause* (since), or *condition* (if), or some *other circumstance* of the action expressed by **vincēmus**. An ablative so used is called the *ablative absolute.*

b. Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, without a participle are sometimes used in the same way: **Caesare duce, vincēmus**, *under the leadership of Caesar, if Caesar is our leader, we shall conquer.*

c. The Latin perfect participle is passive, not active. Accordingly such a sentence as "Caesar, having defeated the Gauls, returned to Rome" has to be cast into the form "Caesar, the Gauls having been defeated, returned to Rome," **Caesar, Gallīs victīs, Rōmam rediit.**

358. Rule. — *The ablative absolute is used to express the time, cause, condition, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb.*

a. The ablative absolute should seldom be translated literally. Various ways of translating it are shown in the model sentences.

The best way in any particular case must be determined by considering what idea the ablative absolute seems to convey with reference to the main clause.

359. VOCABULARY

Amūlius, -ī, m. *Amulius.*
auxilium, auxilī, n. *help, aid.*
geminus, -a, -um, *twin-born, twin-.*
latrō, -ōnis, m. *robber.*
pecus, -oris, n. *flock, cattle.*
rīpa, -ae, f. *bank.*
super, prep. with acc. *above, over.*
Tiberis, -is (acc. **-im**), m. *the Tiber.*

condō, condere, condidī, conditus, *establish, build, found.*
effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus, *pour out, spread abroad.*

360. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hostibus victīs. 2. Cicerōne cōnsule. 3. Oppidō quōdam expūgnātō. 4. Hōc vīsō. 5. Hīs rēbus repertīs. 6. Rōmulus, urbe conditā, rēx vocātus est. 7. Amūliō rege Tiberis super rīpās effūsus est. 8. Geminī frātrēs ipsī ā pecoribus latrōnēs arcēbant. 9. Hōc oppidum, paucīs[1] dēfendentibus, Caesar expūgnare nōn potuit. 10. Tum imperātor, "Mīlitēs," inquit, "redūcite captīvōs." 11. Hī captīvī eīdem fortissimē pūgnantēs captī sunt. 12. Quis praefuit equitibus quī imperātōrī auxiliō missī sunt? 13. Mūnīte urbem, cīvēs, nē ab hostibus capiātur. 14. Urbe mūnītā, cīvēs nōn iam terrēbantur.

II. 1. When he had heard these words, he was much moved. 2. The physician was led back[2] and put to death. 3. Romulus, having freed[3] his brother, killed Amulius. 4. Having taken[3] the city, the soldiers set free the prisoners. 5. Let us rouse the citizens. 6. Boys, aid your friends. 7. Those girls were a help[4] to their teacher.

[1] *Though*, etc. [2] Compare 353, 6. [3] See 357, *c*. [4] See 348.

LESSON LXII

PARTICIPLES — *Continued*

The Gerundive

361. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and agrees with the noun it modifies.

362. *Model Sentences*

1. **Eī hominī aurum servandum dedit**, *he gave the gold to that man to keep* (*the gold to be kept*).
2. **Caesar erat cupidus urbis dēlendae**, *Caesar was desirous of destroying the city* (*of the city to be destroyed*).
3. **Ad pācem petendam vēnērunt**, *they came to seek peace*, *for the purpose of seeking peace* (*for peace to be sought*).

a. Observe in each of the above sentences that the gerundive agrees with a noun. Notice also the way in which the noun and gerundive are translated.

b. Observe that in 1 **servandum** and in 3 **ad pācem petendam** express *purpose*, and are equivalent to **ut servāret** and **ut pācem peterent** (288, 1).

363. VOCABULARY

coniūnx, coniugis, f. *wife*.
cupidus, **-a**, **-um**, *desirous*, *fond*.
pāstor, -ōris, m. *shepherd*.
sīgnum, **-ī**, n. *sign*, *signal*.
summus, **-a**, **-um**, *highest*, *greatest* (489).
vīs, vīs, f. *force*, *strength*, *power*, *might* (482).

augeō, **augēre**, **auxī**, **auctus**, *increase*, *enlarge*.
conveniō, **convenīre**, **convēnī**, **conventus**, *come together*, *assemble*.
ēducō, **ēducāre**, **ēducāvī**, **ēducātus**, *bring up*, *train*.
induō, **induere**, **induī**, **indūtus**, *put on*.
parō, **parāre**, **parāvī**, **parātus**, *make ready*, *prepare*.
petō, **petere**, **petīvī** (**petiī**), **petītus**, *seek*, *ask for*, *ask*.
salūtō, **salūtāre**, **salūtāvī**, **salūtātus**, *greet*, *salute*.

364. EXERCISES

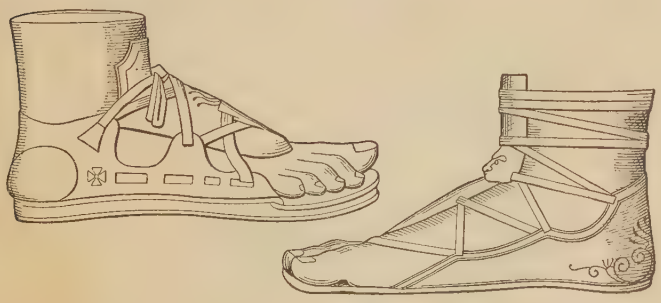
I. 1. Pontis faciendī. 2. Epistulīs scrībendīs. 3. Ad epistulās scrībendās. 4. Epistulā scrībendā. 5. Vīribus augendīs. 6. In petendā pāce.

7. Pāstor geminōs coniugī ēducandōs dedit. 8. Lēgātī dē pāce faciendā vēnērunt. 9. Caesar pontem faciendum cūrat.[1] 10. Multī convēnērunt studiō videndae urbis. 11. Multī rēgēs bellōrum gerendōrum sunt cupidī. 12. Legiō ad bellum gerendum parātissima[2] erat. 13. Ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuit. 14. Nōs moritūrī[3] tē salūtāmus. 15. Sīgnō datō mīlitēs impetum in hostīs summā vī fēcērunt.

II. 1. Of seeing the town. 2. For (**ad**) drawing up a line of battle. 3. By founding a city. 4. By carrying on war. 5. In (**in**) laying waste the fields.

6. Everything was made ready for (**ad**) training the boys. 7. Having killed[4] Amulius, the brothers founded a city. 8. By keeping off the robbers they are a help[5] to the shepherds. 9. We are ready[6] to help (**iuvō**)[7] the shepherds.

[1] *has a bridge built* (*takes care a bridge to be built*). [2] *very well prepared.* [3] *about to die.* [4] See 357, *c.* [5] See 348. [6] ready = prepared. [7] Compare I. 12.



ROMAN SANDALS

LESSON LXIII

THE GERUND

365. The gerund is a verbal noun used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

366. Learn the gerunds of the model verbs (497–501).

367. *Model Sentences*

1. **Dux erat cupidus urbem dēlendī**, *the general was desirous of destroying the city.*
2. **Ad pūgnandum vēnērunt**, *they came for fighting, for the purpose of fighting, to fight.*
3. **Mēns discendō alitur**, *the mind is strengthened by learning.*

a. Observe in each sentence that the gerund is used like any other noun, and that in 1 it has an object (**urbem**) like a verb.

b. Observe in 2 that the gerund with **ad** denotes purpose, and compare it with **ad pācem petendam** (362, 3).

c. Compare **urbem dēlendī** (1) with **urbis dēlendae** (362, 2), and note that the two phrases have the same meaning.

368. VOCABULARY

amor, -ōris, m. *love.*
ars, artis (arti-), f. *art.*
causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason;* abl. *for the sake* (after a genitive).
deus, -ī, m. *god* (482).
idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable.*
industria, -ae, f. *industry.*
nōmen, -inis, n. *name.*
propius, adv. *nearer.*
spatium, spatī, n. *room, space, time, opportunity.*
ūtilis, -e, *useful.*

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessūrus, *come near, approach.*
coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectus, *throw, hurl.*
contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus, *despise.*
nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus, *sail, cruise.*
ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus, *speak, beg, plead.*

369. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ars vīvendī. 2. Amor pūgnandī. 3. Industria in agendō. 4. Inter[1] pūgnandum. 5. Dīcendō. 6. Difficultās nāvigandī. 7. Causa mittendī. 8. Mittendī causā.

9. Ōrātor fīnem ōrandī fēcit. 10. Librī sunt ūtilēs legendō. 11. Ars puerōs ēducandī est difficilis. 12. Adsumus discendī causā. 13. Mīlitēs erant cupidī oppidum expūgnandī. 14. Nāvēs ad nāvigandum parātae erant. 15. Spatium pīla in hostīs coniciendī[2] nōn datum est. 16. Illī librī ad legendum nōn sunt idōneī. 17. Hominēs ad deōs propius accēdunt nūllā rē quam salūtem hominibus dandō. 18. Cicerō librum dē contemnendā morte scrīpsit. 19. Nox fīnem oppūgnandī fēcit.

II. 1. By fortifying. 2. While writing.[3] 3. In (in) saying. 4. For the sake of assembling. 5. For the purpose of killing. 6. For the sake of seeking peace.[4] 7. The difficulty of approaching.

8. The same physician was desirous of killing[4] the king. 9. Time was not given for (of) pleading. 10. The master teaches us (acc.) the art of living well. 11. Brothers, let us rouse the citizens and set free the prisoners. 12. Having roused the citizens,[5] we shall set free the prisoners.

[1] *during, while.* [2] *for hurling.* [3] Compare I. 4. [4] Express in two ways. [5] See 357, *c*.

A Roman Coin

LESSON LXIV

THE SUPINE: ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

READING LESSON: REVIEW

370. The supine is a verbal noun used only in the accusative and ablative singular, and is wanting in most verbs.

371. Learn the supines of the model verbs (407–501). These are given in the paradigms merely to illustrate the forms.

372. *Model Sentences*

1. **Lēgātī Rōmam veniunt pācem petītum.** *ambassadors come to Rome to seek peace.*
2. **Id facile est factū,** *that is easy to do, to be done (in the doing).*
3. **Gallōs virtūte superant,** *they surpass the Gauls in courage.*

a. Observe in 1 that the supine **petītum** expresses purpose, like **ut pācem petant** and **ad pācem petendam.**

b. Observe in 2 and 3 that the ablatives **factū** and **virtūte** answer the question *in what respect?* Such ablatives are called *ablatives of specification.*

373. Rule. — *The supine in* ***-um*** *is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

374. Rule. — *The ablative is used to denote* ***in what respect*** *a thing is true.*

375. EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt rogātum auxilium. 2. Dixērunt sē auxilium petītum vēnisse. 3. Vēnī tē laudātum. 4. Eōs tu ad mē salutātum mīserās. 5. Quid optimum est factū? 6. Quīdam sunt hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine. 7. Hannibal patrī virtūte similis erat. 8. Num puer virum vī superat? 9. Oppido expūgnātō, Caesar copiās in castra redūxit.

II. 1. The poor soldiers are tired in mind and body. 2. Are you like your brother in daring? 3. That is easier to say than to do. 4. Deputies came to ask for aid. 5. Many girls are fond of reading books. 6. Who formed (capiō) a design of killing Cicero the consul?

376. ROMAN CONSULS

Rōmānī, rēgibus expulsīs,[1] duōs cōnsulēs quotannīs habēbant. Cōnsulātus erat apud Rōmānōs magistrātus amplissimus. Dictātor māgnī perīculī temporibus mūnera omnium magistrātuum praestābat. Cōnsulēs togam praetextam gerēbant,[2] et in sellā curūlī sedēbant. Nisi in urbe Rōmā vītae necisque potestās in manibus cōnsulum erat. Duodecim līctōrēs ībant (*went*) ante cōnsulem cum fascibus, īnsīgnibus[3] illīs hūius imperī, atque poenae īnstrūmentīs.[3] Mūnus erat cōnsulum senātuī[4] praesidēre et rem[5] pūblicam administrāre. Cōnsulibus quoque erat mūnus exercituum dūcendōrum in hostīs populī Rōmānī.

[1] From **expellō**. [2] *wore*. [3] An appositive with **fascibus**. [4] See 347. [5] **rem pūblicam**, *the public business*.

377. REVIEW

1. What two moods are used in commands and appeals? 2. What active form is the same as the passive imperative present, second singular? 3. Translate into Latin *do not send*, *let us send*, *let them not send*. 4. Give the rule for the dative with compounds. 5. Point out in 360, I, an instance of the dative of service. 6. Give five possible translations of **rēge interfectō**. 7. Give the rule for the ablative absolute. 8. In 364, I. 7, what idea is implied in the gerundive **ēducandōs**? 9. Express in Latin *of taking the town*, first using the gerundive, then the gerund. 10. What idea is expressed by the gerundive or gerund with **ad**? 11. What is a verbal noun? 12. Give in English some new examples of a verbal noun with an object.

LESSON LXV

REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS

Reading Lesson

Note. — For some classes it may be well to divide this lesson into two.

378. Review the complete inflection of **amō** (497) and **moneō** (498).

379. VOCABULARY (REVIEW)

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give.*
impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus, *fill, cover.*
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iūssus, *bid, order, command.*
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid.*
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *stay, remain.*
mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus, *show, point out.*
mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus, *change.*
ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus, *speak, beg, plead.*
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, ——, *hold, keep.*
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see;* pass., *be seen, seem.*

380. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dant, iuvant, implent, manent. 2. Mōnstrāmus, mūtāmus, iubēmus, vidēmus. 3. Ōrāte, mōnstrāte, tenēte, implēte. 4. Iūvistī, mūtāvistī, mānsistī, tenuistī. 5. Dabat, ōrābat, implēbat, iubēbat. 6. Mōnstrāvērunt, mūtāvērunt, iussērunt, tenuērunt. 7. Mūtābitur, iuvābitur, vidēbitur, tenēbitur. 8. Iūta est, mōnstrāta est, implētum est, vīsum est. 9. Orārī, mūtārī, tenērī, implērī. 10. Mōnstrātūrus, ōrātūra, implētūrus, mānsūra. 11. Mūtandī, mōnstrandum, iubendō, videndum. 12. Datum, ōrātum, vīsū. 13. Dedisse, ōrāvisse, implēvisse, vīdisse. 14. Ut iuvārem, nē mūtāret, ut tenērentur, nē iubērētur.

II. 1. He gives, she aids, it remains, he sees. 2. I shall aid, we shall give, you will order, they will hold. 3. To have aided, to have changed, to have filled, to have remained. 4. Give, show, stay, keep. 5. Let me help, let him show, let us stay, let them fill. 6. I was (being) aided, you were (being) changed, he was (being) commanded, they were (being) held. 7. To have been shown, to be changed, to have been bidden, to seem. 8. Of showing, by praying, for keeping, while filling.

381. ROMULUS AND REMUS

Rōmulus et Remus erant geminī frātrēs, filiī Mārtis deī et Rheae Silviae, Vestae sacerdōtis. Hāc rē cōgnitā, Amūlius, rēx Albānorum, mātrem ipsam in vincula coniēcit. Parvulōs alveō imposuit et abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super rīpās effūsus erat; sed flūmine relābente (*subsiding*), eōs aqua in siccō relīquit. Lupa ad vagītum accurrit, īnfantīs linguā lambit, mātremque sē gessit. Hanc rem Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, animadvertit, et eōs portāvit in casam, et coniugī dedit ēducandōs.

THE TWINS DISCOVERED BY FAUSTULUS

LESSON LXVI

REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS — *Continued*

Reading Lesson

Note. — For some classes it may be well to divide this lesson into two.

382. Review the complete inflection of **regō** (490), **capiō** (500), and **audiō** (501).

383. VOCABULARY (REVIEW)

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy.*
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl, cast.*
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus, *fortify.*
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *put, place, set.*
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *take back, receive.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch.*
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover, conceal.*
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus, *come.*
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat.*

384. EXERCISES

I. 1. Emit, mūnit, tangit, vincit. 2. Iēcērunt, posuērunt, tetigērunt, vēnērunt. 3. Ponēbātis, recipiēbātis, tegēbātis, vincebatis. 4. Emerit, mūnīverit, scīverit, tetigerit. 5. Iace, recipe, tege, veni. 6. Posuerant, tēxerant, vīcerant, mūnīverant. 7. Ēmisse, iactum esse, posuisse, mūnītum esse. 8. Pōnimur, tangimur, tegiminī, vincuntur. 9. Ēmptum est, iacta sunt, recepta est, tēcti estis. 10. Mūniēns, pōnēns, scientēs, venientēs. 11. Ement, iacientur, recipient, vincentur. 12. Ut mūniant, ut recipiantur, nē pōnant, nē tegantur. 13. Pōnendī, tegendō, emendō, vincendō. 14. Ēmptūrus esse, recipī, tangī, ventūram esse.

II. 1. They are throwing, they touch, they come, they are buying. 2. He was covering, he knew, he was placing, he received. 3. I shall come, you will conquer, he will put, we shall fortify. 4. That he may know, let us throw, that you may not touch, let them not place. 5. It has been covered, she has been received, we have been defeated, they have been touched. 6. To have fortified, to have been bought, to have hurled, to have been touched. 7. Come, throw, buy, conquer. 8. Of throwing, for receiving, to place, by covering. 9. It will be bought, I shall be received, they will be covered, he will be touched.

385. ROMULUS AND REMUS — *Continued*

Puerī adultī[1] (*when grown up*) inter pāstōrēs prīmō lūdicrīs certāminibus vīrīs[2] auxērunt,[3] deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā rapinā pecorum arcēre coepērunt.[4] Remus ā latrōnibus captus est; Romulus vī sē dēfendit. Tunc Faustulus necessitāte compulsus[5] indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset.[6] Hīc statim, pāstōribus armātīs,[7] Albam properāvit. Frātrem līberāvit, Amūlium interfēcit. Posteā Rōmulus et Remus urbem in iīsdem locīs ubi expositī[8] ēducātīque erant condidērunt. Hanc urbem Rōmulus Rōmam vocāvit.

[1] From **adolēscō**. [2] Acc. plur. from **vīs**. [3] From **augeō**. [4] From **coepī**. [5] From **compellō**. [6] See 295. [7] See 358. [8] From **expōnō**.

ROMAN COINS

LESSON LXVII

DEPONENT VERBS

Ablative with Certain Deponents

386. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. They occur in each of the regular conjugations, and are distinguished by the ending of the infinitive present, as follows:

First conj.	**-ārī**	Third conj.	**-ī**
Second conj.	**-ērī**	Fourth conj.	**-īrī**

a. Learn the principal parts, the meanings, and the synopses of the deponents in 509.

b. Observe that the following are active forms:

Inf. future	**hortātūrus esse**	Gerund	**hortandī**,
Act. supine	**hortātum**		**hortandō**, etc.

c. Observe that there are participles of both voices:

Pres.	**hortāns**, *urging.*	Perf.	**hortātus**, *having urged.*
Fut.	**hortātūrus**, *about to urge.*	Gerundive	**hortandus**, *to be urged.*

d. Observe that the perfect participle of deponents is active in meaning; the gerundive is passive.

387. *Model Sentences*

1. **Aurō ūtuntur**, *they use gold.*
2. **Lūce sōlis fruimur**, *we enjoy the light of the sun.*

a. Observe that **aurō** and **lūce** are in the ablative, while the corresponding words in English are direct objects of their verbs.

388. Rule. — *The five deponents* ***ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,*** *and their compounds govern the ablative.*

389. VOCABULARY

lībertās, **-ātis**, f. *liberty, freedom.*
nēmō, dat. **-inī** (**nūllīus** for gen., **nūllō** for abl.), m. *no one, nobody.*
nunc, adv. *now.*
sapientia, **-ae**, f. *wisdom.*
scrīptor, **-ōris**, m. *writer.*
sōl, **sōlis**, m. *sun.*
ūsus, **-ūs**, m. *use, advantage.*

creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus, *create, choose, elect.*
expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus, *drive out, expel.*
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.*
imitor, imitārī, imitātus sum, *imitate, copy.*
proficīscor, proficiscī, profectus sum, *set out, march.*
reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectus, *make over, repair.*
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, make use of, employ.*

390. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hortātur, verēbantur, sequētur. 2. Potītī sunt, ūtiminī, ūtēris. 3. Hortāns, verentēs, secūtūrus. 4. Veritus, potiendī, sequendō, verendō. 5. Ad ūtendum, hortātum, verērī, ūsus esse. 6. Verēminī deōs. 7. Caesar hortātus est mīlitēs ut ducēs sequerentur. 8. Scrīptor quīdam vetus scrīpsit: "Nunc puerī omnia sciunt, nēminem verentur, imitantur nēminem." 9. Illō diē exercitus proficīscēbātur. 10. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequēbātur. 11. Tempore ūtāmur[1] cum sapientiā. 12. Rēgibus[2] Rōmā[3] expulsīs, duo cōnsulēs creātī sunt. 13. Omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvīs erant usuī.[4] 14. Semper bona exempla imitārī possumus.

II. 1. They urge, he fears, they will follow. 2. We use, you reverence, he has used. 3. Having got possession of, imitating, for (**ad**) setting out.

4. Caesar ordered the same two legions to set out. 5. Let[1] us always imitate the good. 6. Do not follow bad men. 7. We have enjoyed the love of our mother. 8. (Being) about to fight, let[1] us put on our helmets.

[1] See 340. [2] See 358. [3] See 197, 3. [4] See 349.

LESSON LXVIII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

Dative with Intransitive Verbs

391. Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (505). Note the irregularities in the present of the infinitive, indicative, and subjunctive. For the imperfect subjunctive, see 287, *a*.

392. *Model Sentences*

1. **Hīc liber mihi placet**, *this book pleases me.*
2. **Amīcō persuādet ut hōc faciat**, *he persuades his friend to do this.*

a. Observe that **mihi** and **amīcō** are in the dative, while the English equivalents are the direct objects of transitive verbs.

393. Rule. — *Most verbs meaning to* ***believe, favor, help, please, trust,*** *and their opposites, also to* ***command, obey, pardon, persuade, resist, serve,*** *and* ***spare,*** *and the like, govern the dative.*

394. VOCABULARY

enim,[1] conj. *for.*
mulier, **-eris**, f. *woman.*
neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor.*
occāsus, **-ūs**, m. *setting.*

arbitror, **arbitrārī**, **arbitrātus sum**, *think, suppose*
experior, **experīrī**, **expertus sum**, *try, test.*
faveō, **favēre**, **fāvī**, **fautūrus**, *favor.*
mālō, **mālle**, **māluī**, ——, *be more willing, prefer.*
noceō, **nocēre**, **nocuī**, **nocitūrus**, *harm, injure.*
nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, ——, *be unwilling, will not.*
parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī**, **parsus**, *spare.*
persuādeō, **persuādēre**, **persuāsī**, **persuāsus**. *persuade.*
placeō, **placēre**, **placuī**, **placitus**. *please, be pleasing to.*
volō, **velle**, **voluī**, ——, *be willing, wish, will.*

[1] Never the first word in a sentence.

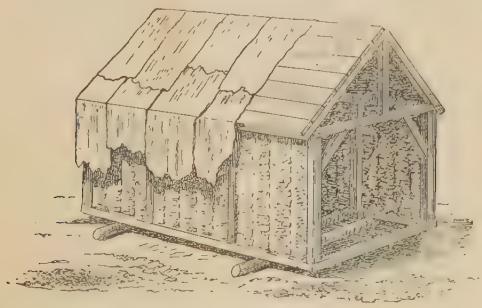
395. EXERCISES

I. 1. Voltis, nōlumus, māvīs. 2. Ut velīmus, ut nōlit, ut mālit. 3. Nōlī, nōlle, māluisse. 4. Vōbīs persuādendī causā. 5. Volt mihi favēre. 6. Nōlunt tibi nocēre. 7. Tibi prōdesse quam[1] nocēre mālumus. 8. Mālēbat esse quam vidērī bonus. 9. Nonne vīs matrī tuae esse auxiliō? 10. Arbitrāmur eum voluisse equitātuī praeesse. 11. Nōlīte, puerī puellaeque, avibus nocēre. 12. Sōlis occāsū mīlitēs castrīs hostium potientur. 13. Sua[2] cuique placent. 14. Dīcere nōn possumus cūr puer esse scrīptor velit. 15. Captīvī, cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, eum rogābant ut sibi parceret.

II. 1. They were wishing, I shall be unwilling, she will prefer. 2. That you may be willing, that he might prefer, lest he should be unwilling. 3. For the sake[3] of pleasing your friends.

4. The soldiers, having got possession of the city, spared neither women nor children. 5. Why are you unwilling to imitate good men? 6. Let us send a messenger to the leader to ask (supine) that he spare the soldiers. 7. He had persuaded (them) both (*sing.*) to try[4] the same fortune of war.

[1] (*rather*) *than.* [2] *his own* (things). [3] See 368. [4] See 284.



VINEA

LESSON LXIX

CUM TEMPORAL, CAUSAL, AND CONCESSIVE

Reading Lesson

396. *Model Sentences*

1. Librōs, cum mihi est ōtium, legō. *I read books when I have leisure.*
2. Caesar, cum id nūntiātum esset, in Galliam contendit. *Caesar, when this had been reported, hastened into Gaul.*
3. Cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt. *since they could not defend themselves, they sent deputies to Caesar.*
4. Cum fortiter pūgnārent, tamen nōn vīcērunt. *although they fought bravely, nevertheless they did not conquer.*

a. **Cum** meaning *when* (1 and 2) is called cum *temporal;* meaning *as* or *since* (3), cum *causal;* meaning *although* (4), cum *concessive.*

b. Observe the moods and tenses that follow the various meanings of **cum**.

397. Rule. — *In a* **cum***-clause expressing time, the verb is commonly in the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, in the indicative.*

398. Rule. — *In a* **cum***-clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is in the subjunctive.*

399. VOCABULARY

cum, conj. *when, since, as, although.*
Fabius, -ī, m. *Fabius.*
multitūdō, -inis, f. *multitude.*
tacitus, -a, -um, *silent.*
tamen, adv. *yet, nevertheless.*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such.*

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approach, come near to.*
cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, ——, *stand firm, take position.*
dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsus, *descend, dismount.*
dēsiliō, dēsilīre, dēsiluī, dēsultus, *jump down, leap down.*
praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus, *surpass, excel.*

400. EXERCISES

1. Mīlitēs, cum[1] oppidum cēpērunt, omnīs incolās interfēcērunt. 2. Mīlitēs, cum[1] oppidum cēpissent, omnīs incolās interfēcērunt. 3. Cum[2] tanta multitūdō lapidēs et tēla coniceret, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. 4. Belgae, cum[2] virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī poterant. 5. Cum vēneris, hōc cōgnōscēs. 6. Cum[3] nāvēs refectae essent, tamen Caesar nōn nāvigāvit.

401. QUINTUS FABIUS MAXIMUS

Q. Fabius iam senex fīliō suō, cōnsulī, lēgātus fuit, et cum in ēius castra venīret, fīlius ad patrem prōgressus est, duodecim līctōribus[4] antecēdentibus. Equō vehēbātur[5] senex, nec adpropinquante cōnsule[4] dēscendit. Iam ex līctōribus ūndecim verēcundiā[6] paternae māiestātis tacitī[7] praeterierant.[8] Quod[9] cum cōnsul animadvertisset, proximum līctōrem iussit inclāmāre Fabiō patrī ut ex equō dēscenderet. Pater tum dēsiliēns: "Nōn ego, fīlī," inquit, "tuum imperium contempsī, sed experīrī voluī num scīrēs[10] tē esse cōnsulem." Ad summam senectūtem vīxit Fabius Māximus, dīgnus tantō cōgnōmine.

402. EXERCISES

1. When Fabius was old, he came to his son's camp. 2. When the consul approached, Fabius wished to test him. 3. When a consul approaches, a lieutenant dismounts. 4. As the son was consul, the father dismounted. 5. Although Fabius was old, nevertheless he leaped down from his horse. 6. When he had dismounted, the multitude was silent. 7. Since the son ordered his father[11] to dismount, we know that the former[12] was consul.

[1] Temporal. [2] Causal. [3] Concessive. [4] Abl. abs. [5] *was riding on* (*was carried by*). [6] See 165. [7] *in silence* (*silent*). [8] *had passed by*. [9] Object of **animadvertisset**. [10] See 295. [11] Acc. as in 401. [12] See 201, *b*.

LESSON LXX

Conditional Sentences

403. A *conditional sentence* consists of two parts, a *condition* — also called *protasis* — and a *conclusion* — also called *apodosis*. The *condition* (*protasis*) is generally an *if*-clause, and hence dependent; the *conclusion* (*apodosis*) is the principal clause, upon which the condition depends.

404. *Model Sentences*

Simple Conditions

1. **Sī hōc facit, bene est**, *if he does this, it is well.*
2. **Sī hōc faciēbat, bene erat**, *if he was doing this, it was well.*
3. **Sī hōc faciet, bene erit**, *if he does* (*shall do*) *this, it will be well.*

Doubtful Conditions

4. **Sī hōc faciat, bene sit**, *if he should do this, it would be well* (the time is future).

Conditions Contrary to Fact

5. **Sī hōc faceret, bene esset**, *if he were doing this, it would be well* (the time is present).

6. **Sī hōc fēcisset, bene fuisset**, *if he had done this, it would have been well* (the time is past).

a. Observe in 1, 2, and 3 that the indicative is used in both condition and conclusion, implying nothing as to the truth of the supposition. Such sentences may be called *simple conditions*.

b. Observe in 4 that the present subjunctive is used in both clauses, and that *doubt* or *possibility* is implied. This doubt is generally expressed in English by the auxiliaries *should* . . . *would*. Such sentences may be called *doubtful conditions*.

c. Observe in 5 and 6 that the subjunctive is used in both clauses, and that the contrary of both condition and conclusion is implied: *if*

he were doing this (but he is *not*), *it would be well* (therefore it is *not*), etc. Such sentences may be called *conditions contrary to fact.*

d. Observe further in 5 that the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses, and that present time is referred to; in 6 the pluperfect subjunctive, with reference to past time.

405. Rule. — *In simple conditions the indicative is used.*

406. Rule. — *In doubtful conditions the subjunctive present (or perfect) is used.*

407. Rule. — *In conditions contrary to fact the subjunctive imperfect and pluperfect are used, the imperfect denoting present time, and the pluperfect denoting past time.*

408. VOCABULARY

cēna, -ae, f. *dinner.*
dictātor, -ōris, m. *dictator.*
nisi, conj. *if not, unless.*
senātus, -ūs, m. *senate.*

praesideō, praesidēre, praesēdī, ——, *be in charge of, preside over.*
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, *answer, reply.*

409. EXERCISES

I. 1. Sī rēs pūblica in perīculō erat, dictātor creātus est. 2. Sī rēs pūblica in perīculō sit, dictātor creētur. 3. Nisi rēs pūblica in perīculō nunc esset, dictātor nōn creārētur. 4. Sī cōnsul essēs, senātuī praesidērēs. 5. Venī ad cēnam, sī tibi placet. 6. Obsidibus datīs, pācem cum eīs faciam.

II. 1. If you should ask me, I should answer. 2. If Scipio is first, who is second? 3. If Hannibal had conquered Scipio, he would have been the greatest of all generals. 4. If the consul should approach, the lieutenant would dismount. 5. If Fabius had not dismounted, would his son have ordered him to dismount?

LESSON LXXI

Review: Reading Lesson

410. REVIEW

1. What is a deponent verb? 2. Give the participles of **sequor** with their meanings. 3. Give the meanings of **veritus**, **profectus**, and **potītus**. 4. Give the meanings of **monitus**, **rēctus**, and **audītus**. 5. How can you translate the English perfect active participle — for example, *having conquered the enemy* — if the corresponding Latin verb is not deponent? 6. Inflect the indicative and subjunctive present of **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō**. 7. Give a synopsis of each in the indicative and subjunctive. 8. Give the rule for the dative with intransitives. 9. Point out an instance of this dative in 409. 10. With **cum** meaning *when*, what tenses of the indicative are used? What tenses of the subjunctive? 11. Translate **cum esset** in three ways. 12. Translate **cum sit** in two ways. 13. How many forms of conditional sentences are there? 14. Illustrate each by a model sentence. 15. What time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive in conditions contrary to fact? 16. What time is expressed by the English *were* in *if he were here, we should be glad?* What is the tense of *were?* 17. What word is used to translate *that* into Latin in purpose and result clauses? 18. What word translates *that not* in purpose clauses? What words in result clauses? 19. Translate *he comes to stay; he came to stay.* 20. Translate *I advise him not to write.* 21. Point out an indirect question in 401. 22. Translate *I asked him who he was.*

411. RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS

Erant in quādam legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus[1] adpropinquābant, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē[2] contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteponerētur, omnibusque annīs[3] dē locō summīs simultātibus

[1] *the first rank*, i.e. the position of chief centurion. [2] **inter sē**, *with each other*. [3] **omnibus annīs**, *year after year*.

contendēbant. Ex[1] hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pūgnārētur,[2] "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis[3] exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." Haec cum dīxisset,[4] prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs et in eam partem hostium quae cōnfertissima vīsa est inrumpit.

412. EXERCISES

1. For many years[5] Pullo and Vorenus contended for position. 2. Each[6] of them wished to be preferred to the other. 3. Pullo asked Vorenus why he hesitated[7] to prove his courage. 4. When Pullo had advanced beyond the fortifications, he rushed at the enemy.[8] 5. There he had[9] a chance of proving his courage. 6. If Vorenus should hesitate, he would not be preferred to Pullo. 7. I prefer Pullo to Vorenus; which (of the two) do you prefer to the other?

413. VOCABULARY

extrā, prep. with acc. *outside of, beyond.*

locus, -ī, m. (plur. **locī** and **loca**), *place, position, chance.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. *fortification.*

Pullō, -ōnis, m. *Pullo*, a centurion.

Vorēnus, -ī, m. *Vorenus*, a centurion.

antepōnō, antepōnere, anteposuī, antepositus, *place before, prefer.*
dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus, *hesitate, doubt.*
inrumpō, inrumpere, inrūpī, inruptus, *break in, rush at.*
probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus, *prove, approve.*
prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, ——, *go forward, advance, proceed.*

[1] See 256, *b*. [2] **ācerrimē . . . pūgnārētur**, *the fighting was fiercest* (*it was fought most fiercely*); **ācerrimē** from **ācriter**. [3] Compare 362, 2. [4] **haec cum dīxisset** may be translated *having said this*. [5] See 277 and 278. [6] **uterque**. [7] See 295. [8] **in hostīs**. [9] *a place was to him*.

20

LESSON LXXII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS EŌ, FERŌ, FĪŌ

Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing

Note. — For some classes this lesson may well be divided into two.

414. *a.* Learn the principal parts, the meanings, and the conjugation of **eō** (507), **ferō** (506), and **fīō** (508).

b. Observe where **ī** (the root of **eō**) is changed to **e** in the indicative and subjunctive present, in the present participle, and in the gerund. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of **eō**, as in many verbs with perfects in **-īvī**, often drop **v**: **īvit, iit : īverat, ierat ; īverit, ierit ; īvisse, iisse (īsse).**

c. **Fīō** serves as the passive of **faciō**. The **i** is long except before **-er** and in **fit.**

415. *Model Sentences*

1. **Vereor ut veniat,** *I fear that he is not coming* or *will not come.*
2. **Vereor nē veniat,** *I fear that he is coming* or *will come.*

a. Observe that a verb of fearing is followed by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive. After such verbs **ut** and **nē** seem to exchange meanings: **ut** = *that not;* **nē** = *that* (or *lest*).

b. Observe that the subjunctive present may be translated by the indicative future.

416. EXERCISES

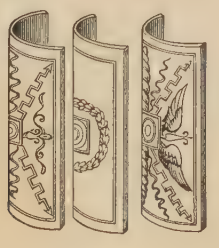
I. 1. It, fert, fit. 2. Imus, ferimus, fīunt. 3. Īte, ferte, fīte. 4. Ī, euntī, eundī. 5. Īre, ferre, fierī. 6. Iisse, tulisse, factus esse. 7. Ībunt, ferent, fient. 8. Verētur nē eant. 9. Verēbātur ut īrent. 10. Verentur nē haec fīant. 11. Timuit ut illa fierent. 12. Cum haec facta essent, Rōmam iērunt. 13. Hīs rēbus factīs, mīlitēs prōcessērunt. 14. Eōs hortātī erant ut īrent; ferrent.

II. 1. You are going, are bearing, are becoming. 2. They go, bear, become. 3. He had gone, borne, become. 4. Do you fear that this will happen? 5. Who fears that they will not go? 6. Did they fear that he would go?[1] 7. I was afraid that they would not go.

417. RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS — *Continued*

Nē[2] Vorēnus quidem[2] sēsē tum vāllō[3] continet,[4] sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem sequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō, Pullō pīlum in hostīs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quem percussum[5] et exanimātum scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs; in Pullōnem omnēs tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī[6] facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī[7] et hasta in balteō dēfīgitur. Hīc cāsus āvertit vāgīnam et[8] gladium ēdūcere cōnantis[9] dextram morātur manum; impedītumque[10] hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit illī inimīcus Vorēnus et labōrantī[11] subvenit.

[1] See 297. [2] **nē . . . quidem**, *not even.* [3] *within the rampart.* [4] Observe the repeated use of the present in lively narration, as is common in English. [5] From **percutiō**. [6] See 365. [7] Translate as if genitive. [8] **et**, etc.: translate in this order — **et morātur dextram manum cōnantis ēdūcere gladium**. [9] *when he tried* (*of him trying*). [10] Agrees with **eum** (i.e. **Pullōnem**) understood. [11] *him in distress* (*him laboring*).



SHIELDS

LESSON LXXIII

IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS

Relative of Purpose: Reading Lesson

418. *Model Sentences*

1. **Pūgnābātur,** *there was fighting* (*it was fought*).
2. **Accidit ut lūna plēna esset,** *it happened that the moon was full.*
3. **Īre tibi licet,** *you may go* (*to go is permitted to you*).

a. Observe that the verbs **pūgnābātur**, **accidit**, and **licet** have no personal subjects. In 1 there is no subject, the intransitive verb **pūgnō** being used exceptionally in the passive; in 2 the subject is the clause **ut . . . esset**; in 3 the subject is the infinitive **īre**.

b. Verbs like **licet**, that never have a personal subject, are used only in the third person singular, and are called *impersonal verbs*. Verbs that generally have a personal subject, when employed in the third person singular, as **pūgnābātur** and **accidit** are in 1 and 2, are said to be *used impersonally*.

419. *Model Sentence*

1. **Lēgātōs quī auxilium peterent mīsit,** *he sent ambassadors to seek help* (*who should seek help*).

a. Observe that the relative clause **quī auxilium peterent** is equivalent to **ut iī auxilium peterent**, that is, it expresses purpose.

420. Rule. — *Purpose is often expressed by a relative with the subjunctive.*

421. VOCABULARY

ambō, -ae, -ō (decl. like **duo**), *both*.
cohors, **cohortis**, f. *cohort*.
praesidium, -ī, n. *support*.
subsidium, -ī, n. *help*, *aid*, *relief*.

anteferō, anteferre, antetulī, antelātus, *prefer.*
iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus, *judge, decide.*
licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), ——, *it is permitted, it is allowed.*
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, ——, *it behooves, it is necessary, ought.*

422. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ācriter pūgnātur. 2. Accidit ut pūgnētur. 3. Accidit ut ūnus ex multitūdine pīlum coniceret. 4. Vorēnum nōn dubitāre oportet. 5. Dictātōrem creātum esse dīcitur.[1] 6. Dictātor creātus esse dīcitur.[2] 7. Eī licuit amīcō subvenīre. 8. Nōnne Pullō verēbātur nē Vorēnus sequerētur? 9. Iūdicārī nōn potuit[3] uter alterī esset anteferendus. 10. Decem cohortēs ad mare relictae erant quae praesidiō nāvibus essent.

II. 1. It happened that there was fighting. 2. Certain men came to say that one had been killed. 3. This ought to be done.[4] 4. I fear that Pullo cannot draw his sword. 5. It behooves the one[5] to help the other.[5] 6. Soldiers, bring help to both.

423. RIVALRY OF TWO CENTURIONS — *Continued*

Ad hunc cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō sē convertit. Gladiō comminus pūgnat Vorēnus atque, ūnō interfectō,[6] reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius[7] īnstat, dēiectus[8] in locum inferiōrem[8] concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs,[6] summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Itaque fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine sīc utrumque versāvit ut alter inimīcus[9] alterī[10] auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque[11] iūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

[1] *it is said* (*that*), impersonal. [2] Personal. [3] *it was not possible.* [4] *it behooves this to be done.* [5] alter. [6] See 358. [7] See 255, *a.* [8] *having stumbled into a hollow.* [9] *though an enemy.* [10] depends on esset. [11] neque iūdicārī posset, *nor could it be decided* = *and no one could tell.*

LESSON LXXIV

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: DATIVE OF AGENT

424. The first or active periphrastic conjugation is the future active participle combined with forms of **sum**: **amātūrus est**, *he is going to (is about to) love;* **amātūrus erat**, *he was going to (was about to) love.*

The second or passive periphrastic conjugation is the gerundive combined with forms of **sum**: **amandus est**, *he is to be loved, must be loved, ought to be loved;* **amandus erat**, *he was to be loved, ought to have been loved.*

a. Learn the synopses of the periphrastic conjugations (510, 511).

425. *Model Sentences*

1. **Sciō quid factūrus sit**, *I know what he is going to do.*
2. **Sciēbam quid factūrus esset**, *I knew what he was going to do.*

3. **Dēlenda est Carthāgō**, *Carthage must be destroyed.*
4. **Caesarī omnia erant agenda**, *all things were to be done by Caesar.*
5. **Mihi scrībendum est**, *writing must be done by me = I must write.*

a. Observe in 1 and 2 that the first periphrastic conjugation expresses *purpose* or *intention*, or simple *futurity*.

b. Observe in 3, 4, and 5 that the second periphrastic Conjugation expresses *necessity*, *duty*, or *obligation*. Compare 362, 1.

c. Observe in 5 that the verb is used impersonally. Compare 418.

d. Observe in 4 and 5 that the person who has to do a thing (**Caesarī, mihi**) is expressed by the dative translated *by*. This dative is called the *dative of agent*. Compare the ablative of agent, 208.

426. Rule. — *The gerundive with* **sum** *takes the dative to denote the person who has to do a thing.*

427. VOCABULARY

Catilīna, -ae, m. *Catiline.*
centuriō, -ōnis, m. *centurion.*
comminus, adv. *hand to hand.*
cupidē, adv. *eagerly.*
dīligentia, -ae, f. *diligence, industry.*
exsilium, -ī, n. *exile.*

concidō, concidere, concidī, ——, *fall down, fall.*
īnstō, īnstāre, īnstitī, īnstātūrus, *press on.*
morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum (fut. part. **moritūrus**), *die.*
subveniō, subvenīre, subvēnī, subventūrus, *come to aid, assist.*

428. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dēscēnsūrus est, moritūra erat. 2. Inruptūrī sunt, profectūrae erant. 3. Ēdūcendī sunt, ēducandī sunt. 4. Tibi petendum est, nōbīs respondendum est.

5. Nāvīs refectūrus est. 6. Nāvēs Caesarī reficiendae sunt. 7. Duo centuriōnēs virtūtem probātūrī erant. 8. Duōrum centuriōnum virtūs probanda erat. 9. Gladiīs comminus pūgnātum est. 10. Dīligentiā[1] nōbīs ūtendum[2] est. 11. Omnibus moriendum[2] est. 12. Fīēbat ut Pullō inimīcō subsidium ferret. 13. Hostīs oportēbat sē[3] in mūnītiōnēs recipere. 14. Vorēnus, cum cupidius īnstāret, in locum īnferiōrem concidit. 15. Nisi alter alterī subvēnisset, uterque interfectus esset.

II. 1. He was going to ask, she is going to prepare. 2. They were going to advance, she was going to prepare. 3. This must be done, it had to be spared.

4. He feared that it must be done. 5. The state must be defended by the citizens. 6. Cicero asked whether[4] Catiline was going to go[5] into exile. 7. All things were done that had to be done.[6] 8. Do not[7] think that we must do this.[8]

[1] See 388. [2] Compare 425, 5. [3] sē recipere = *withdraw.* [4] num. [5] Compare 425, 2. [6] Compare 425, 4. [7] See 340. [8] *this must be done by us.*

LESSON LXXV

EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE

Review: Reading Lesson

429. Commit to memory the following expressions of purpose, which have occurred in the preceding lessons:

Vēnērunt	**ut pācem peterent,** **ad pācem petendam,** **pācem petendī causā,** **pācis petendae causā,** **pācem petītum,** **quī pācem peterent,**	*they came to seek peace.*
	ad pūgnandum,	*to fight.*

430. REVIEW

1. Inflect **ferō** in the active indicative present and in the passive subjunctive imperfect. 2. Give the meanings of **fīunt**, **fient**, **factum est**. 3. Give the meanings of **ī**, **īs**, **ītis**, **ībit**. 4. Decline the participle **iēns** in the masculine. 5. What forms of **fiō** have **ī** before **e**? 6. What form of **ferō** has no personal ending? 7. Translate **vereor ut eat** and **vereor nē eat**. 8. Translate **verēbātur ut īret** and **verēbātur nē īret**. 9. In 400, I. 5, what is the subject of **placet**? 10. What is the meaning of **ītur** (pass. of **eō**)? Of **concurritur** (from **concurrō**, *rush*)? 11. Point out in 428, I. an impersonal verb, and an intransitive verb used impersonally in the passive. 12. Translate **dīcitur iisse** and **dictum est eum iisse**.

431. THE ROMANS WIN THEIR FIRST NAVAL VICTORY

Gāius Duīlius Poenōs nāvālī proeliō prīmus[1] vīcit. Quī[2] cum vidēret nāvīs Rōmānās ā Pūnicīs vēlōcitāte superārī, manus ferreās, quās corvos vocāvērunt, instituit. Ea machina

[1] **prīmus vīcit**, *was the first to conquer.* [2] **quī cum**, *when he.*

Rōmānīs māgnō ūsuī fuit; nam iniectīs illīs corvīs[1] hostīlem nāvem adprehendēbant, deinde, superiectō ponte,[1] in eam īnsiliēbant, et gladiō velut in pūgnā terrestrī dimicābant; unde Rōmānīs, quī rōbore praestābant, facilis victōria fuit. Inter pūgnandum[2] trīgintā hostium nāvēs captae sunt, tredecim mersae.[3] Duīlius, victor Rōmam reversus,[4] prīmus[5] nāvālem triumphum ēgit.[6] Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit, quod invictī terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum[7] poterant.

432. VOCABULARY

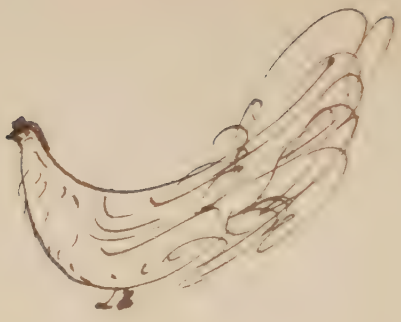
corvus, -ī, m. *raven.*
ferreus, -a, -um, *of iron, iron.*
hostīlis, -e, *of the enemy, hostile.*
Poenī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Carthaginians.*
Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Carthaginian.*
rōbur, -oris, n. *strength, vigor.*
vēlōcitās, -ātis, f. *swiftness.*
victor, -ōris, m. *victor;* as adj., *victorious.*

adprehendō, adprehendere, adprehendī, adprehēnsus, *seize hold of.*
īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus, *set up, establish.*
superiaciō, superiacere, superiēcī, superiectus, *throw over, cast upon.*

433. EXERCISES

1. Since the Roman ships surpassed the Carthaginian in swiftness, iron hands were set up. 2. These iron hands were called ravens. 3. The Romans used these ravens[8] for[9] seizing hold of the hostile ships. 4. Then a bridge was thrown over, and the men[10] fought hand to hand with swords. 5. The Romans were victorious because they excelled the Carthaginians in strength.

[1] See 358. [2] See 369, I. 4. [3] From **mergō**. [4] From **revertor**. [5] Compare p. 168, note 1. [6] From **agō**. [7] **plūrimum poterant**, *were most powerful*. [8] See 388. [9] **ad** with gerundive. [10] *soldiers*.



SELECTIONS FOR READING

ANECDOTES

434. THE BAD APPLES

Carolus, agricolae impigrī fīlius, bonus erat puer sed amīcōs amābat malōs. Agricola igitur puerō calathum pōmōrum plēnum dat. Bona[1] continēbat calathus pōma, pauca tamen erant putrida. Grātum puerō erat dōnum et cum dīligentiā cūrat; mala autem pōma maculant bona et mox mala sunt cūncta. Carolus maestus adversam fortūnam plōrat. Tum agricola fīlium ita monet: "Pōma mala maculant bona, certē malī amīcī maculābunt puerum bonum."

435. THE BROKEN DIKE

Cimbrī terram habitant mīram, nam ōceanus tēcta agrōsque agricolārum saepe inundat. Incolae fossīs tumulīsque māgnīs[2] undārum violentiam coërcent; aliquandō tamen aqua claustra[3] dēturbat et vāstat terram. Forte erat tumulus nōn validus; iam appāret parva rīma; mox via māgna patēbit et terram superābunt undae. At perīculum videt puer parvus; statim dextrā rīmam implet coërcetque aquam.

Diū et cōnstanter servābat puer praesidium. Iam rigēbant membra, at dextra parva aquam semper coërcēbat. Postrīdiē agricolae locō adpropinquant. Puer frīgidus et moribundus dextrā tamen aquam coërcet. Saxīs celeriter tumulum cōnfīrmant et līmō rīmam implent. Tum umerīs[4] puerum sublevant

[1] With **pōma**. [2] With **fossīs** and **tumulīs**. [3] Object of **dēturbat**. [4] *on their shoulders.*

recreantque cibō. Tantam cōnstantiam saepe commemorant Cimbrī, nārrantque līberīs puerī factum.

436. SIR WALTER RALEIGH

Elisabētha, rēgīna Britannōrum, vestīs splendidās et pretiōsās semper gerēbat. Forte māgnā[1] cum catervā comitum per vīcōs urbis ambulābat. Subitō ante pedēs multum videt lutum. Rēgīna stat incerta quod viam lubricam timet. At ex turbā exsilit iuvenis; umerīs[2] novum pallium dētrahit et locum tegit vestimentō; tum iterum ad sociōs recurrit. Laeta rēgīna super pallium ambulat nec pedem maculat. Statim grāta[3] iuvenem in numerum amīcōrum adscrībit.

437. THE FAITHFUL HOUND

Cambricus ōlim, ācer vēnātor, fidelem habēbat canem, nōmine Gelertum. Dum[4] dominus in silvīs abest,[4] canem saepe relinquēbat parvī fīlī custodem. Aliquandō more suō Gelertus dominum reducem cum laetō clāmōre salūtābat. At subitō dominus pectus eius et dentīs sanguine cruentōs notat; perterritus cūnās parvī fīlī petit. Heu! puerum non videt sed undique cruorem, foedī certāminis indicium. Statim caecō furōre canem, malī auctōrem, iaculō trānsfīxit. Gelertus cum gemitū exspīrāvit. Simul dominus in recessu aedium īnfantem vīdit salvum atque incolumem. Sed haud procul ab eō locō iacēbat[5] ingēns lupus. Fidelis enim custōs vītam īnfantis ita servāverat.

438. THE SIEGE OF CALAIS

Ab Edvardō, rēge Britannōrum, urbs Gallica ōlim oppūgnābātur. Diū incolae cōpiārum rēgis impetum māgnā cum

[1] See p. 37, foot-note. [2] *from his shoulders.* [3] Agrees with **rēgīna** understood, *the queen gratefully.* [4] The present after **dum** is generally to be translated by the imperfect. [5] *Was lying dead.*

virtūte sustinuerant. Tandem, ubi nihil cibī supererat[1] miserīque cīvēs mūrīs et pellīs edēbant, cum rēge dē dēditiōne agēbant. At ā rēge propter tantam hostium pertināciam īrātō saevae condiciōnēs pācis impositae sunt morsque duodecim prīncipum est postulāta. Sine morā duodecim virī sē prō patriā dēvovent. Inde comitēs maestī fūnibus colla amīcōrum vinciunt eōsque ad rēgem dūcunt.

Rēx inter nōbilīs in praetōriō sedēbat. Iamque captīvī ā maestā cīvium turbā ad locum ductī sunt ōmnēsque multīs cum precibus ad pedēs victōris cadunt. At rēx dūrus precēs eōrum spernit āvertitque voltum. Forte rēgīna rem cōgnōscit; statim ad praetōrium properat suāsque lacrimās cum precibus cīvium iungit. "Dā[2] mihi, rēx māgne," inquit, "vītās hōrum fortium virōrum; nōnne hī rēctē suam patriam dēfendērunt?" Rēx prīmō precēs nōn audīvit, tandem lacrimae uxōris īram vincunt poenamque captīvīs remīsit.

STORIES OF HERCULES

439. THE INFANT PRODIGY

Herculēs, Alcmēnae fīlius, ōlim in Graeciā habitābat. Hīc dīcitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. At Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum, Alcmēnam ōderat[3] et Herculem adhūc īnfantem necāre voluit. Mīsit igitur duo serpentīs saevissimōs, quī mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcmēnae vēnērunt, ubi Herculēs cum frātre suō dormiēbat. (Nōn tamen in cūnīs sed in scūtō māgnō cubābant.) Serpentēs iam adpropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant; itaque puerī ē somnō excitātī sunt.

Iphiclēs, frāter Herculis, māgnā vōce exclāmāvit; at Herculēs ipse, puer fortissimus, haudquāquam territus est. Parvīs manibus serpentīs statim prehendit et colla eōrum

[1] From supersum. [2] *give:* imperative of dō. [3] From ōdī, pluperfect with meaning of imperfect

māgnā vī[1] compressit. Tālī modō serpentēs ā puerō interfectī sunt. Alcmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clāmōrem audīverat et marītum suum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et gladium suum rapuit; tum ad puerōs properābat, sed ubi ad locum vēnit rem mīram vīdit; Herculēs enim rīdēbat[2] et serpentīs mortuōs mōnstrābat.

440. HERCULES CONSULTS THE ORACLE

Herculēs cōnstituit igitur[3] ad ōrāculum Delphicum īre; hōc enim ōrāculum erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis plūrimīs dōnīs ōrnātum; hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, nōmine Pȳthia, et cōnsilium dabat iīs quī ad ōrāculum veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur et voluntātem deī hominibus ēnūntiābat. Herculēs igitur, quī Apollinem praecipuē colēbat, hūc vēnit.

Pȳthia iussit eum ad urbem Tīryntha īre et Eurystheī rēgis omnia imperāta facere. Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, ad urbem illam contendit,[4] et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādidit. Duodecim annōs[5] in servitūte Eurystheī tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs, quōs ille imperāverat, cōnfēcit; hōc enim ūnō modō tantum scelus expiārī potuit. Dē hīs labōribus plūrima ā poētīs scrīpta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētae nārrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

441. SLAYING THE HYDRA

Post haec iūssus est ab Eurystheō Hydram necāre[6]; haec autem mōnstrum erat, cui[7] novem erant capita. Herculēs igitur cum amīcō Iolāō profectus[8] est ad palūdem

[1] See 482. [2] Not *laughed*, but *was laughing*. [3] That is, because he wanted to make expiation for a crime that he had committed. [4] Compare for meaning **properābat**, l. 4. [5] *for twelve years;* see 277 and 278. [6] Compare, for meaning, **interfectī**, l. 1. [7] See 114 and 115. [8] *set out;* from **proficīscor**; see 386.

Lernaeam, quam Hydra incolēbat.[1] Mox mōnstrum invēnit et, quamquam rēs erat māgnī perīculī, collum ēius laevā[2] prehendit. Tum dextrā capita novem abscīdere coepit; quotiēs tamen hōc fēcerat, nova capita exoriēbantur.[3] Diū frūstrā labōrābat; tandem hōc cōnātū[4] dēstitit[5]; cōnstituit deinde arborēs succīdere et īgnem accendere. Hōc celeriter fēcit et, postquam[6] līgna īgnem comprehendērunt,[6] face ārdente colla adussit,[7] unde capita exoriēbantur. Nōn tamen sine māgnō labōre haec fēcit; vēnit enim auxiliō[8] Hydrae cancer ingēns, quī, dum[9] Herculēs capita abscīdit,[9] crūra ēius mordēbat. Postquam mōnstrum tālī modō interfēcit, sagittās suās sanguine ēius imbuit itaque mortiferās reddidit.

442. CLEANSING THE AUGEAN STABLES

Deinde Eurystheus Herculī[10] labōrem hunc graviōrem imposuit. Augēās quīdam, quī illō tempore rēgnum in Ēlide obtinēbat, tria mīlia[11] boum[12] habēbat. Hī in stabulō ingentis māgnitūdinis inclūdēbantur; stabulum autem inluviē ac squālōre obsitum[13] est; neque enim ad hōc tempus umquam pūrgātum erat. Hōc iūssus est Herculēs intrā spatium ūnius diēī pūrgāre. Ille, etsī rēs erat multae operae, negōtium suscēpit. Prīmum māgnō labōre fossam duodēvīgintī pedum fēcit, per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrum stabulī perdūxit. Tum, postquam mūrum perrūpit,[14] aquam in stabulum immīsit; et tālī modō contrā opīniōnem omnium opus cōnfēcit.

[1] Notice the alternation of perfects and imperfects in this anecdote and explain the difference; see 132, *b*. [2] Supply **manū**; so with **dextrā**, l. 3. [3] See 386; the imperfect here denotes repeated action. [4] See 232. [5] From **dēsistō**. [6] The perfect after **postquam** is generally best translated as a pluperfect. [7] From **adūrō**. [8] See 348 and 349. [9] *while he was cutting off*; see p. 172, l. 12, and note. [10] Depends on **imposuit**; see 346 and 347. [11] See 305, *e*. [12] See 257 and 482. [13] From **obserō**. [14] See note 6 and **interfēcit**, l. 11.

443. THE GOLDEN APPLES OF THE HESPERIDES

Eurystheus labōrem ūndecimum Herculī imposuit, graviōrem quam quōs[1] suprā nārrāvimus. Mandāvit enim eī, ut aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum auferret.[2] Hesperidēs autem nymphae erant quaedam[3] formā[4] praestantissimā, quae in terrā longinquā habitābant et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Iūnōne commissa erant. Multī hominēs aurī cupiditāte inductī haec pōma auferre iam anteā cōnātī[5] erant; rēs tamen difficillima[6] erat; namque hortus, in quō pōma erant, mūrō ingentī undique circumdatus est; praetereā dracō quīdam, cui[7] centum erant capita, portam hortī diligenter custōdiēbat. Opus igitur, quod Eurystheus Herculī imperāverat, erat summae difficultātis, non modo ob causās quās memorāvimus, sed quod Herculēs omnīnō ignōrābat quō in locō hortus ille situs esset.

444. ATLAS, WHO UPHELD THE HEAVENS

Herculēs, quamquam quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, cōnstituit tamen Eurystheō[8] pārēre; et simul ac iussa eius accēpit, proficīsci māturāvit.[9] A multīs mercātoribus quaesīvit[10] quō in locō Hesperidēs habitārent; nihil tamen certum reperīre potuit. Frustrā per multas terrās iter fēcit et multa perīcula subiit.[11] Tandem, cum in hīs itineribus tōtum annum consūmpsisset, ad extrēmam partem orbis, quae proxima erat Oceanō, pervēnit. Hīc stābat vir quīdam, nōmine Atlās, ingentī māgnitudine[12] corporis, quī caelum (ita trādunt) umeris[13] suīs sustinēbat, nē in terram dēcideret. Herculēs tantum labōrem māgnopere mīrātus[14] post paulō in conloquium

[1] (*Those*) *which*. [2] From auferō; imperfect subjunctive; see 506. [3] See 335. [4] Limits nymphae; see 306 and 307. [5] From cōnor. [6] See 254. [7] See 114 and 115. [8] See 392 and 393. [9] Compare, for meaning, contendit, p. 174, l. 16. [10] From quaerō. [11] See 414, *b*. [12] Limits vir; compare note 4. [13] See 123 and 124. [14] See 386, *c*.

cum Atlante vēnit et, cum causam itineris docuisset, auxilium ab eō petiit.

445. HERCULES TAKES ATLAS'S PLACE

Atlās autem potuit Herculī[1] māximē prōdesse; ille enim, cum[2] ipse esset pater Hesperidum, bene scīvit quō in locō esset[3] hortus. Postquam igitur audīvit quam ob causam Herculēs vēnisset,[3] "Ipse," inquit, "ad hortum ībō,[4] et fīliābus[5] meīs persuādēbō, ut pōma suā sponte trādant." Herculēs, cum haec audīret, māgnopere gāvīsus[6] est; nōluit enim vim adhibēre, sī rēs aliter fierī posset; cōnstituit igitur oblātum[7] auxilium accipere. Atlās tamen postulāvit ut, dum ipse abesset, Herculēs caelum umerīs sustinēret. Hōc igitur negōtium Herculēs libenter suscēpit et, quamquam rēs erat summī labōris, tōtum pondus caelī continuōs complūrīs diēs sōlus sustinēbat.

446. RETURN OF ATLAS

Atlās intereā abierat[8] et ad hortum Hesperidum, quī pauca mīlia passuum[9] aberat, sē quam[10] celerrimē contulerat.[11] Eō cum vēnisset, causam veniendī exposuit et fīliās suās vehementer hortātus est ut pōma trāderent. Illae diū haerēbant, nōlēbant enim hōc facere, quod ab ipsā Iūnōne (dē quā ante dictum est) hōc mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba iīs[12] persuāsit ut sibi pārērent et pōma ad Herculem rettulit.[13] Herculēs intereā, cum plūrīs diēs exspectāvisset, neque ūllam fāmam dē reditū Atlantis accēpisset, hāc morā

[1] See 346 and 347. [2] *since;* see 398. [3] Observe how often the subjunctive in an indirect question (294) should be rendered like an indicative. [4] See 507. [5] See 393 and p. 22, foot-note 2. [6] From **gaudeō**. [7] From **offerō**. See 353, 5. [8] From **abeō**; compare **subiit**, p. 176, l. 20. [9] See 279. [10] **quam celerrimē**, *as quickly as possible*. [11] From **cōnferō**. [12] See 392 and 393. [13] From **referō**.

graviter commōtus est. Tandem quīntō diē Atlantem vīdit redeuntem[1] et mox māgnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum postquam grātiās prō tantō beneficiō rettulit ad Graeciam proficīscī mātūrāvit.

447. NESSUS, THE CENTAUR

Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscrībere longum[2] est. Tandem iam aetāte prōvectus[3] Dēianīram, Oeneī fīliam, in[4] mātrimōnium dūxit; post tamen trīs annōs accidit ut puerum quendam, nōmine Eunomum, cāsū occīderit.[5] Cum autem mos esset ut, sī quis hominem occīdisset cāsū, in exsilium īret, Herculēs cum uxōre suā ē fīnibus ēius cīvitātis exīre mātūrāvit. Dum[6] tamen iter faciunt,[6] ad flūmen quoddam pervēnērunt, quod nūllō ponte iūnctum erat, et dum quaerunt quōnam modō flūmen trāiciant, accurrit Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium viātōribus obtulit.[7] Herculēs igitur uxōrem suam in tergum Nessī imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō[8] trāiēcit. At Nessus paulum in aquam prōgressus ad rīpam subitō reversus est et Dēianīram auferre cōnābātur. Quod[9] cum animadvertisset Herculēs, īrā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfīxit.

448. THE POISONED ROBE

Nessus igitur sagittā Herculis trānsfixus moriēns humī[10] iacēbat; at, nē occāsionem suī[11] ulcīscendī dīmitteret, ita

[1] See 485. [2] **longum est**, *it would be tedious*. [3] From **prōvehō**. [4] **in mātrimōnium dūxit**, *married*. What literally? [5] Compare, for meaning, **necāre**, p. 174, l. 22, and **interfectī**, p. 174, l. 1. [6] Compare **dum . . . abscīdit**, p. 175, l. 10, and note. [7] From **offerō**; compare **oblātum**, p. 177, l. 10. [8] From **nō**; *by swimming;* see 367, 3. [9] Refers to the whole preceding sentence. **quod cum**, *when this;* the relative after a period must commonly be translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, as here, by *this*. [10] See 195, *b*. [11] **suī ulcīscendī**, *for avenging himself*.

locūtus est: "Tū, Dēianīra, verba morientis audī, — sī vīs[1] amōrem marītī tuī cōnservāre, aliquid sanguinis hūius, quī ē pectore meō effunditur, sūme āc repōne; tum, sī umquam suspīciō in mentem tuam vēnerit,[2] vestem marītī hōc sanguine īnficiēs." Haec locūtus Nessus animam efflāvit; Dēianīra autem nihil[3] malī suspicāta,[4] imperāta fēcit. Post breve tempus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem Oechaliae, suscēpit et, cum rēgem ipsum cum fīliīs interfēcisset, Iolēn, fīliam Eurytī, captīvam redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit, nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmontorium adpulit[5] et in terram ēgressus āram cōnstituit, ut Iovī sacrificāret. Dum tamen sacrificium parat, Licham comītem suum domum mīsit quī[6] vestem albam referret[6]; mōs enim erat apud antīquōs, dum sacrificia faciēbant, vestem albam gerere. At Dēianīra verita nē Herculēs amōrem ergā Iolēn habēret vestem, priusquam Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessī īnfēcit.

449. THE DEATH OF HERCULES

Herculēs nihil malī[3] suspicātus[4] vestem quam Lichās attulit[7] statim induit; post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia membra sēnsit[8] et quae causa esset[9] ēius reī māgnopere mīrābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus vestem dētrahere cōnātus est; illa tamen in corpore haesit[10] neque ūllō modō dīvellī potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs quasi furōre impulsus[11] in montem Oetam sē contulit[12] et in rogum, quem summā celeritāte exstrūxit, sē imposuit. Hōc cum fēcisset, cōs quī circumstābant ōrāvit ut rogum quam[13] celerrimē accenderent. Omnēs diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam ad misericordiam

[1] See 505. [2] *shall have come;* but it is better to translate *comes*. [3] **nihil malī**, *nothing of evil = no evil;* see 256 and 257. [4] See 386, *d*. The perfect participle of a deponent verb is sometimes present in sense. [5] From **adpellō**. [6] See 419 and 420. [7] From **adferō**. [8] From **sentiō**. [9] See p. 177, l. 5, and note. [10] From **haereō**. [11] From **impellō**. [12] From **cōnferō**. [13] **quam celerrimē**: see p. 177, l. 16, and note 10.

inductus ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscūrantur, Herculēs dēnsā nūbe vēlātus ā Iove in Olympum abreptus[1] est.

STORIES OF ULYSSES

450. POLYPHEMUS, THE ONE-EYED GIANT

Ulixēs comitēsque, postquam tōtam noctem rēmis contenderant, ad terram ignōtam nāvem adpulērunt[2]; tum, quod nāturam ēius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duodecim ē sociis[3] in terram ēgressus locum explōrāre cōnstituit. Paulum ā lītore prōgressī ad antrum ingēns pervēnērunt, quod habitārī sēnsērunt[4]; ēius enim introitum arte[5] et manibus mūnitum esse animadvertērunt. Mox, etsī intellegēbant sē[6] nōn sine periculō id factūrōs, antrum intrāvērunt. Quod[7] cum fēcissent, māgnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt in vāsis ingentibus conditam. Dum tamen mīrantur quis eam sēdem incoleret, sonitum terribilem audīvērunt et oculīs ad portam versīs mōnstrum horribile vidērunt, humānā quidem speciē[8] et figūrā,[8] sed ingentī māgnitūdine[8] corporis. Cum autem animadvertissent gigantem ūnum tantum oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclopibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.[9]

451. THE GIANT'S SUPPER

Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quīdam, quī īnsulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolebant; ibi enim Volcānus,

[1] From **abripiō**. [2] See p. 179, l. 10, and note. [3] See 256, *b*. [4] From **sentiō**. [5] **arte et manibus**, *by skill and hands = by skilful hands*. [6] Subject accusative of **factūrōs (esse)**, *themselves to be going to do = that they would do;* see 318, 1. [7] Translate as if it were **cum quod**. See p. 178, l. 18, and note. [8] Descriptive ablatives limiting **mōnstrum**, translated as genitives; see 306 and 307. [9] **accēperant = audīverant**.

praeses fabrōrum et īgnis repertor, cūius servī Cyclōpēs erant, officīnam suam habēbat.

Graecī igitur, simul āc mōnstrum vīdērunt, terrōre paene exanimātī in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlāre cōnābantur. Polyphēmus autem, ita enim gigās appellātus est, pecora sua in spēluncam ēgit[1]; tum cum saxō ingentī portam obstrūxisset,[2] īgnem in mediō antrō accendit. Hōc factō, omnia oculō perlūstrābat et cum sēnsisset hominēs[3] in interiōre parte antrī cēlārī, māgnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Quī estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?" Tum Ulixēs respondit sē[4] neque mercātōrēs esse neque praedandī[5] causā vēnisse, sed ē Trōiā redeuntīs[6] vī tempestātum ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs esse; ōrāvit etiam ut sibi sine iniūriā abīre licēret. Tum Polyphēmus quaesīvit[7] ubi esset nāvis quā[8] vectī[9] essent; Ulixēs autem, cum[10] bene intellegeret sibi[11] māximē praecavendum[11] esse, respondit nāvem suam in rūpīs cōniectam[12] et omnīnō perfrāctam esse. Polyphēmus autem nūllō datō respōnsō duo ē sociīs manū conripuit et membrīs eōrum dīvolsīs[13] carnem[14] dēvorāre coepit.

452. NO WAY OF ESCAPE

Dum[15] haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē[16] vōcem quidem[16] ēdere possent sed omnī spē salūtis dēpositā mortem praesentem exspectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribilī cēnā dēpulsa est,

[1] From agō. [2] Observe that the subjunctive after cum meaning *when* is translated as an indicative. [3] Subject accusative of cēlārī; see 318. [4] *that they*, subject accusative of esse and vēnisse. [5] See 429. [6] Repeat sē from the preceding clause: *that they, while returning;* see 507. [7] From quaerō. [8] Strictly *by which* (see 124), but translate *in which.* [9] From vehō. [10] See 398. [11] *by himself it must be especially guarded against=he must take especial precaution;* see 425, 5, and 426. [12] *had been cast;* supply esse. [13] From dīvellō. [14] From carō. [15] See p. 172, l. 12, and note. [16] *not even;* always inclosing the emphatic word.

humī prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum vīdisset Ulixēs, tantam[1] occāsiōnem reī[2] bene gerendae[2] nōn omittendam arbitrātus, in[3] eō erat ut pectus mōnstrī gladiō trānsfīgeret. Cum tamen nihil temerē agendum[4] exīstimāret, cōnstituit explōrāre, antequam hōc faceret, quā ratione ex antrō ēvādere possent. At cum saxum animadvertisset, quō[5] introitus obstrūctus erat, nihil[6] sibi prōfutūrum intellēxit, sī Polyphēmum interfēcisset.[7] Tanta enim erat ēius saxī māgnitūdō, ut nē[8] ā decem quidem[8] hominibus āmovērī posset. Quae[9] cum ita essent,[9] Ulixēs hōc[10] dēstitit cōnātū et ad sociōs rediit; quī, cum intellēxissent quō in locō[11] rēs essent, nullā spē salūtis oblātā, dē fortūnīs suīs dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen, nē[12] animōs dēmitterent, vehementer hortātus est; dēmōnstrāvit sē[13] iam anteā ē multīs et māgnīs perīculīs ēvāsisse, neque dubium esse quīn in tantō discrīmine dīī auxilium adlātūrī[14] essent.

453. A PLAN FOR VENGEANCE

Ortā[15] lūce Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem[16] quod hesternō diē fēcit; conreptīs[17] enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs, carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum

[1] tantam . . . arbitrātus, *thinking that so good a chance . . . ought not to be let slip;* occāsiōnem is subject accusative of omittendam (esse); see 424 and 425, *b*. [2] Compare 362, 2. [3] in eō erat ut, *was in that* (state) *that* = *was on the point of.* [4] *ought to be done:* supply esse, as with omittendam, above. Very often in forms of the infinitive made up of a participle and esse the latter is omitted. [5] *by which.* [6] nihil sibi prōfutūrum, *it would be no advantage to them;* what literally? Again esse is omitted. [7] *should kill,* not *had killed.* [8] *not even;* see p. 181, l. 21, and note. [9] *since these things were so* = *such being the case.* [10] With cōnātū. [11] *state,* not *place.* [12] *not to lose heart;* the clause depends upon hortātus est. [13] *that they;* go on, making a metaphrase mentally to the end, and the meaning will be clear. [14] From adferō. [15] ortā lūce = prīmā lūce: ortā from orior; what literally? [16] idem quod: see 332. [17] With virīs.

āmōvisset, ipse cum pecore suō ex antrō prōgressus est. Quod cum vidērent Graecī, māgnam[1] in spem vēnērunt sē post paulum ēvāsūrōs.[2] Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsī sunt; nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt,[3] saxum in locum restituit. Reliquī omnī spē salūtis dēpositā lāmentīs lacrimīsque sē dēdidērunt; Ulixēs vērō quī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir māgnī fuit cōnsilī, etsī bene intellegēbat rem in discrīmine esse, nōndum omnīnō dēspērābat. Tandem postquam diū tōtō animō cōgitāvit, hōc cēpit cōnsilium. Ē līgnīs quae in antrō reposita[4] sunt, pālum māgnum dēlēgit; hunc summā cum dīligentiā praeacūtum fēcit; tum postquam sociīs quid fierī vellet ostendit, reditum Polyphēmī exspectābat.

454. POLYPHEMUS THRICE DRAINS A WINE-BOWL

Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad antrum rediit et eōdem modō quō[5] anteā cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vīnī prōmpsit,[6] quem forte, ut in tālibus rēbus accidere cōnsuēvit,[7] sēcum attulerat,[8] et, postquam māgnam crātēram vīnō replēvit, gigantem ad bibendum[9] prōvocāvit. Polyphēmus, quī numquam anteā vīnum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim hausit.[10] Quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et tertium crātēram replērī iubēret. Tum cum quaesīvisset quō nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Nēminem[11] appellārī. Quod cum audīvisset, Polyphēmus ita locūtus est: "Hanc tibi grātiam prō tantō beneficiō referam, tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō." His[12] dictīs, cibō vīnōque gravātus recubuit[13] et post breve tempus somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs sociis

[1] māgnam . . . vēnērunt, *had great hopes.* [2] From **evādō**; supply esse; see p. 182, note 4. [3] From **exeō**. Observe in this paragraph three examples of the perfect after **postquam**; see p. 175, note 6. [4] From **repōnō**. [5] *as*; compare **idem quod**, p. 182, note 16. [6] From **prōmō**. [7] From **cōnsuēscō**; translate as present. [8] From **adferō**. [9] See 367, 2. [10] From **hauriō**. [11] *Noman.* [12] *these* (*things*) *having been said = this said.* [13] From **recumbō**.

convocātīs, "Habēmus," inquit, "quam[1] petiimus facultātem: nē[2] igitur tantam occāsiōnem reī[3] bene gerendae omittāmus."

455. NOMAN

Hāc ōrātiōne habitā,[4] postquam extrēmum[5] pālum ignī calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmī, dum dormit, flagrante lignō trānsfōdit. Quō factō, omnēs in dīversas spēluncae partīs sē abdidērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre,[6] quod[7] necesse fuit, ē somnō excitātus, clāmōrem terribilem sustulit[8] et dum per spēluncam errat, Ulixī manum inicere cōnābatur. Cum[9] tamen iam omnīnō caecus esset, nūllo modō hoc efficere potuit. Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs, clāmōre auditō, undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt et ad introitum adstantēs, quid[10] Polyphēmus ageret quaesīvērunt et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter volnerātum esse et māgnō dolōre adfīcī.[11] Cum tamen cēterī quaesīvissent quis eī vim intulisset, respondit ille Nēminem id fēcisse. Quibus auditīs, unus ē Cyclopibus, "At sī nēmo," inquit, "tē volnerāvit, haud dubium est quin cōnsilio[12] deōrum, quibus resistere nec possumus nec volumus, hōc suppliciō adfīciāris." His dictīs, abiērunt Cyclōpēs eum in īnsāniam incidisse arbitrātī.[13]

[1] quam petiimus facultātem = facultātem quam petiimus. [2] nē . . . omittāmus, *let us not let slip*, hortatory subjunctive; see 339. *a*, and 340. *a*. [3] Compare p. 182, l. 2, and note 2. [4] Translate the ablative absolute here and generally by a clause; see 358. *a*. [5] extrēmum pālum = extrēmam partem pālī; see also 489. [6] Limits excitātus. [7] *which was necessary* = *necessarily;* the reference is to what follows. [8] From tollō. [9] *since*. [10] Literally, *what Polyphemus was doing:* translate *what ailed Polyphemus:* the clause depends on the next word. [11] Passive infinitive present from adficiō. [12] Depends on adficiāris, *by the design . . . you are afflicted*. [13] Equivalent to arbitrantēs; compare suspicāta, p. 179, l. 6, and note 4. Find in this anecdote five ablatives absolute and two indirect questions.

456. THE ESCAPE

At Polyphēmus, ubi sociōs suōs abiisse sēnsit, furōre atque āmentiā impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit. Tandem cum portam invēnisset, saxum quō obstructa[1] erat āmōvit, ut pecus ad agrōs exīret. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit et ut[2] quaeque ovis ad locum vēnerat, tergum ēius manibus tractābat, nē virī inter ovīs exīre possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs, hōc[3] iniit cōnsilium; bene enim intellēxit omnem spem salūtis in dolō magis quam in virtūte pōnī. Prīmum trīs quās vīdit pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit. Quibus inter[4] sē vīminibus cōnexīs,[5] ūnum sociōrum ventribus eārum ita subiēcit ut omnīnō latēret: deinde ovīs[6] hominem sēcum ferentīs ad portam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore[7] suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim, postquam manūs tergīs eārum imposuit, ovīs praeterīre passus[8] est. Ulixēs, ubi rem ita fēlīciter ēvēnisse vīdit, omnīs suōs sociōs ex ōrdine eōdem modō ēmīsit; quō factō, ipse ultimus ēvāsit.

457. OUT OF DANGER

Hīs rēbus ita cōnfectīs, Ulixēs cum sociīs māximē veritus[9] nē Polyphēmus fraudem sentiret, quam[10] celerrimē ad lītus contendit. Quō[11] cum vēnissent, ab iīs quī nāvī[12] praesidiō relictī erant, māgnā[13] cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Hī enim, cum[14] animīs anxiīs iam trīs diēs reditum eōrum in[15] hōrās exspectāvissent, eōs[16] in perīculum grave incidisse,[16] id[17] quod erat,

[1] The subject is porta understood. [2] Translate ut *as* or *when* when used with the indicative. [3] With cōnsilium. Compare for order hōc dēstitit cōnātū, p. 182, l. 10. [4] inter sē, *together*. [5] From cōnectō. [6] Object of ēgit, from agō. [7] fore = futūrum esse. [8] From patior. [9] See p. 184, l. 21, and note. [10] See p. 179, l. 25, and note. [11] *thither;* begin with cum; compare p. 178, note 9. [12] See 348, *a*. [13] Compare p. 37, foot-note. [14] *since*. [15] in hōrās, *hourly*. [16] *that they had fallen;* depends on suspicātī following. [17] id quod erat, *that which was = as was true*.

suspicātī, ipsī auxiliandī causā ēgredī parābant. Tum Ulixēs nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus sī in eo locō manēret, quam celerrimē proficīscī constituit. Iussit igitur omnīs nāvem cōnscendere et ancorīs sublātīs[1] paulum ā lītore in altum prō-
5 vectus est. Tum māgnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Tū, Polyphēme, quī iūra hospitī[2] spernis, iūstam et dēbitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvistī." Hāc vōce auditā Polyphēmus īrā vehementer commōtus ad mare sē contulit et ubi intellēxit nāvem paulum ā lītore remōtam esse, saxum ingēns manū conreptum
10 in eam partem coniēcit, unde vocem venīre sēnsit. Graecī autem, etsī minimum[3] āfuit quīn submergerentur,[3] nūllō acceptō damnō cursum tenuērunt.

FABLES

458. CIRCUMSTANCES ALTER CASES

Haedus stāns in tēctō domūs[4] lupō[5] praetereuntī maledīxit. Cui lupus, "Non tū," inquit,[6] "sed tēctum mihi maledīxit."
15 Saepe locus et tempus timidōs hominēs audācīs reddit.[7]

459. THE SENSIBLE GOAT

Lupus capram in altā rūpe stantem cōnspicātus,[8] "Cūr nōn," inquit, "relinquis nūda illa et sterilia loca et hūc dēscendis in herbidōs campōs, quī tibi laetum pābulum offerunt?" Cui respondit capra: "Mihi[9] nōn est in animo[9] dulcia[10] tūtīs[11]
20 praepōnere."

[1] From tollō. [2] Genitive of hospitium. [3] *very little was off but that they should be drowned = they came very near being drowned.* [4] See 482. [5] lupō praetereuntī maledīxit, *to a wolf passing by said ill = reviled a wolf who was passing by;* see 485. [6] See 354. [7] *make;* the singular is used in Latin because locus et tempus are thought of as one thing. [8] Equivalent to vidēns; see p. 184, l. 21, and note. [9] *to me it is not in mind = I have no intention.* [10] dulcia tūtīs praepōnere, *to put sweet things before safe things = to prefer what is pleasant to what is safe.* [11] See 347.

460. THE DOG IN THE MANGER

Canis iacēbat[1] in praesaepī bovēsque lātrandō[2] ā pābulō arcēbat.[1] Cui ūnus boum,[3] "Quanta ista,"[4] inquit, "invidia est, quod[5] nōn pateris[6] ut eō cibō[7] vescāmur quem tū ipse capere nec velīs[8] nec possīs!"

Haec fābula invidiae indolem dēclārat.

461. THE GOLDEN EGG

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae eī cotīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit illam[9] aurī massam intus cēlāre et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit,[10] nisi quod in aliīs gallīnīs reperīrī solet. Itaque dum[11] māiōribus dīvitiīs[12] inhiat, etiam minōrēs[13] perdidit.

462. UNION IS STRENGTH

Agricola senex,[14] cum mortem sibi[15] adpropinquāre sentīret, fīliōs convocāvit, quos interdum discordāre nōverat,[16] et fascem virgulārum adferrī iubet. Quibus[17] adlātīs, fīliōs hortātur ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod cum facere nōn possent, distribuit singulās virgās; iīsque celeriter frāctīs,[18] docuit fīliōs, quam firma rēs esset[19] concordia quamque imbēcillis discordia.

[1] Why the imperfect rather than the perfect? See 132, *b*. [2] Gerund; see 365 and 367, 3. [3] See 482. [4] See 331, *b*. [5] *in that* (*because*). [6] From **patior**. [7] See 388. [8] See 505. [9] **illam** = **illam gallīnam**, subject accusative of **cēlāre**, *it to conceal* = *that it concealed*. [10] From **reperiō**. [11] **dum . . . inhiat**, *while she was desiring*. [12] See 393. [13] Supply the Latin noun in the right form from the preceding clause. [14] See 482. [15] May be left untranslated. [16] From **nōscō**. [17] **quibus adlātīs**, *when these had been brought*. [18] From **frangō**. [19] *is*, not *was*; the imperfect is required because of the perfect **docuit**; see 297 and p. 177, l. 5, and note.

463. KING LOG AND KING SNAKE

Rānae aliquandō rēgem sibi ā Iove petiisse dīcuntur. Quārum[1] ille precibus exōrātus trabem ingentem in lacum deiēcit. Rānae sonitū perterritae prīmum refūgēre,[2] deinde vērō trabem in aquā nātantem cōnspicātae[3] māgnō cum contemptū in eā cōnsēdērunt[4] aliumque[5] sibi novīs clāmoribus rēgem expetīvērunt. Tum Iuppiter, eārum[6] stultitiam ut pūnīret, hydrum illīs mīsit, ā[7] quō cum plūrimae captae[8] perīrent, sērō eās[9] stolidārum precum paenituit.

464. THE WOLF AND THE LAMB

Lupus et āgnus sitientes ad eundem rīvum vēnerant. Superior[10] lupus, longē īnferior[10] āgnus stābat. Tunc improbus latrō iūrgī causam quaerēns: "Cur," inquit, "bibenti[11] mihi turbulentam reddidistī aquam?" Āgnus timēns: "Quōmodo possum?" inquit, "ā tē enim aqua ad mē dēcurrit." Ille vēritāte rei repulsus[12]: "Hūius[13] annī initiō mihi[14] maledīxistī." "Tum," inquit āgnus, "equidem nātus[15] nondum eram." "Herclē etiam," respondet lupus, "pater tuus contumēliōsē quondam dīxit de aviā meā." Atque ita agnum dilaniat.

465. THE LION'S SHARE

Societātem iunxerant leo, iuvenca, capra, ovis. Praedā[16] autem quam cēperant in quattuor partis dīvīsā, leo, "Prima"

[1] quārum (rānārum) precibus, *by the prayers of these = by their prayers.* [2] For the more common **refūgērunt.** [3] See p. 184, l. 21, and note. [4] From **cōnsīdō.** [5] With **rēgem**; remember that an adjective is often separated from its noun by one or more words. [6] Order — **ut eārum stultitiam.** [7] **ā quō cum**, *and when by him.* [8] **captae perīrent**: see 353, 6. [9] **eās . . . paenituit**, *it repented them = they repented.* [10] See 489. [11] Present participle, from **bibō.** [12] From **repellō.** [13] **hūius annī initiō = initiō hūius annī.** [14] **mihi maledīxistī**: see p. 186, l. 13, and note 4. [15] From **nāscor.** [16] **praedā**: with **dīvīsā**, from **dīvidō**; see 358.

ait, "Mea est; dēbētur enim haec praestantiae meae. Tollam et[1] secundam, quam merētur rōbur meum. Tertiam vindicat sibi ēgregius labor meus. Quartam[2] quī sibi adrogāre voluerit, is[3] sciat sē[4] habitūrum mē inimīcum sibi." Quid facerent[5] imbēcillēs bēstiae? aut quae[6] sibi leōnem īnfēstum habēre vellet?

466. BELLING THE CAT

Mūrēs aliquandō habuērunt cōnsilium, quō modō ā fēle cavērent. Multīs[7] aliīs prōpositīs, omnibus[8] placuit, ut eī tintinnābulum adnecterētur; sīc enim ipsōs[9] sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse. Sed cum iam inter mūrīs quaererētur[10] quī fēlī tintinnābulum adnecteret, nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet, in suādendō[11] plūrimōs[12] esse audācīs, sed in ipsō perīculō timidōs.

467. THE DEER AND THE VINE

Ōlim cerva, quae celerrimē fugiēbat ut vēnātōrum ē manibus sē ēriperet, sub vītem sē condidit. Intereā vēnātōrēs sequentēs longius[13] prōgrediuntur. Cerva autem nōn[14] iam timēns vēnātōrēs incipiēbat folia vītis carpere. Folia agitantur, quod vident vēnātōrēs et statim revertuntur. Mox sentiunt ibi bēstiam aliquam sub foliīs latēre et sagittīs cervam volnerant. Brevī tempore misera bēstia volneribus[15] moritur,

[1] *also.* [2] Order — **is quī voluerit adrogāre quartam sibi sciat.** [3] **is sciat**, *let him know;* see 339, *a.* [4] **sē habitūrum**: supply **esse**; *himself to be about to have = that he will have.* [5] *could do.* [6] Supply **bēstia.** [7] **multīs aliīs prōpositīs**, *after many other proposals had been made.* What literally? [8] **omnibus placuit**, *all resolved.* What literally? [9] The subject accusative of **posse.** The accusative and infinitive are used as if **putāvērunt** preceded. [10] *the question was raised:* see 418. What literally? [11] Gerund; see 365. [12] **plūrimōs esse**: do not translate *many to be*, but *that many are.* [13] *too far;* see 255, *a.* [14] **nōn iam**: see 327. [15] *of wounds;* see 165.

sed moriēns dīcit: "Iūstās dō poenās, nam huic vītī, quae mē tegēbat, nocēre[1] nōn dēbuī."

STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

468. THE BRAVE DEED OF HORATIUS COCLES (B.C. 508?)

Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum,[2] ad[3] restituendōs Tarquiniōs cum īnfēstō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. Prīmō impetū Ianiculum cēpit. Nōn umquam aliās[4] ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāsit; ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant; urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiīs. Alia[5] urbis pars mūrīs,[6] alia Tiberī obiectō[7] tūta vidēbātur. Pōns Sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit,[8] nisi ūnus vir fuisset, Horātius Cocles, illō cōgnōmine appellātus, quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmīserat.[9] Is, extrēmā pontis parte occupātā,[10] aciem hostium sōlus sustinuit, dōnec pōns ā tergō interrumperētur.[11] Ipsa audācia obstupefēcit hostīs; ponte rescissō[12] armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit et multīs[13] superincidentibus tēlīs incolumis ad suōs trānāvit. Grāta tantā virtūte cīvitās fuit; Horātiō tantum agrī pūblicē datum est, quantum unō diē circumarāre potuit. Statua quoque eī in Comitiō posita.[14]

469. THE FORTITUDE OF MUCIUS

Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius, vir Rōmānae cōnstantiae, senātum adiit et veniam[15] trānsfugiendī petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte, in castra Porsenae vēnit. Ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope rēgium tribūnal

[1] nocēre nōn dēbuī, *I ought not to have injured.* [2] Look on a classical map of Italy for the country of Etruria (modern Tuscany) north of Rome. [3] See 429. [4] Adverb. [5] alia . . . alia: see 313. [6] With tūta; *by reason of its walls.* [7] *by the interposed Tiber = by the Tiber's being between.* [8] For dedisset, *would have allowed a passage* (iter). [9] From āmittō. [10] That is, by Cocles. [11] That is, by the Romans. [12] From rescindō. [13] *though many*, etc. [14] Supply est. [15] veniam trānsfugiendī, *favor of deserting = permission to desert.*

cōnstitit. Stīpendium tunc forte mīlitibus dabātur et scrība cum rēge parī[1] ferē ōrnātū sedēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, illum prō rēge occīdit. Adprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus[2] dextram accēnsō[3] ad sacrificium foculō[4] iniēcit, velut manum pūniēns quod in caede peccāsset.[5] Attonitus mīrāculō rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, ait trecentōs[6] suī similīs[7] adversus eum coniūrāsse. Quā rē ille territus bellum acceptīs obsidibus dēposuit.

470. CLOELIA, THE HOSTAGE, ESCAPES

Porsena Cloeliam, virginem nōbilem, inter obsidēs accēpit. Cum[8] ēius castra haud procul ab rīpā Tiberis locāta essent, Cloelia dēceptīs custōdibus noctū castrīs ēgressa,[9] equō, quem fors dederat, adreptō[10] Tiberim trāiēcit. Quod[11] ubi rēgī nūntiātum est, prīmō ille incēnsus īrā Rōmam lēgātōs mīsit ad[12] Cloeliam obsidem repōscendam. Rōmānī eam ex foedere restituērunt. Tum rēx virginis virtūtem admīrātus[13] eam laudāvit āc parte obsidum dōnātūrum[14] sē dīxit, permīsitque ut ipsa quōs vellet legeret. Prōductīs obsidibus Cloelia virginēs puerōsque ēlēgit, quōrum aetātem iniūriae obnoxiam sciēbat et cum iis in patriam rediit.[15] Rōmānī novam[16] in fēminā virtūtem[16] novō genere honōris, statuā equestrī, dōnāvēre.[17] In summā[18] Viā Sacrā[19] fuit posita virgō īnsīdēns equō.

[1] **parī . . . ōrnātū**: with **scrība**; see 307. [2] From **pertrahō**. [3] From **accéndō**: order — **foculō accēnsō ad sacrificium**. [4] See 347. [5] Full form **peccāvisset**. [6] Subject accusative of **coniūrāsse**. [7] **suī**: the dative might have been expected after **similīs**. [8] *since*. [9] From **ēgredior**, active in meaning; see 386, *b*. [10] **equō . . . adreptō**, *seizing a horse*; **adreptō** from **adripiō**. [11] **quod ubi**: translate as if **ubi quod**, *and when . . . this*. [12] **ad . . . repōscendam**: might have been **ut . . . repōsceret**; see 429. [13] See note 9 on **ēgressa**. [14] **dōnātūrum sē** = **sē dōnātūrum esse**, *that he would give*. [15] From **redeō**. [16] See p. 188, l. 5, and note 5. [17] For the more common **dōnāvērunt**, *rewarded . . . with*; it takes the accusative, **virtūtem**, and the ablative, **genere**. [18] From **superus** (489), *highest part of*. [19] **Viā Sacrā**: a street running through the Forum up to the Capitol.

471. CAIUS MARCIUS CORIOLANUS (B.C. 493–488?)

C. Mārcius gentis patriciae captīs[1] Coriolīs, urbe Volscōrum, Coriolānus dictus est. Puer patre[2] orbātus sub mātris tūtēlā adolēvit.[3] Cum prīma[4] stīpendia facere coepisset adulēscēns,[5] ē multīs proeliīs, quibus interfuit, numquam rediit nisi corōnā aliōve[6] mīlitārī praemiō donātus. In omnī vītae ratiōne nihil aliud sibi prōpōnēbat quam ut mātrī placēret; cumque illa audīret fīlium[7] laudārī aut corōnā donārī vidēret, tum dēmum fēlicem sē ipsa putābat. Cōnsul factus gravī[8] annōnā advectum[9] ē Siciliā frūmentum māgnō pretiō dandum populō cūrāvit, ut plēbs agrōs, nōn sēditiōnēs coleret. Quā dē causā damnātus ad Volscōs īnfēstōs tunc Rōmānīs cōnfūgit eōsque adversus Rōmānōs concitāvit. Imperātor ā Volscīs factus, castrīs ad quartum ab urbe lapidem positīs, agrum Rōmānum est populātus.

Missī sunt Rōmā ad Coriolānum ōrātōrēs dē pāce, sed atrōx respōnsum rettulērunt.[10] Iterum deinde idem missī nē[11] in castra quidem[11] recepti sunt. Sacerdōtēs quoque suīs īnfulīs vēlātī ad eum īvērunt supplicēs, nec magis[12] animum ēius flēxērunt.[13] Stupēbat senātus, trepidābat populus, virī pariter ac mulierēs exitium imminēns lāmentābantur. Tum Veturia, Coriolānī māter, et Volumnia uxor, duos parvōs fīliōs sēcum trahēns, castra hostium petiērunt. Ubi mātrem adspēxit Coriolānus: "O patria," inquit, "vīcistī īram meam admōtīs[14]

[1] captīs Coriolīs, *because of the capture of Corioli.* [2] See 231 and 232. [3] From adolēscō. [4] prīma . . . coepisset, *had begun to earn first wages* (as a soldier) = *had begun his first military service.* [5] *in his youth.* [6] aliōve = vel aliō. [7] Subject accusative of laudārī and dōnārī. [8] gravī annōnā, *in a time of extreme scarcity.* [9] Agrees with frūmentum, which is the subject accusative of dandum (esse). Translate *had* (cūrāvit) *corn, brought from Sicily, distributed to the people at a high price.* [10] From referō. [11] See p. 181, l. 21, and note. [12] nec magis, *but no more.* [13] From flectō. [14] admōtīs . . . precibus, *by employing the prayers.*

mātris meae precibus, cui[1] tuam in mē iniūriam condōnō." Complexus[2] inde suōs castra mōvit et exercitum ex agrō Rōmānō abdūxit. Coriolānus posteā ā Volscīs ut prōditor occīsus[3] dīcitur.

472. TITUS QUINCTIUS CINCINNATUS (B.C. 458)

I. Aequī[4] cōnsulem Minūcium atque exercitum ēius circumsessōs tenēbant. Id ubi Rōmae nūntiātum est, tantus[5] pavor, tanta trepidātiō fuit, quanta[5] sī urbem ipsam, nōn castra hostēs obsidērent: cum autem in alterō cōnsule parum esse praesidī[6] vidērētur, dictātōrem[7] dīcī placuit, quī[8] rem[9] adflictam restitueret. T. Quīnctius Cincinnātus omnium cōnsēnsū dictātor est dictus. Ille, spēs ūnica imperī Rōmānī, trāns Tiberim tunc quattuor iūgerum[10] colēbat agrum. Ad[11] quem missī lēgātī nūdum eum arantem offendērunt. Salūte[12] datā invicem redditāque Cincinnātus togam properē ē tuguriō prōferre uxōrem Raciliam iussit, ut senātūs mandāta togātus audīret.

II. Postquam, abstersō[13] pulvere āc sūdōre, togā indūtus prōcessit Cincinnātus, dictātōrem eum lēgātī grātulantēs cōnsalūtant; quantus terror in exercitū sit,[14] expōnunt. Cincinnātus igitur Rōmam vēnit et antecēdentibus līctōribus domum dēductus est. Posterō diē profectus, Minūciō obsi-

[1] *for whose sake.* [2] From **complector.** [3] Supply **esse.** [4] Look on a classical map for the country of the **Aequī**, a short distance east of Rome. [5] **tantus . . . quanta,** *so great . . . how great = as great as.* [6] Depends on **parum**; see 256 and 257. [7] **dictātōrem dīcī placuit,** *it pleased a dictator to be appointed = it was resolved that a dictator be appointed.* [8] **quī . . . restitueret**: see 419 and 420. [9] **rem adflictam,** *the suffering state.* [10] Depends on **agrum.** For the form **iūgerum,** see Vocabulary. [11] **ad . . . lēgātī,** *the messengers who were sent to him.* [12] **salūte . . . redditā,** *when they had exchanged greetings.* What literally? [13] From **abstergeō.** [14] See p. 177, l. 5, and note.

diōne līberātō, victōs[1] hostīs sub iugum[2] mīsit. Urbem triumphāns ingressus est. Ductī[3] ante currum ducēs hostium, mīlitāria sīgna praelāta[4]; secūtus est exercitus praedā onustus; epulae īnstrūctae sunt ante omnium domōs. Cincinnātus sextō decimō die[5] dictāturā,[6] quam in[7] sex mēnsīs accēperat, sē abdicāvit et ad bovēs rediit triumphālis agricola.

473. TITUS MANLIUS TORQUATUS (B.C. 361)

I. T. Mānlius ob ingenī et linguae tarditātem ā patre rūs[8] relēgātus erat. Quī cum audīvisset patrī[9] diem dictam esse ā Pompōniō, tribūnō plēbis, cēpit cōnsilium, rudis quidem et agrestis animī, sed pietāte[10] laudābile. Cultrō succinctus[11] māne in urbem atque ā portā cōnfestim ad Pompōnium pergit. Intrōductus cultrum stringit et super lectum Pompōnī stāns sē[12] eum trānsfixūrum minātur, nisi ab inceptā accūsātiōne dēsistat. Pavidus tribūnus, quippe[13] quī cerneret ferrum ante oculos micāre, accūsātiōnem dīmīsit. Ea rēs adulēscentī honōrī[14] fuit, quod acerbitās paterna animum ēius ā pietāte nōn āvertisset ideoque eodem annō tribūnus mīlitum factus est.

II. Cum posteā Gallī ad tertium lapidem trāns Aniēnem[15] fluvium castra posuissent,[16] exercitus Rōmānus ab urbe profectus est et in citeriōre ripā fluvī cōnstitit. Pōns in mediō erat; tunc Gallus eximiā corporis māgnitūdine,[17] in vacuum

[1] For translation, compare 353, 6. [2] The *yoke*, symbolical of servitude, consisted of two spears set upright and a third laid across them. [3] Supply **sunt**. [4] From **praeferō**; supply **sunt**. [5] *after sixteen days:* take with **abdicāvit**; see 187 and 188. [6] Depends on **abdicāvit**; see 232. [7] *for*. [8] See 196, 2, and 197, 2. [9] **patrī . . . esse**, *that a day had been appointed for his father's trial* (*for his father*), that is, for banishing his son. [10] *in point of filial affection:* see 374. [11] *girding himself*. [12] Subject accusative of **trānsfixūrum (esse)**, and refers to **Mānlius**, subject of **minātur**. [13] **quippe quī**, *since he*. [14] See 348, 2, and *a*. [15] The Anio empties into the Tiber three miles above Rome. [16] From **pōnō**. [17] Limits **Gallus**. See 306 and 307.

pontem prōcessit et quam[1] māximā vōce potuit,[1] "Quem[2] nunc," inquit, "Rōma fortissimum habet, is prōcēdat[2] ad pūgnam, ut ēventus certāminis nostrī ostendat, utra gēns bellō sit[3] melior." Diū inter prīmōrēs iuvenum Rōmānōrum silentium fuit. Tum Titus Mānlius ex statiōne ad imperātōrem pergit: "Iniūssū tuō," inquit, "imperātor, extrā ōrdinem numquam pūgnāverim,[4] nōn sī certam victōriam videam. Sī tū permittis, volō istī bēluae ostendere mē ex eā familiā ortum[5] esse, quae Gallōrum agmen ex rūpe Tarpēiā dēiēcit." Cui imperātor: "Mācte[6] virtūte," inquit, "Tite Mānlī, estō: perge et nōmen Rōmānum invictum praestā."

III. Armant deinde iuvenem aequālēs; scūtum capit, Hispānō cingitur[7] gladiō ad propiōrem pūgnam habilī. Exspectābat eum Gallus stolidē laetus et linguam ab inrīsū exserēns. Ubi cōnstitēre inter duās aciēs, Gallus ēnsem cum ingentī sonitū in arma Mānlī dēiēcit. Mānlius vērō īnsinuāvit sēsē inter corpus et arma Gallī atque ūnō et alterō ictū ventrem trānsfōdit; iacentī[8] torquem dētrāxit, quem cruōre respersum[9] collō circumdedit suō. Dēfīxerat pavor cum admīrātiōne Gallōs. Rōmānī alacrēs obviam mīlitī suō prōgrediuntur et grātulantēs laudantēsque ad imperātōrem perdūcunt. Mānlius inde Torquātī nōmen accēpit.

IV. Īdem Mānlius, posteā cōnsul factus, bellō Latīnō, ut disciplīnam mīlitārem restitueret, ēdīxit nē[10] quis extrā ōrdinem pūgnāret. Forte fīlius ēius accessit prope statiōnem hostium; is quī Latīnō equitātuī praeerat, ubi cōnsulis fīlium

[1] **quam . . . potuit**, *in the loudest voice possible.* What literally? [2] **quem . . . prōcēdat**: translate as if it stood: is **fortissimus prōcēdat quem Rōma habet**; on **prōcēdat**, see 340, *a* (1). [3] See **sit**, p. 193, l. 19, and note. [4] Translate as if it were **pūgnem**; see 404, 4, and 406. [5] From **orior**. [6] **mācte . . . estō**, *be honored on account of thy valor = good for your pluck!* [7] *girds himself.* Compare **succīnctus**, p. 194, l. 10, and note 11. [8] *from him as he was lying prostrate;* present participle, dative singular, from **iaciō**. [9] From **respergō**. [10] **nē quis**, *that no one:* after **sī, nisi, nē**, and **num**, forms of **quis** mean *any, any one, anything.*

āgnōvit,[1] "Vīsne," inquit, "congredī mēcum, ut singulāris certāminis ēventū cernātur, quantum eques Latīnus Rōmānō praestet?" Mōvit[2] ferōcem animum iuvenis seu īra seu dētrectandī[3] certāminis pudor. Oblītus[4] itaque imperī paternī in certāmen ruit et Latīnum ex equō excussum[5] trānsfīxit, spoliīsque lēctīs,[6] in castra ad patrem vēnit. Extemplō fīlium āversātus cōnsul mīlitēs classicō advocat; quī[7] postquam frequentēs[8] convēnēre: "Quandoquidem," inquit, "tū, fīlī, contrā imperium cōnsulis pūgnāstī, oportet[9] disciplīnam poenā tuā restituās. Trīste exemplum sed in[10] posterum salubre iuventūtī eris. I,[11] lictor, deligā ad pālum." Metū omnēs obstupuēre; sed postquam, cervīce caesā, fusus est cruor, in questūs et lāmenta ērūpere. Manlio[12] Rōmam redeuntī seniōrēs tantum[13] obviam exiērunt; iuventus et tunc eum et omnī deinde vītā exsecrāta est.

474. MARCUS VALERIUS CORVUS (B.C. 349)

Bellō Gallicō cum Rōmānī in statiōnibus quiētī[14] tempus tererent,[15] Gallus quīdam māgnitūdine[16] atque armīs insignis ante alios processit quatiēnsque scutum hastā, cum silentium fecisset, unum ē Rōmānīs per interpretem prōvocāvit, quī[17] sēcum ferrō dēcerneret. Erat Mārcus Valerius tribūnus mīlitum, adulēscens, quī prius scīscitatus consulis voluntātem in medium armātus processit. Tunc rēs vīsū[18] mīrābilis accidisse fertur; nam cum iam manum consereret Valerius, repente in galeā ēius corvus consēdit in hostem versus. Āles non

[1] From āgnōscō. [2] The subjects are īra and pudor. [3] Compare 362, 2. [4] From oblīvīscor. [5] excussum transfīxit: translate by two verbs; compare 353, 6. [6] From legō. [7] quī postquam, *and after they.* [8] *in great numbers.* [9] oportet . . . restituās = oportet ut restituās. [10] in posterum, *for the future.* [11] See 507. [12] Depends on obviam. [13] Adverb, *only.* [14] An adjective used adverbially. [15] Do not confound with terrērent. [16] Ablative of cause with īnsīgnis; see 164 and 165. [17] Compare p. 193, note 8. [18] See 372, 2, and 374.

sōlum captam[1] semel sēdem tenuit, sed quotiēscumque certāmen initum est, levāns sē ālīs ōs oculōsque Gallī rōstrō et unguibus adpetiit. Hostem territum tālis prōdigī visū oculīsque simul āc mente turbātum Valerius obtruncat. Corvus ē cōnspectū ēlātus[2] orientem petit. Inde Valerius Corvus dictus est.

475. PYRRHUS MAKES WAR ON THE ROMANS (B.C. 280–275)

I. Tarentīnīs[3] quod Rōmānōrum lēgātīs iniūriam fēcissent bellum indictum est. Quibus auxiliō[4] vēnit Pyrrhus, Ēpīrī[5] rēx, quī genus ab Achille dūcēbat. Contrā Pyrrhum missus est cōnsul Laevīnus, quī, cum explōrātōrēs rēgis cēpisset, iussit eōs per castra Rōmāna circumdūcī tumque incolumīs dīmittī, ut ea quae vīdissent Pyrrhō renūntiārent. Mox commissā pūgnā, cum[6] iam hostēs pedem referrent, rēx elephantōs in Rōmānōrum agmen agī iussit; quō factō mūtāta est proelī fortūna. Rōmānōs vāstōrum[7] corporum mōlēs terribilisque[8] superadstantium armātōrum speciēs[8] turbāvit. Equī etiam, cōnspectū et odōre bēluārum exterritī, sessōrēs vel excutiēbant vel sēcum in fugam abripiēbant. Nox proeliō fīnem fēcit.

II. Pyrrhus captīvōs Rōmānōs summō in honōre habuit; occīsōs sepelīvit. Quōs[9] cum adversō volnere[10] et trucī voltū etiam mortuōs iacēre vīdisset, manus ad caelum sustulisse dīcitur cum hāc vōce: "Ego tālibus virīs[11] brevī[12] orbem

[1] **captam . . . tenuit**, *kept his perch, when he had once lighted on it.* What literally? [2] *flying away;* from **efferō**. [3] Find Tarentum on the coast of southeastern Italy. [4] See 348 and compare **adulēscentī honōrī**, p. 194, l. 16. [5] Find Epirus in northwestern Greece. [6] **cum iam**, *when at last.* [7] **vāstōrum . . . mōlēs**, *the mass of their vast bodies = their enormous size.* [8] See p. 188, l. 5, and note 5. [9] Subject accusative of **iacēre**; see also p. 178, l. 18, and note. [10] *wounds*, used collectively; so **voltū**. [11] Ablative of means with **subēgissem**, best translated *with.* [12] **brevī = brevī tempore**.

terrārum subēgissem." Deinde ad urbem Rōmam māgnīs itineribus contendit; omnia ferrō ignique vāstāvit; ad vicēsimum ab urbe lapidem castra posuit. Pyrrhō[1] obviam vēnit Laevīnus cum novō exercitū; quō[2] vīsō rēx ait sibi[3] eandem[4] adversus Rōmānōs esse fortūnam, quam[4] Herculī adversus hydram, cui tot[5] capita renāscēbantur, quot[5] praecīsa erant. Deinde in Campāniam sē recēpit; missōs[6] ā senātū dē redimendīs[7] captīvīs lēgātōs honorificē excēpit; captīvōs sine pretiō reddidit, ut Rōmānī, cognitā iam ēius virtūte, cognōscerent etiam līberālitātem.

III. Erat Pyrrhus mītī āc placābilī animō; solet enim māgnī animī comes esse clēmentia.[8] Eius hūmānitātem expertī sunt Tarentīnī. Quī cum sērō intellēxissent sē prō sociō dominum accēpisse, sortem suam līberīs vōcibus querēbantur, idque aliquantō liberius[9] ubi vīnō incaluerant. Itaque arcessītī ad rēgem sunt nōnnūllī, quod[10] inter convīvium parum honorificē dē rēge locutī essent; sed perīculum simplex cōnfessiō culpae discussit. Nam cum rēx percontātus esset num[11] ea quae ad aurīs suās pervēnerant dixissent, "Et[12] haec dīximus," inquiunt, "rēx! et nisi vīnum dēfēcisset, multō plūra et graviōra dicturī[13] fuimus." Pyrrhus, quī mālēbat vīnī[14] quam hominum eam culpam vidērī, subrīdēns eōs dīmīsit.

[1] **Pyrrhō obviam**: compare **Manliō . . . obviam**, p. 196, l. 13. [2] **quō vīsō rēx**, *and when the king saw this.* [3] With **esse**; see 115. [4] **eandem . . . quam**: see 332. [5] **tot . . . quot**, *so many . . . how many = as many . . . as.* Compare p. 193, l. 6, and note. [6] **missōs . . . lēgātōs**, *the ambassadors who were sent.* [7] Compare 364, I. 8. [8] Subject of **solet**. [9] See 255, *a*. [10] *because.* [11] See 298. [12] **et . . . et**: see 155. [13] **dictūrī fuimus**, *we should have said.* [14] *that it should seem the fault of the wine rather than of the men.*

CAESAR: GALLIC WAR, II, 29–33 (*Adapted*)

476. THE STORY OF THE ADUATUCI (B.C. 57)

The Aduatuci prepare to make a desperate resistance

I. Aduātucī,[1] quī cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō[2] Nerviīs veniēbant, hāc pūgnā[3] nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod[4] ex[5] omnibus in circuitū partibus[5] altissimās rūpīs dēspectūsque habēbat, sed ūnā ex[6] parte lēniter adclīvis aditus relinquēbātur; quem[7] locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant et māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabīs in mūrō conlocābant.

From their walls they taunt the Romans

II. Āc prīmō[8] adventū exercitūs nostrī[8] crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā, vāllō pedum duodecim[9] in circuitū quīndecim mīlium[10] crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī, oppidō[11] sēsē continēbant. Ubi, vīneīs[12] āctīs aggere exstrūctō,

[1] Look on a map of Gaul in the northeastern part, about the river Mosa (now Meuse), in what is now Belgium. [2] *for an aid = to aid;* see 348 and 349. [3] The reference is to a battle in which the Nervii had been almost annihilated. [4] *this town.* [5] **ex . . . partibus,** *from all parts in a circuit = on all sides round about,* or simply *all around.* On the separation of **omnibus** from **partibus,** see p. 188, l. 5, note 5. [6] *on,* as in line 4. [7] Do not translate *which place,* but *this place.* [8] **prīmō . . . nostrī**: *as soon as our army got there.* What literally? [9] That is, in height. [10] Supply **pedum.** [11] **oppidō** = **in oppidō.** [12] **vīneīs āctīs** (**āctīs** from **agō**): *that the vineae had been got ready.* These *vineae* were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were working to undermine a wall or fill up a ditch in front of fortifications. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers. See p. 155.

turrim[1] procul cōnstituī[2] vīdērunt, prīmum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre[3] vocibus coepērunt, quod tanta māchinātiō ab[4] tantō spatiō instruerētur: quibusnam[5] manibus aut quibus vīribus[6] praesertim hominēs tantulae staturae[7] turrim tantī oneris[8] in mūrō[9] sēsē conlocāre cōnfīderent?

But soon they lose confidence and offer to surrender

III. Ubi vērō turrim movērī[10] et adpropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque inusitātā speciē commōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī[11] sunt: Aduātucī non existimant Rōmānōs sine ope dīvinā bellum gerere, quī[12] tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possint[12]; itaque sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittunt. Unum[13] petunt: sī forte Caesar prō suā[14] clēmentiā āc mānsuetudine statuerit[15] Aduātucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē[16] eōs armīs dēspoliet. Omnēs fere fīnitimī sunt inimīcī āc suae virtutī invident, ā quibus sē defendere trāditīs[17] armīs nōn poterunt. Sibi[18] praestet, sī in eum[19] cāsum dēdūcantur,[20] quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab inimīcīs per cruciātum interficī.

[1] See 479, *c*. [2] Passive infinitive present: *was being raised*. [3] **increpitāre vōcibus**, *taunt*. What literally? [4] **ab tantō spatiō**, *so far away*. [5] *with what hands, pray?* nam is added for emphasis, to point their sarcasm. [6] Not from **vir**. [7] To the taller Belgians the Romans looked like "little chaps." [8] Compare for meaning **ponderis**, p. 199, l. 8. [9] The Aduatuci, unacquainted with Roman siege operations, supposed they intended to hoist the tower upon their wall. [10] *to be moved* = *was moving*. [11] From **loquor**. [12] *since . . . they can*. [13] *one thing*, namely **nē . . . dēspoliet**, two lines below. [14] *his usual*. [15] Future perfect, *shall have decided*; but better translated *shall decide* or *decides*. [16] **nē . . . dēspoliet**, *that he* (*Caesar*) *would not deprive them of their arms*. [17] **trāditīs armīs**, *if they should deliver up their arms*; see 357, *a*. [18] **sibi praestet**, *it would be better for them*; **praestet** is used impersonally, the real subject being **patī** in the next line. [19] **eum cāsum**, *such a condition*. [20] **praestet, sī . . . dēdūcantur**: a conditional sentence of the second form; see 404, 4, and 406.

They must disarm, but are promised protection

IV. Ad haec Caesar respondit: "Magis cōnsuētūdine[1] meā quam meritō vestrō cīvitātem cōnservābō, sī prius quam mūrum ariēs[2] attigerit,[3] vōs dēdideritis: sed dēditiōnis nūlla est condiciō nisi[4] armīs trāditīs. Id quod in[5] Nerviīs fēcī faciam fīnitimīsque imperābō nē quam[6] iniūriam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī īnferant." Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere[7] dīxērunt. Armōrum tanta multitūdō dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta est, ut prope summam[8] mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem[9] acervī eōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter pars tertia, ut posteā perspectum[9] est, cēlāta[10] atque in oppidō retenta est. Deinde portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce[11] sunt ūsī oppidānī.

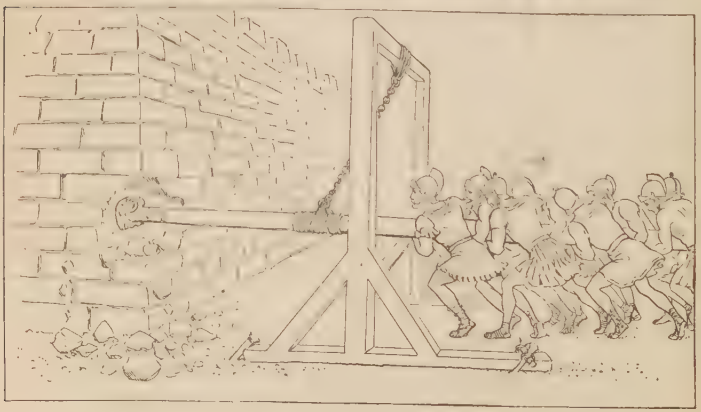
A brave dash for freedom, but a terrible fate

V. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit. Oppidānī cōnsiliō[12] ante initō, ut intellēctum[13] est, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs[14] praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique[15] indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, tertiā[16] vigiliā, quā[17] minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur,

[1] *according to my custom.* [2] A long, strong beam of wood, furnished with an iron head in the form of a ram's head. It was suspended from a framework by a strong chain or ropes, and worked by men, to make a breach in a wall. See illustration, p. 202. [3] Translate this and the following future perfect by the present; see p. 200, l. 13, and note. [4] **nisi armīs trāditīs.** Compare p. 200, l. 15, and note. [5] *in the case of;* a common meaning of in with nouns in the ablative denoting persons. [6] See p. 195, l. 24, and note. [7] One would expect **sē factūrōs esse**, and it may be so translated. [8] **summam . . . altitūdinem**, *top.* [9] See 418, *b.* [10] Supply est. [11] **pāce sunt ūsī**: not *used (enjoyed) peace*, but *kept quiet.* [12] **cōnsiliō initō**, *forming a plan;* **initō** from **ineō.** [13] See note 9. [14] *our commanders;* subject accusative of **dēductūrōs (esse)** and **servātūrōs (esse).** [15] *at any rate.* [16] **tertiā vigiliā**: the Romans divided the night into four watches of about three hours each. [17] *where.*

omnibus cōpiis repentinō ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat,[1] ignibus[2] sīgnificātiōne factā, ex proximis castellīs eō concursum[3] est. Ibi pūgnātum[3] est ācriter ab hostibus in[4] extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs quī ex vāllō[5] turribusque tēla iacerent, cum[6] in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad[7] hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Postrīdiē[8] ēius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum[9] iam dēfenderet nēmō,[10] atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem[11] ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iīs quī ēmerant capitum[12] numerus ad eum relātus[13] est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

[1] For **imperāverat**, see p. 191, l. 5, note. [2] *by fire signals.* [3] Compare **intellēctum est**, p. 201, l. 14, and note 13. [4] **in . . . salūtis**, *as their last chance of saving themselves.* What literally? [5] *their* (the Romans') *redoubt.* [6] **cum . . . virtūte**, *since in valor alone.* [7] *about*, adverb. [8] **postrīdiē ēius diēī**, *on the following day.* What literally? [9] *since.* [10] Emphatic from its position. Compare "silver and gold have I none." [11] The "booty" included all the inhabitants. [12] We say so many "head" of cattle. [13] From **referō**; *was reported to be 53,000.* These 53,000 captives were probably driven in chain gangs to the Province or to Italy and sold in lots to suit purchasers, there to wear out their lives in bondage.



Battering Ram

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

477. FIRST DECLENSION — A-Stems

	Singular	Terminations	Plural	Terminations
Nom.	hasta	-a	hastae	-ae
Gen.	hastae	-ae	hastārum	-ārum
Dat.	hastae	-ae	hastīs	-īs
Acc.	hastam	-am	hastās	-ās
Abl.	hastā	-ā	hastīs	-īs

478. SECOND DECLENSION — O-Stems

	Singular	Terminations Masc.	Plural	Terminations Masc.
Nom.	hortus	-us	hortī	-ī
Gen.	hortī	-ī	hortōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	hortō	-ō	hortīs	-īs
Acc.	hortum	-um	hortōs	-ōs
Abl.	hortō	-ō	hortīs	-īs

	Singular	Terminations	Plural	Terminations
		Neut.		Neut.
Nom.	dōnum	-um	dōna	-a
Gen.	dōnī	-ī	dōnōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	dōnō	-ō	dōnīs	-īs
Acc.	dōnum	-um	dōna	-a
Abl.	dōnō	-ō	dōnīs	-īs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in -us of the second declension has a special form in **-e**: **horte**.

	Singular			
Nom.	puer	ager	vir	fīlius
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	fīlī, -iī
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō	fīliō
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	fīlium
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō	fīliō
	Plural			
Nom.	puerī	agrī	virī	fīliī
Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	fīliōrum
Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	fīliīs
Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	fīliōs
Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	fīliīs

a. The vocative singular of fīlius is fīlī.

479. THIRD DECLENSION

a. Mute Stems

	Singular				Terminations	
					M. & F.	N.
Nom.	rēx	mīles	virtūs	caput	-s or —	—
Gen.	rēgis	mīlitis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
Dat.	rēgī	mīlitī	virtūtī	capitī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	rēgem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput	-em	—
Abl.	rēge	mīlite	virtūte	capite	-e	-e

			PLURAL		TERMINATIONS M. & F.	N.
Nom.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Gen.	rēgum	mīlitum	virtūtum	capitum	-um	-um
Dat.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Abl.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

b. Liquid Stems

	SINGULAR			
Nom.	pater	homō	volnus	corpus
Gen.	patris	hominis	volneris	corporis
Dat.	patrī	hominī	volnerī	corporī
Acc.	patrem	hominem	volnus	corpus
Abl.	patre	homine	volnere	corpore
	PLURAL			
Nom.	patrēs	hominēs	volnera	corpora
Gen.	patrum	hominum	volnerum	corporum
Dat.	patribus	hominibus	volneribus	corporibus
Acc.	patrēs	hominēs	volnera	corpora
Abl.	patribus	hominibus	volneribus	corporibus

c. I-Stems

	SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS M. & F.	N.
Nom.	hostis	nūbēs	urbs	animal	-s	—
Gen.	hostis	nūbis	urbis	animālis	-is	-is
Dat.	hostī	nūbī	urbī	animālī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	hostem	nūbem	urbem	animal	-em	—
Abl.	hoste	nūbe	urbe	animālī	-e	-ī
	PLURAL					
Nom.	hostēs	nūbēs	urbēs	animālia	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	hostium	nūbium	urbium	animālium	-ium	-ium
Dat.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	animālia	-īs, -ēs	-ia
Abl.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	īgnis	īgnēs	turris	turrēs
Gen.	īgnis	īgnium	turris	turrium
Dat.	īgnī	īgnibus	turrī	turribus
Acc.	īgnem	īgnīs, -ēs	turrim, -em	turrīs, -ēs
Abl.	īgnī, -e	īgnibus	turrī, -e	turribus

480. FOURTH DECLENSION — U-Stems

Singular

	Terminations Masc.			Terminations Neut
Nom.	gradus	-us	cornū	-ū
Gen.	gradūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
Dat.	graduī (-ū)	-uī (-ū)	cornū	-ū
Acc.	gradum	-um	cornū	-ū
Abl.	gradū	-ū	cornū	-ū

Plural

Nom.	gradūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
Gen.	graduum	-uum	cornuum	-uum
Dat.	gradibus	-ibus (-ubus)	cornibus	-ibus (-ubus)
Acc.	gradūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
Abl.	gradibus	-ibus (-ubus)	cornibus	-ibus (-ubus)

481. FIFTH DECLENSION — E-Stems

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Terminations Sing.	Terminations Plur.
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ĕī	-ērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ĕī	-ēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

482. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

Singular

Nom.	deus	domus	senex	vīs
Gen.	deī	domūs, -ī	senis	vīs [1]
Dat.	deō	domuī, -ō	senī	vī [1]
Acc.	deum	domum	senem	vim
Abl.	deō	domō, -ū	sene	vī

Plural

Nom.	deī, diī, dī	domūs	senēs	vīrēs
Gen.	deōrum, deūm	domuum, -ōrum	senum	vīrium
Dat.	deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus	senibus	vīribus
Acc.	deōs	domōs, -ūs	senēs	vīrīs, -ēs
Abl.	deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus	senibus	vīribus

Singular

Nom.	iter	bōs	mare	Iuppiter
Gen.	itineris	bovis	maris	Iovis
Dat.	itinerī	bovī	marī	Iovī
Acc.	iter	bovem	mare	Iovem
Abl.	itinere	bove	marī	Iove

Plural

Nom.	itinera	bovēs	maria
Gen.	itinerum	bovum, boum	——
Dat.	itineribus	bōbus, būbus	maribus
Acc.	itinera	bovēs	maria
Abl.	itineribus	bōbus, būbus	maribus

[1] The genitive and dative singular are rare.

ADJECTIVES

483. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō

PLURAL

Nom.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

	Singular		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	piger	pigra	pigrum
Gen.	pigrī	pigrae	pigrī
Dat.	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō
Acc.	pigrum	pigram	pigrum
Abl.	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō
	Plural		
Nom.	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
Gen.	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
Dat.	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
Acc.	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
Abl.	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

484. THIRD DECLENSION

	Singular		Singular	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	audāx	audāx	brevis	breve
Gen.	audācis	audācis	brevis	brevis
Dat.	audācī	audācī	brevī	brevī
Acc.	audācem	audāx	brevem	breve
Abl.	audācī, -e	audācī, -e	brevī	brevī
	Plural		**Plural**	
Nom.	audācēs	audācia	brevēs	brevia
Gen.	audācium	audācium	brevium	brevium
Dat.	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus
Acc.	audācīs, -ēs	audācia	brevīs, -ēs	brevia
Abl.	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

485. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
Gen.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
Dat.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
Acc.	amantem	amāns	amantīs, -ēs	amantia
Abl.	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus
Nom.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
Gen.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
Dat.	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
Acc.	euntem	iēns	euntīs, -ēs	euntia
Abl.	eunte, -ī	eunte, -ī	euntibus	euntibus

486. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trīs, trēs	tria
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

487. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus (alto-)	altior, altius	altissimus, -a, -um
brevis (brevi-)	brevior, brevius	brevissimus, -a, -um
audāx (audāci-)	audācior, audācius	audācissimus, -a, -um
miser (misero-)	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
ācer (ācri-)	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

488. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

489. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um / multī, -ae, -a	——, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senex, senis	senior	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
facilis, -e	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, *outward*	exterior, *outer, exterior*	extrēmus, extimus } *outermost, last*
īnferus, *below*	īnferior, *lower*	īnfimus, īmus } *lowest*
posterus, *following*	posterior, *later*	postrēmus, postumus } *last*
superus, *above*	superior, *higher*	suprēmus, summus } *highest*
[cis, citrā, *on this side*]	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
[in, intrā, *in, within*]	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
[prae, prō, *before*]	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*
[prope, *near*]	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *next*
[ultrā, *beyond*]	ulterior, *further*	ultimus, *furthest*

490. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
cārē (cārus)	cārius	cārissimē
miserē (miser)	miserius	miserrimē
ācriter (ācer)	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē
male (malus)	pēius	pessimē
multum (multus)	plūs	plūrimum
parum, *little*	minus	minimē
diū, *long, a long time*	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, *often*	saepius	saepissimē

491. NUMERALS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2.	duo, duae, duo	secundus (*or* alter)
3.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	quattuor	quārtus
5.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	sex	sextus
7.	septem	septimus
8.	octō	octāvus
9.	novem	nōnus
10.	decem	decimus
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	sēdecim *or* sexdecim	sextus decimus
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus
22.	vīgintī duo *or* duo et vīgintī	vīcēsimus secundus *or* alter et vīcēsimus
28.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
29.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus

	Cardinals	Ordinals
100.	centum	centēsimus
101.	centum ūnus *or* centum et ūnus	centēsimus prīmus *or* centēsimus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300.	trecentī	trecentēsimus
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
600.	sēscentī *or* sexcentī	sēscentēsimus
700.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
800.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1000.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
2000.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus
100,000.	centum mīlia	centiēs mīllēsimus

PRONOUNS

492. PERSONAL

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	——	——
Gen.	meī	nostrūm, -trī	tuī	vestrūm, -trī	suī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

493. DEMONSTRATIVE

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs
Nom.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs
Nom.	īdem	e′adem	idem	iīdem eīdem	eaedem	e′adem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	cārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	e′adem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

494. RELATIVE

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

495. INTERROGATIVE

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

496. INDEFINITE

	Singular		
Nom.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
Gen.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

	Plural		
Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
Gen.	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

497. FIRST CONJUGATION — Ā-Verbs

amō, *love*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT			
I love, am loving, do love, etc.		*I am loved*, etc.	
amō	**amāmus**	**amor**	**amāmur**
amās	**amātis**	**amāris, -re**	**amāminī**
amat	**amant**	**amātur**	**amantur**
IMPERFECT			
I loved, was loving, did love, etc.		*I was loved*, etc.	
amābam	**amābāmus**	**amābar**	**amābāmur**
amābās	**amābātis**	**amābāris, -re**	**amābāminī**
amābat	**amābant**	**amābātur**	**amābantur**

Future

I shall love, etc.		*I shall be loved*, etc.	
amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis, -re	amābiminī
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur

Perfect

I have loved, loved, did love, etc.		*I have been (was) loved*, etc.			
amāvī	amāvimus	amātus	sum	amātī	sumus
amāvistī	amāvistis		es		estis
amāvit	amāvērunt, -re		est		sunt

Pluperfect

I had loved, etc.		*I had been loved*, etc.			
amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus	eram	amātī	erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis		erās		erātis
amāverat	amāverant		erat		erant

Future Perfect

I shall have loved, etc.		*I shall have been loved*, etc.			
amāverō	amāverimus	amātus	erō	amātī	erimus
amāveris	amāveritis		eris		eritis
amāverit	amāverint		erit		erunt

Subjunctive

Present

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, -re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

Imperfect

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, -re	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus	sim	amātī	sīmus
amāveris	amāveritis		sīs		sītis
amāverit	amāverint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus	essem	amātī	essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis		essēs		essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

amā, *love thou.*
amāte, *love ye.*
amāre, *be thou loved.*
amāminī, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE

amātō, *thou shalt love.*
amātō, *he shall love.*
amātōte, *you shall love.*
amantō, *they shall love.*
amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*
amātor, *he shall be loved.*
———
amantor, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE

PRES. amāre, *to love.* — amārī, *to be loved.*
PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved.* — amātus esse, *to have been loved.*
FUT. amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.* — [amātum īrī], *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.*
FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*
PERF. ———
PRES. ———
GER.[1] amandus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*
PERF. amātus, -a, -um, *having been loved, loved.*

[1] Gerundive, sometimes called *future passive participle.*

GERUND

Nom.	————
Gen.	amandī, *of loving.*
Dat.	amandō, *for loving.*
Acc.	amandum, *loving.*
Abl.	amandō, *by loving.*

SUPINE

Acc.	[amātum, *to love.*]
Abl.	[amātū, *to love, in the loving.*]

498. SECOND CONJUGATION — Ē-Verbs

moneō, *advise*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT			
I advise, etc.		*I am advised*, etc.	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris, -re	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur
IMPERFECT			
I was advising, etc.		*I was advised*, etc.	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, -re	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur
FUTURE			
I shall advise, etc.		*I shall be advised*, etc.	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, -re	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

499. THIRD CONJUGATION — Ĕ-Verbs

regō, *rule*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT			
I rule, etc.		*I am ruled*, etc.	
regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris, -re	regiminī
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur
IMPERFECT			
I was ruling, etc.		*I was ruled*, etc.	
regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris, -re	regēbāminī
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur
FUTURE			
I shall rule, etc.		*I shall be ruled*, etc.	
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
regēs	regētis	regēris, -re	regēminī
reget	regent	regētur	regentur
PERFECT			
I have ruled, etc.		*I have been ruled*, etc.	
rēxī	rēximus	rēctus { sum / es / est	rēctī { sumus / estis / sunt
rēxistī	rēxistis		
rēxit	rēxērunt, -re		
PLUPERFECT			
I had ruled, etc.		*I had been ruled*, etc.	
rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus { eram / erās / erat	rēctī { erāmus / erātis / erant
rēxerās	rēxerātis		
rēxerat	rēxerant		

Future Perfect

I shall have ruled, etc.		*I shall have been ruled*, etc.	
rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus erō	rēctī erimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	rēctus eris	rēctī eritis
rēxerit	rēxerint	rēctus erit	rēctī erunt

Subjunctive

Present

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris, -re	regāminī
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

Imperfect

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris, -re	regerēminī
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

Perfect

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus sim	rēctī sīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	rēctus sīs	rēctī sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint	rēctus sit	rēctī sint

Pluperfect

rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus essem	rēctī essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis	rēctus essēs	rēctī essētis
rēxisset	rēxissent	rēctus esset	rēctī essent

Imperative

Present

rege, *rule thou.*
regite, *rule ye.*

regere, *be thou ruled.*
regiminī, *be ye ruled.*

Future

regitō, *thou shalt rule.*
regitō, *he shall rule.*
regitōte, *ye shall rule.*
reguntō, *they shall rule.*

regitor, *thou shalt be ruled.*
regitor, *he shall be ruled.*

---

reguntor, *they shall be ruled.*

PERFECT

I have advised, I advised, etc.		*I have been (was) advised*, etc.			
monuī	monuimus	monitus	sum	monitī	sumus
monuistī	monuistis		es		estis
monuit	monuērunt, -re		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had advised, etc.		*I had been advised*, etc.			
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus	eram	monitī	erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis		erās		erātis
monuerat	monuerant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have advised, etc.		*I shall have been advised*, etc.			
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus	erō	monitī	erimus
monueris	monueritis		eris		eritis
monuerit	monuerint		erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris, -re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

IMPERFECT

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, -re	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	sim	monitī	sīmus
monueris	monueritis		sīs		sītis
monuerit	monuerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT

monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus	essem	monitī	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis		essēs		essētis
monuisset	monuissent		esset		essent

Imperative

Present

monē, *advise thou.*	**monēre**, *be thou advised.*
monēte, *advise ye.*	**monēminī**, *be ye advised.*

Future

monētō, *thou shalt advise.*	**monētor**, *thou shalt be advised.*
monētō, *he shall advise.*	**monētor**, *he shall be advised.*
monētōte, *you shall advise.*	————
monento, *they shall advise.*	**monentor**, *they shall be advised.*

Infinitive

Pres. **monēre**, *to advise.*	**monērī**, *to be advised.*
Perf. **monuisse**, *to have advised.*	**monitus esse**, *to have been advised.*
Fut. **monitūrus esse**, *to be about to advise.*	[**monitum īrī**], *to be about to be advised.*

Participles

Pres. **monēns, -entis**, *advising.*	Pres. ————
Fut. **monitūrus, -a, -um**, *about to advise.*	Ger. **monendus, -a, -um**, *to be advised.*
Perf. ————	Perf. **monitus, -a, -um**, *having been advised, advised.*

Gerund

Nom.	————
Gen.	**monendī**, *of advising.*
Dat.	**monendō**, *for advising.*
Acc.	**monendum**, *advising.*
Abl.	**monendō**, *by advising.*

Supine

Acc.	[**monitum**, *to advise.*]
Abl.	**monitū**, *to advise, in the advising.*

INFINITIVE

PRES.	**regere**, *to rule.*	**regī**, *to be ruled.*
PERF.	**rēxisse**, *to have ruled.*	**rēctus esse**, *to have been ruled.*
FUT.	**rēctūrus esse**, *to be about to rule.*	[**rēctum īrī**], *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	**regēns**, **-entis**, *ruling.*	PRES.	———
FUT.	**rēctūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *about to rule.*	GER.	**regendus**, **-a**, **-um**, *to be ruled.*
PERF.	———	PERF.	**rēctus**, **-a**, **-um**, *having been ruled, ruled.*

GERUND

Nom.	———
Gen.	**regendī**, *of ruling.*
Dat.	**regendō**, *for ruling.*
Acc.	**regendum**, *ruling.*
Abl.	**regendō**, *by ruling.*

SUPINE

Acc.	[**rēctum**, *to rule.*]
Abl.	[**rēctū**, *to rule, in the ruling.*]

500. THIRD CONJUGATION — Verbs in -iō

capiō, *take*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT			
I take, etc.		*I am taken*, etc.	
capiō	**capimus**	**capior**	**capimur**
capis	**capitis**	**caperis**, **-re**	**capiminī**
capit	**capiunt**	**capitur**	**capiuntur**

IMPERFECT

I was taking, etc.		*I was taken*, etc.	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris, -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

FUTURE

I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken*, etc.	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris, -re	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

PERFECT

cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc. captus sum, es, est, etc.

PLUPERFECT

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc. captus eram, erās, erat, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus erō, eris, erit, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc. capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.

IMPERFECT

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.

PERFECT

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus sim, sīs, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT

cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	cape, *take thou.*	capere, *be thou taken.*
	capite, *take ye.*	capiminī, *be ye taken.*
FUT.	capitō, *thou shalt take*, etc.	capitor, *thou shalt be taken*, etc.

INFINITIVE

PRES.	capere, *to take.*	capī, *to be taken.*
PERF.	cēpisse, *to have taken.*	captus esse, *to have been taken.*
FUT.	captūrus esse, *to be about to take.*	[captum īrī], *to be about to be taken.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	capiēns, -ientis, *taking.*	PRES.	————
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um, *about to take.*	GER.	capiendus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*
PERF.	————	PERF.	captus, -a, -um, *having been taken.*

GERUND

Gen. capiendī, *of taking*, etc.

SUPINE

Acc. [captum, *to take.*]
Abl. [captū, *to take, in the taking.*]

501. FOURTH CONJUGATION — Ī-Verbs

audiō, *hear*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT			
I hear, etc.		*I am heard*, etc.	
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris, -re	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur
IMPERFECT			
I was hearing, etc.		*I was heard*, etc.	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris, -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Future

I shall hear, etc.		*I shall be heard*, etc.	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris, -re	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

Perfect

I have heard, etc.		*I have been heard*, etc.	
audīvī	audīvimus	audītus { sum / es / est	audītī { sumus / estis / sunt
audīvistī	audīvistis		
audīvit	audīvērunt, -re		

Pluperfect

I had heard, etc.		*I had been heard*, etc.	
audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus { eram / erās / erat	audītī { erāmus / erātis / erant
audīverās	audīverātis		
audīverat	audīverant		

Future Perfect

I shall have heard, etc.		*I shall have been heard*, etc.	
audīverō	audīverimus	audītus { erō / eris / erit	audītī { erimus / eritis / erunt
audīveris	audīveritis		
audīverit	audīverint		

Subjunctive

Present

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, -re	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris, -re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus	sim	audītī	sīmus
audīveris	audīveritis		sīs		sītis
audīverit	audīverint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT

audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus	essem	audītī	essēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis		essēs		essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audī, *hear thou.*
audīte, *hear ye.*
audīre, *be thou heard.*
audīminī, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE

audītō, *thou shalt hear.*
audītō, *he shall hear.*
audītōte, *ye shall hear.*
audiuntō, *they shall hear.*
audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*
audītor, *he shall be heard.*
audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE

PRES. audīre, *to hear.*
PERF. audīvisse, *to have heard.*
FUT. audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*
audīrī, *to be heard.*
audītus esse, *to have been heard.*
audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*
FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*
PERF. ————
PRES. ————
GER. audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*
PERF. audītus, -a, -um, *having been heard, heard.*

GERUND

Nom.	————
Gen.	audiendī, *of hearing.*
Dat.	audiendō, *for hearing.*
Acc.	audiendum, *hearing.*
Abl.	audiendō, *by hearing.*

SUPINE

Acc.	audītum, *to hear.*
Abl.	audītū, *to hear, in the hearing.*

IRREGULAR VERBS

502. sum, *be*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, *I am.*	sumus, *we are.*
es, *thou art.*	estis, *you are.*
est, *he (she, it) is.*	sunt, *they are.*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was.*	erāmus, *we were.*
erās, *thou wast.*	erātis, *you were.*
erat, *he was.*	erant, *they were.*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be.*	erimus, *we shall be.*
eris, *thou wilt be.*	eritis, *you will be.*
erit, *he will be.*	erunt, *they will be.*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, was.*	fuimus, *we have been, were.*
fuistī, *thou hast been, wast.*	fuistis, *you have been, were.*
fuit, *he has been, was.*	fuērunt, fuēre, *they have been, were.*

PLUPERFECT

fueram, *I had been.*	**fuerāmus**, *we had been.*
fuerās, *thou hadst been.*	**fuerātis**, *you had been.*
fuerat, *he had been.*	**fuerant**, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been.*	**fuerimus**, *we shall have been.*
fueris, *thou wilt have been.*	**fueritis**, *you will have been.*
fuerit, *he will have been.*	**fuerint**, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
sim	**sīmus**	**essem**	**essēmus**
sīs	**sītis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
sit	**sint**	**esset**	**essent**

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
fuerim	**fuerimus**	**fuissem**	**fuissēmus**
fueris	**fueritis**	**fuissēs**	**fuissētis**
fuerit	**fuerint**	**fuisset**	**fuissent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	FUTURE
es, *be thou.*	**estō**, *thou shalt be.*
este, *be ye.*	**estō**, *he shall be.*
	estōte, *ye shall be.*
	suntō, *they shall be.*

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
PRES.	**esse**, *to be.*	
PERF.	**fuisse**, *to have been.*	
FUT.	**futūrus esse** or **fore**, *to be about to be.*	**futūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *about to be.*

503. **possum**, *be able, can*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potuī, ——**

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
PRES.	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMPF.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT.	poterō	poterimus	———	———
PERF.	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus	———	———

INFINITIVE

PRES. posse PERF. potuisse

504. **prōsum**, *benefit*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus**

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
PRES.	prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsīmus
	prōdes	prōdestis	prōsīs	prōsītis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMPF.	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdessēmus
FUT.	prōderō	prōderimus	———	———
PERF.	prōfuī	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
PLUP.	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
F. P.	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus	———	———

IMPERATIVE

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

PRES. prōdesse PERF. prōfuisse
FUT. prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um

505. **volō, nōlō, mālō**

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **volō, velle, voluī, ——,** *be willing, will, wish*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, *be unwilling, will not*
mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	volt	nōn volt	māvolt

PLURAL

	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	voltis	nōn voltis	māvoltis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	maluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit

		Plural	
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
Impf.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
		Imperative	
Pres.	————	nōlī	————
		nōlīte	
Fut.	————	nōlītō, etc.	————
		Infinitive	
Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse
		Participle	
Pres.	volēns	nōlēns	————

506. **ferō**, *bear, carry, endure*

Principal Parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

	Indicative			
	Active		Passive	
Pres.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris, -re	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
Impf.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
Fut.	feram		ferar	
Perf.	tulī		lātus sum	
Plup.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	
	Subjunctive			
Pres.	feram		ferar	
Impf.	ferrem		ferrer	
Perf.	tulerim		lātus sim	
Plup.	tulissem		lātus essem	

IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferrī
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	————

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	PRES.	————
FUT.	lātūrus	GER.	ferendus
PERF.	————	PERF.	lātus

GERUND

Gen.	ferendī
Dat.	ferendō
Acc.	ferendum
Abl.	ferendō

507. **eō**, *go*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itum** (p. p.).

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
PRES.	eō	īmus	eam	ī	īte
	īs	ītis			
	it	eunt			
IMPF.	ībam		īrem		
FUT.	ībō		——	ītō	ītōte
				īto	euntō
PERF.	iī		ierim		
PLUP.	ieram		īssem		
F. P.	ierō				

	Infinitive	Participles
Pres.	īre	iēns, euntis
Perf.	īsse	itum
Fut.	itūrus esse	itūrus

	Gerund	Supine
Gen.	eundī	
Dat.	eundō	
Acc.	eundum	itum
Abl.	eundō	itū

508. **fīō**, *be made, become, happen*

Principal Parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

	Indicative		Subjunctive	Imperative	
Pres.	fīō	——	fīam	fī	fīte
	fīs	——			
	fit	fīunt			
Impf.	fīēbam		fierem		
Fut.	fīam		——		
Perf.	factus sum		factus sim		
Plup.	factus eram		factus essem		
F. P.	factus erō				

	Infinitive	Participles	
Pres.	fierī	Ger.	faciendus
Perf.	factus esse	Perf.	factus
Fut.	factum īrī		

509. DEPONENT VERBS

Principal Parts:

I. **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum**, *urge*
II. **vereor, verērī, veritus sum**, *fear*
III. **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**, *follow*
IV. **potior, potīrī, potītus sum**, *get possession of*

Indicative

Pres.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	potīris, -re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
Impf.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
Fut.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
Perf.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
Plup.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

Subjunctive

Pres.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
Impf.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
Perf.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
Plup.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

Imperative

Pres.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
Fut.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

Infinitive

Pres.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
Fut.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

Participles

Pres.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
Fut.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
Ger.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

Gerund

hortandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.

Supine

[hortātum, -tū]	[veritum, -tū]	[secūtum, -tū]	[potītum, -tū]

510. FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amātūrus sum, *I am about to love.*
IMPF.	amātūrus eram, *I was about to love.*
FUT.	amātūrus erō, *I shall be about to love.*
PERF.	amātūrus fuī, *I have been* or *was about to love.*
PLUP.	amātūrus fueram, *I had been about to love.*
F. P.	amātūrus fuerō, *I shall have been about to love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amātūrus sim
IMPF.	amātūrus essem
PERF.	amātūrus fuerim
PLUP.	amātūrus fuissem

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*
PERF.	amātūrus fuisse, *to have been about to love.*

So in the other conjugations:

monitūrus sum, *I am about to advise.*
rēctūrus sum, *I am about to rule.*
captūrus sum, *I am about to take.*
audītūrus sum, *I am about to hear,*
etc., etc.

511. SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amandus sum, *I am to be, must be, loved.*
IMPF.	amandus eram, *I was to be, had to be, loved.*
FUT.	amandus erō, *I shall have to be loved.*
PERF.	amandus fuī, *I was to be, had to be, loved.*
PLUP.	amandus fueram, *I had had to be loved.*
F. P.	amandus fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES. amandus sim
IMPF. amandus essem
PERF. amandus fuerim
PLUP. amandus fuissem

INFINITIVE

PRES. amandus esse, *to have to be loved.*
PERF. amandus fuisse, *to have had to be loved.*

So in the other conjugations:

monendus sum, *I am to be, must be, advised.*
regendus sum, *I am to be, must be ruled.*
capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken.*
audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard,*
etc., etc.

512. SYNOPSIS OF THE VERB

The following is a synopsis of **amō** arranged by stems.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Active*, **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum**
Passive, **amor, amārī, amātus sum**

PRESENT STEM **amā-** PERFECT STEM **amāv-** PARTICIPLE STEM **amāt-**

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	Present Stem, amā-	
	INDICATIVE	
PRES.	**amō**	**amo-r**
IMPERF.	**amā-bam**	**amā-bar**
FUT.	**amā-bō**	**amā-bor**
	SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	**ame-m**	**ame-r**
IMPERF.	**amā-rem**	**amā-rer**
	IMPERATIVE	
PRES.	**amā**	**amā-re**
FUT.	**amā-tō**	**amā-tor**
	INFINITIVE	
PRES.	**amā-re**	**amā-rī**
	PARTICIPLE	
PRES.	**amā-ns**	GERUNDIVE **ama-ndus**
GERUND	**ama-ndī**	

	Perfect Stem, amāv-	**Participle Stem, amāt-**
	INDICATIVE	
PERF.	**amāv-ī**	**amāt-us sum**
PLUPERF.	**amāv-eram**	**amāt-us eram**
FUT. PERF.	**amāv-erō**	**amāt-us erō**
	SUBJUNCTIVE	
PERF.	**amāv-erim**	**amāt-us sim**
PLUPERF.	**amāv-issem**	**amāt-us essem**
	INFINITIVE	
PERF.	**amāv-isse**	

	Participle Stem, amāt-	
	INFINITIVE	
PERF.		**amāt-us esse**
FUT.	**amāt-ūrus esse**	**amāt-um īrī**
	PARTICIPLE	
FUT.	**amāt-ūrus**	PERF. **amāt-us**
SUPINE	**amāt-um** **amāt-ū**	

RULES OF SYNTAX

N.B. — These rules are here numbered consecutively for the convenience of teachers and pupils. The number following a rule is its section number.

1. The subject of a verb is in the nominative. 51.

2. A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. 61.

3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb. 99.

4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits. 111.

5. A noun limiting another, and not denoting the same person or thing, is in the genitive. 68.

6. The partitive genitive is used to denote a whole of which a part is taken. 257.

7. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. 92.

8. A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb. 318, 2.

9. The indirect object is in the dative. 79.

10. Adjectives meaning *near*, also *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites, take the dative. 117.

11. The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. 115.

12. Most verbs meaning to *believe*, *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their opposites, also to *command*, *obey*, *pardon*, *persuade*, *resist*, *serve*, and *spare*, and the like, govern the dative. 393.

13. Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super** often govern the dative. 347.

14. The dative is used with **sum** and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing *serves*. 349.

15. The gerundive with **sum** takes the dative to denote the person who has to do a thing. 426.

16. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. 57.

17. Place whither, not including names of towns, is expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**. 160.

18. Extent of *time* or *space* is expressed by the accusative. 278.

19. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. 208.

20. The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action. 124.

21. The ablative with **cum** is used to denote the *manner* of an action; but **cum** may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. 129.

22. The ablative is used to express cause. 165.

23. The ablative or the genitive of a noun may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing. 307.

24. Time *when* or *within which* is expressed by the ablative. 188.

25. Place *where*, not including names of towns, is expressed by the ablative with a preposition, usually **in**. 81.

26. Place *whence*, not including names of towns, is expressed by the ablative with **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**). 159.

27. The ablative is used to denote *in what respect* a thing is true. 374.

28. The comparative is followed by the ablative when **quam** (*than*) is omitted. 250.

29. Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative. 264.

30. These five deponents, **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** and their compounds govern the ablative. 388.

31. The ablative absolute is used to express the *time*, *cause*, *condition*, or some other *circumstance* of the action of the main verb. 358.

32. Words signifying *privation*, *removal*, or *separation* are followed by the ablative, without a preposition, or with the prepositions **ab, dē, ex.** 232.

33. NAMES OF TOWNS and **domus** and **rūs.** (1) Place *where* is expressed by the locative. 197, 1. (2) Place *whither* is expressed by the accusative without a preposition. 197, 2. (3) Place *whence* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. 197, 3.

34. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its relation to some word in its own clause. 213.

35. A principal tense is followed by the subjunctive present or perfect; an historical tense, by the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect. 297.

36. The subjunctive is used with **ut** and **nē** to express *purpose*. 284.

37. The subjunctive is used with **ut** and **ut nōn** to express *result*. 290.

38. In a **cum**-clause expressing *time*, the verb is commonly in the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, in the indicative. 397.

39. In a **cum**-clause expressing *cause* or *concession*, the subjunctive is used. 398.

40. The verb of an *indirect question* is in the subjunctive. 295.

41. *Purpose* is often expressed by a relative with the subjunctive. 420.

42. In *simple* conditions the indicative is used. 405.

43. In *doubtful* conditions the subjunctive present (or perfect) is used. 406.

44. In conditions *contrary to fact* the subjunctive imperfect and pluperfect are used, the imperfect denoting present time, and the pluperfect denoting past time. 407.

45. The present infinitive denotes the *same* time as that of the verb on which it depends. 324.

46. The perfect infinitive denotes time *before* that of the verb on which it depends. 325.

47. The future infinitive denotes time *after* that of the verb on which it depends. 326.

48. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. 318.

49. Indirect statements follow verbs and other expressions of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, and *perceiving*, and are expressed by the infinitive with subject accusative. 322.

50. The supine in **-um** is used after verbs of motion to express *purpose*. 373.

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary, words inclosed in brackets (except in the case of compounds with one or both parts changed in form) are sometimes primitives, sometimes cognates.

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not intended to be used as such. They are inserted to show literal meanings.

Abbreviations are generally self-explanatory. Cf. (*confer*) = compare; subjv. = subjunctive; imv. = imperative.

Words printed in ***heavy-faced italic*** type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in SMALL CAPITALS.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupils should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

ā (ab), prep. with abl. *from*, *by*, *off*.

ab-dicō, abdicāre, abdicāvī, abdicātus, *reject;* with **sē**, *resign*, ***abdicate***.

ab-dō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, *hide*, *conceal*.

ab-dūcō, abdūcere, abdūxī, abductus, *lead away*, *take off;* ***abduct***.

ab-eō, abīre, abiī, abitūrus, *go from*, *go off*, *go away*. (507.) Cf. **dēcēdō**.

ab-iciō, abicere, abiēcī, abiectus [-iaciō], *throw off*, *throw down*, *cast away*.

ab-ripiō, abripere, abripuī, abreptus [-rapiō], *snatch away*, *carry off*.

abs-cīdō, abscīdere, abscīdī, abscīsus [ab(s)-caedō], *cut off*.

abs-tergeō, abstergēre, abstersī, abstersus, *wipe off*.

abstersus, *see* **abstergeō**.

ab-sum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be away*, *be* ***absent***, *be distant*, *be off;* with **ā** and abl. (345.)

āc, conj. *see* **atque**.

ac-cēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessūrus [ad-], *go* or *come near*, *approach*. Cf. **adeō** and **adpropinquō**.

ac-cendō, accendere, accendī, accēnsus [ad-candeō, *shine*], *kindle*, *set fire to*, *light;* *inflame*.

ac-cidō, accidere, accidī, —— [ad-cadō], *fall upon*, *fall out*, *happen*. ACCIDENT. Cf. **ēveniō** and **fīō**.

ac-cipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus [ad-capiō], (*take to*), *receive*, ***accept***.

ac-currō, accurrere, accurrī (accucurrī), accursus [ad-], *run towards*, *run up*.

accūsātiō, -ōnis, f. ***accusation***.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj. *sharp*, *keen;* *active*, ***eager***. (182.) ACRID.

ācerbitās, -ātis, f. *bitterness*, *harshness*, *severity*. ACERBITY.

acervus, -ī, m. *pile*, *heap*, *mass*.

Achillēs, -is, m. ***Achilles***, a hero of the Trojan war.

aciēs, -ēī, f. [ācer], *edge; line, line of battle, battle array.*

ācriter, adv. [ācer], *sharply, eagerly, spiritedly, fiercely.* (267.)

ad, prep. with acc. *to, towards, near, up to;* with gerund or gerundive, *to, for:* **ad hunc modum**, *after this manner;* as adv. *about.*

ad-aequō, adaequāre, adaequāvī, adaequātus, *become* ***equal to, equal.*** ADEQUATE.

adclīvis, -e, adj. *sloping towards, rising, ascending.* ACCLIVITY.

ad-dūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, *lead to.* ADDUCE.

ad-eō, adīre, adiī, aditus, *go to, approach, visit.* (507.) Cf. **accēdō** and **adpropinquō.**

ad-ferō, adferre, attulī, adlātus, *bear to, bring, render.* (506.)

ad-ficiō, adficere, adfēcī, adfectus [-faciō], ***affect,*** *influence; afflict, oppress.*

ad-flīgō, adflīgere, adflīxī, adflīctus, (*dash at*), *weaken,* ***afflict.***

ad-hibeō, adhibēre, adhibuī, adhibitus [-habeō], *apply, employ, use.*

ad-hūc, adv. *hitherto, as yet, still.*

aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō], *approach, way of access.* Cf. **adventus.**

ad-ministrō, administrāre, administrāvī, administrātus, *manage, direct,* ***administer.***

admīrātiō, -ōnis, f. [admīror], ***admiration,*** *astonishment, wonder.*

ad-mīror, admīrārī, admīrātus sum [admīrātiō], *wonder at,* ***admire.***

ad-moneō, admonēre, admonuī, admonitus, *remind, warn,* ***admonish.***

admōtus, *see* **admoveō.**

ad-moveō, admovēre, admōvī, admōtus (*move to*), *apply, employ.*

ad-nectō, adnectere, adnexuī, adnexus, *tie to, fasten to, attach.* ANNEX.

ad-olēscō, adolēscere, adolēvī, adultus, *grow up.* ADULT.

ad-pellō, adpellere, adpulī, adpulsus, (*drive to*): **nāvīs adpellere**, *land, put in.*

ad-petō, adpetere, adpetīvī (adpetiī), adpetītus, *seek after, attack.*

ad-prehendō, adprehendere, adprehendī, adprehēnsus, *seize, catch hold of.* APPREHEND.

ad-propinquō, adpropinquāre, adpropinquāvī, adpropinquātus, *approach, come near to.* Cf. **adeō** and **accēdō.**

ad-ripiō, adripere, adripuī, adreptus [-rapiō], *seize, snatch.*

ad-rogō, adrogāre, adrogāvī, adrogātus, *claim.* ARROGATE.

ad-scrībō, adscrībere, adscrīpsī, adscrīptus, (*write in addition*), *add, enroll.* ASCRIBE.

ad-spiciō, adspicere, adspēxī, adspectus, *look at, look upon, behold.* ASPECT.

ad-stō, adstāre, adstitī, ——, *stand near.*

ad-sum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *be present, be here;* with dat. (345.)

Aduātucī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the* ***Aduatuci,*** a Gallic tribe.

adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [adolēscō], *youth, young person.* ADOLESCENCE. Cf. **iuvenis.**

adultus, *see* **adolēscō.**

ad-ūrō, adūrere, adussī, adūstus, *set on fire, burn, singe.*

advectus, *see* advehō.

ad-vehō, advehere, advēxī, advectus, *carry to, bring on, bring.*

advena, -ae, m. and f. [ad-veniō], *stranger.*

adventus, -ūs, m. *approach, arrival.* ADVENT. Cf. **aditus.**

adversus, -a, -um, adj. *turned towards, opposite, in front,* **adverse.**

adversus, prep. with acc. *against.*

ad-vocō, advocāre, advocāvī, advocātus, *summon, call upon.* ADVOCATE.

aedēs (aedis), -is, f. *building;* plur. *house.*

aedificium, aedificī, n. [aedificō], *building.* EDIFICE.

aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus [aedēs-faciō], *build.* EDIFY.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *sick, weak, feeble.*

aequālis, -e, adj. *equal, like, of the same age.*

aequē, adv. *equally.*

Aequī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the* **Aequi**, a people of ancient Italy.

āēr, āeris, m. (acc. āera), *air.*

aestās, -ātis, f. *summer.*

aetās, -ātis, f. *life, age.*

Aetna, -ae, f. *Aetna*, a mountain in Sicily.

Āfrica, -ae, f. *Africa.*

ager, agrī, m. *field, territory, land.* (108.)

agger, -eris, m. *mound, rampart.*

agitō, agitāre, agitāvī, agitātus [frequentative of agō], *shake, disturb, chase, drive.* AGITATE.

agmen, -inis, n. [agō], (*the thing led*), *army, host, column.*

āgnōscō, āgnōscere, āgnōvī, āgnitus [ad-(g)nōscō, *know*], *recognize.* Cf. **cōgnōscō.**

āgnus, -ī, m. *lamb.*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead, bring up; act, do; treat; celebrate; pass* (*life*).

agrestis, -e [ager], *of the country, rustic, clownish.*

agricola, -ae, m. [ager-colō], *farmer, husbandman.*

āiō, defective verb, *say.*

āla, -ae, f. *wing.*

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj. *brisk, active, eager.*

Alba, -ae, f. *Alba*, an ancient city of Italy.

Albānus, -a, -um, adj. *Alban;* as noun, *an* **Alban**, *inhabitant of Alba*, a town in Latium.

albus, -a, -um, adj. *white.*

Alcmēna, -ae, f. *Alcmena*, the mother of Hercules.

āles, -itis, m. [āla], *bird.*

aliās, adv. [alius], *elsewhere, at any other time.*

ali-quandō, adv. [alius], *at some time; formerly, once.* Cf. **ōlim.**

ali-quantō, adv. [alius], *somewhat.*

aliquis [-quī], -qua, -quid [-quod], indef. pron. *some one, some, any.*

aliter, adv. [alius], *otherwise, in any other way.*

alius, -a, -ud, adj. *another, other, else:* **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another.* (312.) Cf. **cēterī.**

alō, alere, aluī, altus (alitus), *nourish, strengthen.*

Alpēs, -ium, f. plur. *the* **Alps.**

altāria, -ium, n. plur. *altar.*

alter, -era, -erum, adj. *the one, the other* (*of two*); *second:* **alter** . . . **alter**, *the one . . . the other.* (312.)

altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus], *height.*

altum, -ī, n. [altus], *the sea.*

altus, -a, -um, adj. *high, deep.*

alveus, -ī, m. *hollow vessel, tub, trough.*

ambō, -ae, -ō, adj. (decl. like **duo**), *both.*

ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātus, *walk, take a walk.*

āmentia, -ae, f. *want of reason, madness.*

amīcitia, -ae, f. [amīcus], *friendship.*

amīcus, -a, -um, adj. [amō], *friendly;* as noun, *friend.*

ā-mittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissus, *send away; lose.* Cf. **perdō**.

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus [amor], *love, like, be fond of.* (497.)

amor, -ōris, f. [amō], *love.*

ā-moveō, āmovēre, āmōvī, āmōtus, *move away, put aside.*

amplus, -a, -um, *large, wide; honorable.* AMPLE.

Amūlius, Amūlī, m. ***Amulius***, father of Rhea Silvia.

an, conj. *or.*

ancora, -ae, f. ***anchor.***

angustus, -a, -um, adj. *narrow.*

anima, -ae, f. [animus], *breath, soul, life.* ANIMATE.

anim-advertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus [animus-], *turn the mind to, notice.*

animal, -ālis, n. [anima], *living being,* ***animal.*** (169.)

animus, -ī, m. [anima], *mind, soul, spirit, disposition.* Cf. **mēns**.

Aniō, Aniēnis, m. the ***Anio***, a branch of the Tiber.

annōna, -ae, f. [annus], (*the year's supply*), *provisions; price* (of provisions), *market; scarcity.*

annus, -ī, m. *year.* ANNUAL.

ante, adv. and prep. with acc. *before.*

anteā, adv. [ante], *before.*

ante-cēdō, antecēdere, antecessī, ——, *go before.*

ante-ferō, anteferre, antetulī, antelātus, *place in advance, prefer.* (506.) Cf. **antepōnō** and **mālō**.

ante-pōnō, antepōnere, anteposuī, antepositus, *place in advance, prefer.* Cf. **anteferō**, **praepōnō**, and **mālō**.

ante-quam, adv. *sooner than, before.*

antīquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante], *old, ancient.* ANTIQUITY. Cf. **vetus**.

antrum, -ī, n. *cave.*

anxius, -a, -um, *troubled,* ***anxious.***

Apollō, -inis, m. ***Apollo***, a god of the Greeks.

ap-pareō, apparēre, apparuī, —— [ad-], *show one's self,* ***appear.***

ap-pellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus [ad-], *address, call, name.* APPEAL.

aptō, aptāre, aptāvī, aptātus, *fit.*

apud, prep. with acc. *with, by, near, among.*

aqua, -ae, f. *water.* AQUATIC.

āra, -ae, f. *altar.* (Page 21.)

arātrum, -ī, n. [arō], *plough.* (Page 87.)

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, *think, suppose.* Cf. **exīstimō** and **putō**.

arbor, -oris, f. *tree.*

arceō, arcēre, arcuī, ——, *keep off.*

arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītus, *send for; summon.*

arcus, -ūs, m. *bow.* (242, *a.*) ARC.

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus, *be on fire, burn, blaze.* ARDENT.

arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep; difficult,* ***arduous.***

ariēs, -etis, m. *ram, battering ram.* (Page 202.)

arma, -ōrum, n. [armō], ***arms,*** *weapons,* ***armor.***

armātus, -ī, m. [armō], *armed man, warrior.*

armō, armāre, armāvī, armātus [arma], ***arm,*** *equip.*

arō, arāre, arāvī, arātus, *plough.*

ars, artis, f. ***art,*** *skill.*

arx, arcis, f. [arceō], *citadel.*

ascēnsus, -ūs, m. *a going up,* ***ascent.***

asper, -era, -erum, *rough, fierce, harsh.* EXASPERATE.

at, conj. *but.* Cf. **sed** and **autem.**

Athēna, -ae, f. ***Athena,*** a goddess.

Atlās, -antis, m. ***Atlas,*** one of the Titans.

at-que (before vowels and consonants, **āc** before consonants only) [ad-], *and also, and especially, and; as.* Cf. **et** and **-que.**

atrōx, -ōcis, adj. *savage, fierce, severe.* ATROCIOUS. Cf. **saevus** and **trux.**

at-tingō, attingere, attigī, attāctus [ad-tangō], *touch, reach.* ATTAIN.

at-tonitus, -a, -um [ad-], *thunderstruck, astounded, awe-struck.*

auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō], ***author,*** *doer.*

audācia, -ae, f. [audāx], *daring,* ***boldness,*** ***audacity.***

audāx, -ācis, adj. *daring, bold.* (182.) AUDACIOUS.

audiō, audīre, audīvī (audiī), audītus, *hear, listen.* (501.) AUDIENCE.

au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus, [ab(s)-], *bear off, carry away, take away.* (506.) ABLATIVE.

Augēās, -ae, m. ***Augeas,*** a mythical hero.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus [auxilium], *increase, enlarge.* AUGMENT.

Augustus, -ī, m. ***Augustus,*** title of Caesar Octavianus as emperor.

aura, -ae, f. *air.*

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], *of gold, golden.*

auris, -is, f. *ear.* AURIST.

aurum, -ī, n. *gold.*

aut, conj. *or:* **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.*

autem, conj. (never the first word), *but, however, moreover, now.*

auxilior, auxiliārī, auxiliātus sum [auxilium], *give help, aid, assist.*

auxilium, auxilī, n. [augeō], *help, aid, support.* AUXILIARY.

avārus, -a, -um, adj. *greedy, rapacious.* AVARICIOUS.

ā-versor, āversārī, āversātus sum, *turn away from.* AVERSE.

ā-vertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, *turn away, turn aside,* ***avert.***

avia, -ae, f. *grandmother.*

avis, -is, f. *bird.* (169, *c.*) AVIARY.

balteus, ī, m. *belt.*

barba, -ae, f. *beard.*

barbarus, -ī, m. ***barbarian.***

beātus, -a, -um, adj. *happy.*

Belgae, -ārum, m. plur. *the* ***Belgians*** or ***Belgae,*** a Gallic tribe.

bellō, bellāre, bellāvī, bellātus [bellum], *war, carry on war.*

bellum, -ī, n. [bellō], *war.*

bellus, -a, -um, adj. *pretty.*

bēlua, -ae, f. *beast, monster.*

bene, adv. [bonus], *well.* (267.)

beneficium, beneficī, n. [bene-faciō], *kindness, service, benefit.*

benīgnus, -a, -um, adj. *kind, good.*

bēstia, -ae, f. *beast, animal.*

bibō, bibere, bibī, ——, *drink.* IMBIBE.

bis, adv. *twice.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj. *good, kind.* (483.)

bōs, bovis, m. and f. *ox, cow.* (482.)

brevis, -e, adj. *short, brief.* (182.)

Britannia, -ae, f. *Britain.*

Britannus, -ī, m. a *Briton*, inhabitant of Britannia.

Brūtus, -ī, m. *Brutus*, a Roman surname.

C., abbreviation for **Gāius.**

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall.*

caecus, -a, -um, adj. *blind.*

caedēs, -is, f. [caedō], *slaughter, carnage, murder.*

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus [caedēs], *cut; kill.*

caelum, -ī, n. *sky, heaven, heavens.*

Caesar, -aris, m. *Caius Julius Caesar*, a famous Roman.

calathus, -ī, m. *basket.*

cale-faciō, calefacere, calefēcī, calefactus [caleō-], *make hot, heat.*

calor, -ōris, m. *heat, glow.* CALORIC.

Cambricus, -ī, m. *Cambricus.*

Campānia, -ae, f. *Campania*, a district of Italy.

campus, -ī, m. *field.* CAMP.

cancer, -crī, m. *crab.* CANCER.

canis, -is, m. and f. *dog.* CANINE.

Cannae, -ārum, f. plur. *Cannae*, a town of southern Italy.

cantō, cantāre, cantāvī, cantātus [cantus], *sing.* CHANT.

cantus, -ūs, m. [cantō], *singing, song.* CHANT.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take, seize, capture; form.* (500.)

capra, -ae, f. *she-goat.*

captīva, -ae, f. [capiō], *captive, prisoner.*

captīvus, -ī, m. [capiō], *captive, prisoner.*

Capua, -ae, f. *Capua*, a city in Italy.

caput, -itis, n. *head; person.* (154.) CAPITAL.

cārē, adv. [cārus], *dearly.* (267.)

careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus, *be in want of, lack, want;* with abl.

carō, carnis, f. *flesh.* CARNAL.

Carolus, -ī, m. *Charles.*

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptus, *pluck, nibble; enjoy.*

carrus, -ī, m. *wagon, cart, car.*

Carthāgō, -inis, f. *Carthage*, a town in Africa.

cārus, -a, -um, adj. *dear, precious.*

casa, -ae, f. *hut, cottage.*

Cassivellaunus, -ī, m. *Cassivellaunus*, a British chief.

castellum, -ī, n. [diminutive of castrum], *redoubt, stronghold.* CASTLE.

castra, -ōrum, n. plur. *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō], *a falling; chance; misfortune, loss.* CASE.

caterva, -ae, f. *crowd, troop, throng.*

Catilīna, -ae, m. ***Catiline***, a famous Roman conspirator.

causa, -ae, f. ***cause***, *reason:* **causā** (after a genitive), *for the sake.*

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, *be on one's guard, beware ;* with **ā** and abl., *guard against.* CAUTION.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, *give way, retire.* SECEDE.

celeber, -bris, -bre, adj. *frequented, visited ; renowned,* ***celebrated.***

celeritās, -ātis, f. [celer, *swift*], *swiftness, speed, quickness,* ***celerity.***

celeriter, adv. [celer, *swift*], *swiftly, quickly.*

cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātus, ***conceal.***

cēna, -ae, f. *dinner, meal.*

Cēnaeum, -ī, n. ***Cenaeum***, a promontory on the island of Euboea.

cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātus, *dine, take a meal.*

Centaurus, -i, m. ***Centaur***, a fabled monster, half man, half horse.

centēsimus, -a -um, num. adj. [centum], *hundredth.*

centum, indecl. num. adj. *hundred.* CENT.

centuriō, -ōnis, m. ***centurion***, an underofficer in the Roman army.

cera, -ae, f. *wax.*

cernō, cernere, crēvī, certus (crētus), *distinguish, discern, decide, perceive, see.*

certāmen, -inis, n. *strife, contest.*

certē, adv. [certus], *really, surely,* ***certainly.***

certus, -a, -um, adj. *fixed,* ***determined, certain,*** *sure:* **certiōrem faciō**, (*make more certain*), *inform.*

cerva, -ae, f. *deer, hind.*

cervīx, -īcis, f. *the neck.*

cēterī, -ae, -a, plur. adj. *the rest, the remaining, the others.* Cf. **alius.**

Chrīstus, -ī, m. ***Christ.***

cibus, -ī, m. *food.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m. ***Cicero***, a famous Roman orator.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the* ***Cimbrians***, a German tribe.

Cincinnātus, -ī, m. ***Cincinnatus***, a famous Roman.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *surround, encircle, gird.*

circiter, adv. *about.*

circuitus, -ūs, m. [circum-eō], (*a going round*), *circumference,* ***circuit.***

circum, prep. with acc. *around.*

circum-arō, circumarāre, circumarāvī, ——, *plough around.*

circum-dō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus, *place around, surround, inclose.*

circum-dūcō, circumdūcere, circumdūxī, circumductus, *lead around.*

circum-mūniō, circummūnīre, circummūnīvī, circummūnītus, *wall around, fortify, blockade.*

circum-sedeō, circumsedēre, circumsēdī, circumsessus, (*sit around*), *blockade, besiege.*

circumsessus, *see* **circumsedeō.**

circum-sistō, circumsistere, circumstetī, ——, *stand around, surround.*

circum-stō, circumstāre, circumstetī (circumstitī), ——, *stand around, surround.* CIRCUMSTANCE.

circum-veniō, circumvenīre, circumvēnī, circumventus, *surround,* ***circumvent.***

citerior, -ius, adj. comp. *hither, nearer.* (489.)

civīs, -is, m. and f. *citizen.* (169, *c.*)

cīvitās, -ātis, f. [cīvis], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship.* CITY.

clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus [clāmor], *cry, shout.*

clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō], *cry, shout; barking.* CLAMOR.

clārus, -a, -um, adj. *clear, loud; renowned, famous.* CLARION.

classicum, -ī, n. *field signal, trumpet call.*

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close.*

claustra, -ōrum, n. plur. [claudō], *barrier, dike.*

clēmentia, -ae, f. *indulgent disposition; gentleness, clemency.*

Cloelia, -ae, f. *Cloelia*, a noble Roman maiden.

Cocles, -itis, m., (*blind of one eye*), *Cocles*, surname of Horatius.

coepī, coepisse, coeptus (defective; tenses from present stem wanting), *began.*

co-erceō, coercēre, coercuī, coercitus [co(m)-arceō], *keep back, check, restrain.* COERCE.

cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus [com-agitō], *consider thoroughly, reflect.* COGITATION.

cōgnōmen, -inis, n. [com-(g)nōmen], *surname, cognomen.*

cō-gnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus [co(m)-gnōscō], *learn, recognize, know, understand.* Cf. **āgnōscō**.

cohors, -hortis, f. *cohort*, a division of the Roman army.

collis, -is, m. *hill.* Cf. **mōns**.

collum, -ī, n. *neck.*

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, *care for, cultivate, till; honor.* Cf. **agricola** and **incola**.

columba, -ae, f. *dove.*

com (**col-**, **con-**, **cor-**, **co-**), primitive form of **cum**, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.

comes, -itis, m. and f. [com-eō], *comrade, companion.*

comitium, -ī, n. [com-eō], (*place of assembling*), the *comitium*, a part of the Roman forum.

com-memorō, commemorāre, commemorāvī, commemorātus, *call to mind, remember, recount, tell.*

com-minus, adv. [-manus], *hand to hand.* Cf. **ēminus**.

com-mittō, committere, commīsī, commissus, *intrust, commit:* **proelium committere**, *join battle, engage.* COMMISSION.

com-moveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, (*put in violent motion*), *shake, disturb, agitate, move.* COMMOTION.

commūnis, -e, adj. *common, general.*

com-pellō, compellere, compulī, compulsus, (*drive together*), *force, compel.* COMPULSION.

com-plector, complectī, complexus sum, *embrace.*

com-pleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, *fill out, fill up, cover.* COMPLETE.

com-plūrēs, -a (-ia), plur. adj. *very many, many, a number.*

com-prehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsus, *catch, seize.*

com-primō, comprimere, compressī, compressus [-premō], *press together, grasp; check, suppress.* COMPRESS.

compulsus, *see* **compellō**.

cōnātus, -ūs, m. [cōnor], *attempt.*

con-cidō, concidere, concidī, —— [-cadō], *fall down, fall.* Cf. **conruō**.

con-citō, concitāre, concitāvī, concitātus, *rouse up, rouse, spur on.*

concordia, -ae, f. (*an agreeing together*), *union, harmony,* **concord.**

con-currō, concurrere, concurrī (concucurrī), concursus, *run together, rush together, rally, gather.* CONCOURSE.

condiciō, -ōnis, f. [con-dīcō], (*a talking together*), *agreement,* **condition,** *terms.*

con-dō, condere, condidī, conditus, *conceal, hide; found.* Cf. **cēlō**.

con-dōnō, condōnāre, condōnāvī, condōnātus, *give up, surrender; forgive, pardon,* **condone.**

cō-nectō, cōnectere, ——, cōnexus, *bind together; join, tie.* CONNECT.

cōn-ferō, conferre, contulī, conlātus (coll-), *bring together, collect:* **sē cōnferre**, *betake one's self.* (506.)

cōn-fertus, -a, -um, adj. *crowded, thick, dense.*

cōnfessiō, -ōnis, f. **confession.**

cōnfestim, adv. *immediately, forthwith.*

cōn-ficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus [-faciō], *make, accomplish, carry out, finish; weaken, wear out.*

cōn-fīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum (semi-deponent), *trust entirely; believe, trust.* CONFIDE.

cōn-firmō, cōnfīrmāre, cōnfīrmāvī, cōnfīrmātus, *make* **firm,** *strengthen, steady.* CONFIRM.

cōn-fugiō, cōnfugere, cōnfūgī, ——, *flee for refuge, flee.*

con-gredior, congredī, congressus sum [-gradior], (*come together*); *engage in battle, meet, fight.* CONGRESS.

con-gregō, congregāre, congregāvī, congregātus [grex, *herd*], (*herd together*), *gather, collect, assemble.* CONGREGATE.

cōn-iciō, cōnicere, cōniēcī, cōniectus [-iaciō], *throw together; throw, put, hurl, cast.* CONJECTURE.

con-iungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus, *join together, unite.* CONJUNCTION.

coniūnx, -iugis, m. and f. [coniungō], *husband, wife.* CONJUGAL.

con-iūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī, coniūrātus, *unite by oath, conspire.* CONJURE.

con-locō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, *place, station.* Cf. **pōnō**.

conloquium, conloquī, n. [con-loquor], *a talking together; conversation, conference,* **colloquy.**

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *endeavor, attempt, try.*

con-ripiō, conripere, conripuī, conreptus [-rapiō], *seize, take hold of.*

con-ruō, conruere, conruī, ——, *fall together, fall down, fall.* Cf. **concidō**.

cōn-salūtō, cōnsalūtāre, cōnsalūtāvī, cōnsalūtātus, ***salute*** *cordially, greet.*

cōn-scendō, cōnscendĕre, cōnscendī, cōnscēnsus [-scandō, *climb*], *climb up, mount, go on board.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m. [cōnsentiō], *agreement, unanimity,* ***consent.***

cōn-serō, cōnserere, cōnseruī, cōnsertus, *join;* with **manum**, *fight hand to hand.*

cōn-servō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātus, ***preserve***, *save.*

cōn-sīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessus, *sit down.*

cōnsilium, cōnsilī, n. *advice,* ***counsel,*** *prudence, wisdom; plan, design.*

cōn-sistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, cōnstitus, *stand firm, take one's stand, halt; depend, rest.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, m. *look, view, sight.*

cōnspicor, cōnspicārī, conspicātus sum, *get sight of, descry.*

cōnstanter, adv. [cōnstantia], *firmly, steadily, resolutely.*

cōnstantia, -ae, f. [cōnstanter], *firmness;* ***constancy.***

cōn-stituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus [-statuō], *establish, determine, fix, decide, resolve.* CONSTITUTION.

cōn-suēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus, *accustom; become accustomed;* perf. *be accustomed, be wont.* Cf. **soleō.**

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. [cōnsuēscō], *custom, habit.*

cōnsul, -ulis, m. ***consul.***

cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. [cōnsul], ***consulship.***

cōn-sūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptus, *use up, spend, pass,* ***consume.***

con-temnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus, *despise,* ***contemn.***

contemptus, -ūs, m. [contemnō], ***contempt,*** *scorn.*

con-tendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, *strain, struggle, strive, hasten.* Cf. **mātūrō** and **properō.**

contentiō, -ōnis, f. [contendō], *struggle, exertion.* CONTENTION.

con-tineō, continēre, continuī, contentus [-teneō], *hold together, keep together, hold,* ***contain.***

continuus, -a, -um, adj. [contineō], ***continuous,*** *successive.*

contrā, prep. with acc. *against,* ***contrary*** *to.*

contrōversia, -ae, f. *dispute, quarrel;* ***controversy.***

contumēliōsē, adv. *abusively, insolently.*

con-veniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus, *come together, assemble;* ***convene.*** CONVENTION.

con-vertō, convertere, convertī, conversus, *turn, turn away.* CONVERT.

convīvium, -ī, n. *feast, banquet.*

con-vocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus, *call together, summon,* ***convoke.***

cōpia, -ae, f. [co(m)-ops], *abundance, wealth, plenty;* plur. *troops, forces.* COPIOUS.

cōram, adv. *face to face, in person.*

Corinthus, -ī, f. ***Corinth.*** (47, 2.)

Coriolānus, -ī, m. ***Coriolanus,*** a famous Roman warrior.

Coriolī, -ōrum, m. plur. ***Corioli***, an ancient town in Italy.

Cornēlia, -ae, f. ***Cornelia***, mother of the Gracchi.

cornū, -ūs, n. *horn.* (242.)

corōna, -ae, f. ***crown***. CORONET.

corpus, -oris, n. *body.* (163.) CORPSE.

corvus, -ī, m. *raven; grappling hook.*

cotīdiē, adv. [quot-diēs], *daily.*

crātēra, -ae, f. *mixing bowl, bowl.* CRATER.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj. *thick, numerous, frequent.* Cf. **frequēns.**

crēdibilis, -e, adj. *to be believed, credible.*

creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus, *make, create; choose, elect.*

cruciātus, -ūs, m. *torture.* EXCRUCIATING.

crūdēlis, -e, adj. ***cruel.***

cruentus, -ā, -um, adj. [cruor], *bloody.*

cruor, -ōris, m. *blood, gore.* Cf. **sanguis.**

crūs, crūris, n. *leg.*

cubiculum, -ī, n. [cubō], *bedchamber.*

cubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitūrus, *lie, lie asleep.*

culpa, -ae, f. [culpō], *blame, fault.* CULPABLE. Cf. **vitium.**

culpō, culpāre, culpāvī, culpātus [culpa], *blame, find fault with.*

culter, -trī, m. *knife, butcher's knife.*

cum, conj. *when; as, since; though, although.* (397, 398.)

cum, prep. with abl. *with.*

cūnae, -ārum, f. plur. *cradle.*

cūnctus, -a, -um, adj. *all together, all.* Cf. **omnis, tōtus,** and **ūniversus.**

cupidē, adv. [cupidus], *eagerly.*

cupiditās, -ātis, f. [cupidus], *longing, desire.* CUPIDITY.

cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [cupiō], *desirous, fond.*

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī (cupiī), cupītus [cupidus], *desire, be eager for.* Cf. **volō.**

cūr, adv. [quā-rē], *why, wherefore.*

cūra, -ae, f. [cūrō], *care, anxiety.*

cūriōsus, -a, -um, adj. *inquisitive, curious.*

cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus [cūra], *care for, take care;* with gerundive, *have* (a thing done).

currus, -ūs, m. *chariot, car.*

cursus, -ūs, m. ***course***, *race-course.*

curūlis, -e, adj. ***curule:*** **sella curūlis**, *official chair*, used by higher magistrates.

custōdiō, custōdīre, custōdīvī (custōdiī), custōdītus [custōs], *guard, protect, defend.*

custōs, -ōdis, m. and f. [custōdiō], *guardian, keeper.* CUSTODIAN.

Cyclōps, -ōpis, m., (*round eye*), *a* ***Cyclops,*** one of a fabulous race of giants on the coast of Sicily.

damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātus [damnum], *condemn, sentence, doom.*

damnum, -ī, n. [damnō], *hurt, harm, damage, loss.*

dē, prep. with abl. *down from, from; about, concerning, of;* (of time) *in, during, for.*

dea, -ae, f. [deus], *goddess.* (Page 22, note 2.)

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought, must, should.*

dēbitus, -a, -um, adj. [dēbeō], *owed; due, appropriate.* DEBIT, DEBT.

dē-cēdō, dēcēdere, dēcessī, dēcessūrus, *depart; die.* Cf. abeō and morior.

decem, indecl. num. adj. *ten.*

dē-cernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus (*separate from*), *decide, settle, determine; contend;* **decree.**

dē-cidō, dēcidere, dēcidī, ——[-cadō], *fall down, fall off.*

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. *tenth.*

dē-cipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī, dēceptus, [-capiō], **deceive.**

dē-clārō, dēclārāre, dēclārāvī, dēclārātus [clārus], (*clear off*), *disclose, prove, show,* **declare.**

dē-currō, dēcurrere, dēcucurrī (dēcurrī), dēcursus, *run down.*

dēditīcius, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō], *surrendered.* — Masc. plur. as noun, *prisoners of war, subjects.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, f. [dēdō], *a giving up; surrender.*

dē-dō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, *give up, give away; surrender.*

dē-dūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductus, *lead down, lead off, escort, bring to.*

dē-fendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus [dēfensor], (*strike off from*), **defend**, *protect.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō], **defender**, *protector.*

dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, weary, very tired.*

dē-ficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectus [-faciō], *be wanting, fail, run out.* DEFECT.

dē-fīgō, dēfīgere, dēfīxī, dēfīxus, *fasten, fix; strike motionless, stupefy, astonish.*

Dēianīra, -ae, f. **Deianira**, wife of Hercules.

dē-iciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus [-iaciō], *throw down, let fall;* pass. *slip, stumble.* DEJECTED.

dēiectus, *see* dēiciō.

de-inde, adv., (*from thence*), *then, afterwards, next.*

dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī, dēlectātus, **delight**, *please.*

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *destroy, wipe out.* DELETE.

dē-ligō, dēligāre, dēligāvī, dēligātus, *bind down, fasten, tie.*

dē-ligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus [-legō], *pick out, choose,* **select.**

Delphī, -ōrum, m. **Delphi**, a town in Greece.

Delphicus, -a, -um, adj. *of* **Delphi**, **Delphic.**

dē-migrō, dēmigrāre, dēmigrāvī, dēmigrātus, **migrate** *from; remove, go away.* Cf. abeō and dēcēdō.

dē-mittō, dēmittere, dēmīsī, dēmissus (*send down*), *let down, let go, lose.*

dē-mōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus, *point out, show, describe.* DEMONSTRATE.

dēmum, adv. *at length, at last;* **tum dēmum**, *not till then.*

dēnique, adv. *at last, finally; at least, at any rate.*

dēns, dentis, m. *tooth.* DENTIST.

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj. *thick,* **dense.**

dē-pellō, dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus, *drive out, drive away, remove, banish.*

dē-pōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, *put down, lay aside, abandon.* DEPOSIT.

dēpositus, *see* **dēpōnō**.

dēpulsus, *see* **dēpellō**.

dē-scendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsus, (*climb down*), *come down*, **descend**.

dē-serō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus, *abandon*, **desert**.

dēsertus, *see* **dēserō**.

dē-siliō, dēsilīre, dēsiluī, dēsultus, *jump down, leap down.*

dē-sistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitus, (*stand off* or *apart*), *leave off, cease;* **desist**.

dēspectus, -ūs, m., (*a looking down upon*), *view, prospect;* plur. *heights.*

dē-spērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātus [spēs], *be hopeless*, **despair**.

dē-spoliō, dēspoliāre, dēspoliāvī, dēspoliātus, *rob, deprive*, **despoil**.

dē-sum, dēesse, dēfuī, ——, *be from, be wanting, lack;* with dat. (345.)

dē-trahō, dētrahere, dētrāxī, dētrāctus, *draw off, throw off, remove.* DETRACT.

dē-trectō, dētrectāre, dētrectāvī, dētrectātus [-tractō], *decline, refuse.*

dē-turbō, dēturbāre, dēturbāvī, dēturbātus, (*thrust down*), *upset, drive away, dislodge.*

deus, -ī, m. *god.* (482.)

dē-vorō, dēvorāre, dēvorāvī, dēvorātus, *swallow up*, **devour**, *gulp down.*

dē-voveō, dēvovēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus, *vow, offer*, **devote**.

dexter, -tra, -trum (-era, -erum), adj. *right* (*hand*). DEXTEROUS.

dextra, -ae, f. [dexter], *right hand.*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (imv. **dīc** for **dīce**), *say, tell, speak; appoint.*

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō], *chief magistrate*, **dictator**.

dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor], **dictatorship**.

diēs, -ēī, m. and f. *day.* (275.)

dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [dis-facilis], *hard*, **difficult**. (254.)

difficultās, -ātis, f. [difficilis], **difficulty**.

dignus, -a, -um, adj. *worthy, deserving;* with abl.

dī-laniō, dīlaniāre, dīlaniāvī, dīlaniātus, *tear to pieces.*

dīligenter, adv. [dīligentia], **diligently**, *industriously.*

dīligentia, -ae, f. [dīligenter], **diligence**, *carefulness, industry.*

dīmicō, dīmicāre, dīmicāvī, dīmicātus, *fight, contend.* Cf. **pūgnō**.

dī-mittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, *send off*, **dismiss**; *let slip, let go by.*

dis-, dī- (a prefix denoting separation), *asunder, apart, in different directions.* Cf. **dīmittō**, **discēdō**, **dissimilis**, **dīvellō**.

dis-cēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrus, *depart, withdraw, go off.* Cf. **abeō** and **dēcēdō**.

disciplīna, -ae, f. [discō], *order*, **discipline**.

discō, discere, didicī, discitūrus, *learn.*

discordia, -ae, f. [discordō], *disagreement*, ***discord***.

discordō, discordāre, ——, —— [discordia], *be at variance*, *differ*, *quarrel*.

discrīmen, -inis, n. *risk*, *danger*, *crisis*. Cf. **perīculum**.

dis-cutiō, discutere, discussī, discussus [-quatiō], (*shake apart*), *scatter*, *remove*. DISCUSS.

dis-similis, -e, adj. *unlike*, ***dissimilar***.

dis-tribuō, distribuere, distribuī, distribūtus, *divide*, ***distribute***.

diū, adv. *for a long time*, *long*. (490.)

dī-vellō, dīvellere, dīvellī, dīvolsus, *tear asunder*, *tear apart*.

dīversus, -a, -um, adj., (*turned away*), *separate*, *different*, ***diverse***.

dīves, -itis, adj. *rich*.

dī-vidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, *divide*, *apportion*. DIVISION.

dīvīnus, -a, -um, adj. *of the gods*, *divine*.

dīvitiae, -ārum, f. plur. [dīves], *riches*, *wealth*.

dīvolsus, *see* **dīvellō**.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give*, *offer*; *put*. Cf. **dōnō**.

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *teach*, *show*.

doleō, dolēre, doluī, —— [dolor], *grieve*, *be sorry*.

dolor, -ōris, m. [doleō], *pain*, *grief*. DOLOROUS.

dolus, -ī, m. *deceit*, *trick*, *fraud*, *cunning*.

domina, -ae, f. [dominus], *mistress*, *lady*.

dominus, -ī, m. [domina], *lord*, *master*, *owner*. (109.) DOMINATE.

domus, -ūs, f. *house*, *home*: **domī**, *at home*. (195, *b*, 197, 482.) DOMESTIC.

dōnec, conj. *until*.

dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus [dōnum], *give*, *present*. DONATE. Cf. **dō**.

dōnum, -ī, n. [dō], *gift*, *present*.

dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī (dormiī), dormītus, *sleep*. DORMITORY.

dracō, -ōnis, m. *serpent*, ***dragon***.

dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus [dubius], *hesitate*, ***doubt***.

dubium, dubī, n. [dubius], *doubt*.

dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo], ***doubtful***. DUBIOUS.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (imv. **dūc**, for **dūce**) [dux], *lead*, *draw*; *derive*.

Duīlius (C.), Duīlī, m. ***Caius Duilius***, a Roman general.

dulcis, -e, adj. *sweet*, *pleasant*. DULCET.

dum, conj. *while*, *as long as*; *until*.

duo, duae, duo, num. adj. *two*. (304.) Cf. **ambō**.

duo-decim [-decem], indecl. num. adj. *twelve*.

duo-decimus, num. adj. [duodecim], *twelfth*.

duo-dē-vīgintī, num. adj. *eighteen*.

duplex, -icis, adj. [duo], *twofold*, *double*.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj. *hard*, *rough*, *harsh*, *cruel*.

dux, ducis, m. and f. [dūcō], *leader*, *general*. DUKE. Cf. **imperātor**.

ē, *see* **ex**.

ē-dīcō, ēdīcere, ēdīxī, ēdictus, *declare*, *publish*, *proclaim*. EDICT.

edō, edere, ēdī, ēsus, *eat, devour, consume.* EDIBLE. Cf. **dēvorō**.

ē-dō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus, *put forth, raise, utter.*

ēducō, ēducāre, ēducāvī, ēducātus, *bring up, train,* **educate**.

ē-dūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus, *lead out, lead forth, bring away; draw.*

Edvardus, -ī, m. ***Edward***.

ef-ferō, effere, extulī, ēlātus [ex-], *bear out, carry forth; lift up, raise.* (506.) ELATED.

ef-ficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus [ex-faciō], *bring about,* **effect**, *accomplish.*

ef-flō, efflāre, efflāvī, efflātus [ex-], (*blow out*), *breathe out.*

ef-fundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus [ex-], *pour forth, pour out, shed.*

effūsus, *see* **effundō**. EFFUSION.

ego, pers. pron. *I;* plur. **nōs**, *we.* (492.) EGOTIST.

ē-gredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *go out, go forth:* **in terram ēgressus**, *having gone ashore.* Cf. **exeō**.

ēgregiē, adv. [ēgregius], *remarkably, excellently.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj. *extraordinary, distinguished, excellent.* EGREGIOUS. Cf. **eximius** and **praestāns**.

ēgressus, *see* **ēgredior**.

ēheu, interj. *alas!*

ēlātus, *see* **efferō**.

elephantus, -ī, m. ***elephant***.

ē-ligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus [-legō], *pick out, choose,* **select**. ELECT.

Ēlis, Ēlidis, f. ***Elis***, a division of Greece.

Elisabētha, -ae, f. ***Elizabeth***, a queen of England.

ē-minus, adv. [-manus], *at a distance, afar.* Cf. **comminus**.

ē-mittō, ēmittere, ēmīsī, ēmissus, *send forth, let loose, let out.* EMIT.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy.*

enim, conj. (never the first word), *for; indeed, in fact.* Cf. **nam**.

ēnsis, -is, m. *sword.* Cf. **gladius**.

ēnūntiō, ēnūntiāre, ēnūntiāvī, ēnūntiātus [nūntius], *proclaim, announce, reveal, utter.* ENUNCIATE.

eō, adv. [is], *to that place, thither, there.*

eō, īre, īvī (iī), itūrus, *go.* (507.)

Ēpīrus, -ī, f. ***Epirus***, a division of Greece.

epistula, -ae, f. *letter,* **epistle**.

epulae, -ārum, f. plur. *feast, banquet.*

eques, -itis, m. [equus], *horseman, knight.*

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [eques], (*of horsemen*), ***equestrian***.

equidem, adv. *indeed, certainly, truly.*

equitātus, -ūs, m. [eques], (*body of horsemen*), *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m. *horse.* EQUINE.

ergā, prep. with acc. *towards.*

ē-ripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus [-rapiō], *snatch out, seize:* **sē ēripere**, *escape.*

errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus, *wander,* **err**.

ē-rumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus, *burst forth, break out.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. [ērumpō], (*a bursting forth*), *sally.* ERUPTION.

et, conj. *and, also:* **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.* Cf. **atque**, **āc**, and **-que**.

etiam, adv. and conj. [et-iam], (*and now*), *also, even.* Cf. **quoque**.

Etrūscī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the* ***Etruscans***, people of Etruria, in Italy.

et-sī, conj. *although.*

Eunomus, -ī, m. ***Eunomus.***

Eurōpa, -ae, f. ***Europe.***

Eurystheus, -ī, m. ***Eurystheus***, king of Mycenae, in Greece.

Eurytus, -ī, m. ***Eurytus***, father of Iole.

ē-vādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus, (*go out*), *get away*, *escape.* EVADE.

ē-veniō, ēvenīre, ēvēnī, ēventus, (*come out*), *fall out*, *happen*, *turn out.* Cf. **accidō** and **fīō.**

ēventus, -ūs, m. [ēveniō], (*a happening*), *issue*, *result*, ***event.***

ex (ē), prep. with abl. *out of*, *from*, *of*, *off*, *on ; in accordance with.*

ex-animātus, -a, -um, adj. *breathless*, *out of breath*, *exhausted.*

ex-cipiō, excipere, excēpī, exceptus [-capiō], ***receive***, *welcome*, *entertain ; cut off*, *interrupt.* EXCEPT.

ex-citō, excitāre, excitāvī, excitātus, (*call out*), *rouse*, *arouse*, *wake.* EXCITE.

ex-clāmō, exclāmāre, exclāmāvī, exclāmātus, *cry out*, ***exclaim.***

excursiō, -ōnis, f., (*a running out*), *sally*, *sortie.* EXCURSION.

excussus, *see* **excutiō.**

ex-cutiō, excutere, excussī, excussus [-quatiō], *shake off*, *throw off*, *strike off.*

exemplum, -ī, n. *sample*, ***example***, *warning.*

ex-eō, exīre, exiī, exitus, *go out*, *go forth*, *come out.* (507.) EXIT. Cf. **ēgredior.**

exercitus, -ūs, m., (*the thing trained*), *army.*

eximius, -a, -um, adj. *excellent*, *remarkable.* Cf. **ēgregius.**

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, f. [exīstimō], ***estimate***, *opinion.*

ex-īstimō, exīstimāre, exīstīmāvī, exīstimātus, *think*, *judge*, *consider*, *suppose.* Cf. **arbitror** and **putō.**

exitium, exitī, n. [ex-eō], *ruin*, *destruction.*

ex-orior, exorīrī, exortus sum, *spring up*, *arise*, *appear ; begin.*

ex-ōrō, exōrāre, exōrāvī, exōrātus, *prevail upon*, *persuade*, *induce.*

ex-pellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus, *drive out*, ***expel.*** EXPULSION.

ex-perior, experīrī, expertus sum [-pariō], *try*, *test ;* ***experience.*** Cf. **tentō.**

expertus, *see* **experior.**

ex-petō, expetere, expetīvī (expetiī), expetītus, *seek out*, *demand*, *ask.*

ex-piō, expiāre, expiāvī, expiātus, *make amends for*, ***expiate.***

explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrō], *scout*, *spy.*

ex-plōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī, explōrātus [explōrātor], *examine*, ***explore***, *investigate.*

ex-pōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus, *set forth*, *explain*, *relate ;* ***expose.***

expositus, *see* **expōnō.**

ex-pūgnō, expūgnāre, expūgnāvī, expūgnātus, *take by storm*, *take*, *capture.* Cf. **oppūgnō.**

expulsus, *see* **expellō.**

ex-secror, exsecrārī, exsecrātus sum, *curse*, ***execrate***, *abhor.*

ex-serō, exserere, exseruī, exsertus, *thrust out.*

ex-siliō, exsilīre, exsiluī, ——, *jump forth, dart out.*

exsilium, exsilī, n. [exsul], ***exile.***

ex-spectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātus, *await, wait for, wait,* ***expect.***

ex-spīrō, exspīrāre, exspīrāvī, exspīrātus, *breathe out,* ***expire,*** *die.* Cf. **morior** and **dēcēdō.**

ex-struō, exstruere, exstrūxī, exstrūctus, (*heap up*), *build, erect, construct.*

exsul, -ulis, m. and f. *an* ***exile.***

extemplō, adv. *immediately, forthwith.* Cf. **subitō** and **repente.**

ex-terreō, exterrēre, exterruī, exterritus, *frighten, affright.*

extrā, prep. with acc. *outside of, beyond.*

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. *outermost, last, furthest; end of;* ***extreme.*** (489.)

faber, -brī, *workman, artisan, smith.*

Fabius, Fabī, m., (*Quintus*) ***Fabius*** (*Maximus*), a celebrated Roman consul.

Fabricius, Fabricī, m. ***Fabricius***, a famous Roman general.

fābula, -ae, f. *story, tale,* ***fable.***

facile, adv. [facilis], *easily.*

facilis, -e, adj. [faciō], (*that can be done*), *easy to do, easy.* (254.) FACILITY.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *do, make; form, perform.*

factum, -ī, n. [faciō], *act, deed, action.* FACT.

facultās, -ātis, f. [faciō], *power, opportunity, chance.* FACULTY.

fāma, -ae, f. *rumor, report;* ***fame,*** *renown.*

famēs, -is, f. *hunger,* ***famine.***

familia, -ae, f. *household,* ***family.***

fascis, -is, m. *bundle, load;* plur. *the fasces*, a bundle of rods with an axe, carried by the lictors.

Faustulus, -ī, m. ***Faustulus***, a shepherd.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *be favorable to,* ***favor,*** *befriend;* with dat.

fax, facis, f. *torch, firebrand.*

Februārius, -ī, m. ***February.***

fēlēs, -is, f. *cat.* FELINE.

fēlīciter, adv. [fēlīx], *luckily, fortunately, successfully.*

fēlīx, -īcis, adj. *lucky, fortunate, happy.* FELICITY.

fēmina, -ae, f. *woman.* FEMININE. Cf. **mulier.**

ferē, adv. *nearly, for the most part, almost, about.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, bring; report, say.* (506.) Cf. **portō** and **vehō**; also **tolerō.**

ferōx, -ōcis, adj. *fierce, impetuous.* FEROCIOUS.

ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], *of iron, iron.*

ferrum, -ī, n. *iron; sword.* Cf. **gladius** and **ēnsis.**

ferveō, fervēre, ——, ——, *be hot, glow.* FERVENT.

fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs], *trusty, faithful.* FIDELITY.

fidēs, -eī, f. *trust, confidence.*

fīdus, -a, -um, adj. [fidēs], *trusty, faithful.*

figūra, -ae, f. [fi(n)gō], *shape, form,* ***figure.***

fīlia, -ae, f. [fīlius], *daughter*. (Page 22, note 2.)

fīlius, fīlī, m. [fīlia], *son*. (84, *d*.) FILIAL.

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus, *fashion, devise*. FEIGN. FICTION.

fīnis, -is, m. *end, border*; plur. *territories*. (169, *c*.) FINAL.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj. [fīnis], *bordering upon*; plur. *neighbors*.

fīō, fierī, factus sum (supplies pass. to faciō), *be made, be done, become, happen*. (508.) Cf. accidō and ēveniō.

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj. *strong, firm*.

flagrāns, -antis, adj. *flaming, blazing, burning*. FLAGRANT.

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, *bend, turn*. FLEXIBLE.

flūmen, -inis, n., (*that which flows*), *river, stream*.

fluvius, fluvī, m., (*the flowing thing*), *river, stream*.

foculus, -ī, m. *sacrificial hearth, fire pan, brazier*.

foedus, -a, um, adj. *filthy, foul, horrible*.

foedus, -eris, n. *league, treaty, alliance*. FEDERAL.

folium, folī, n. *leaf*. FOLIAGE.

fōns, fontis, m. *spring, fount, source*.

fore, for futūrum esse.

forma, -ae, f. *form, figure; beauty*.

fors, fortis, f. *chance, luck*.

forte, adv. [fors], *by chance, perhaps*.

fortis, -e, adj. [fortiter], *strong, brave, courageous*. Cf. validus.

fortiter, adv. [fortis], *bravely, courageously*.

fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis], *strength, bravery, endurance; fortitude*.

fortūna, -ae, f. [fors], *fortune, good fortune*.

fossa, -ae, f. *ditch, trench, fosse; canal*.

fragor, -ōris, m. [frangō], *crash*.

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus [fragor], *break in pieces, break*. FRACTURE.

frāter, -tris, m. *brother*. FRATERNAL.

fraus, fraudis, f. *deceit, trickery, crime*. FRAUD.

frequēns, -entis, adj. *crowded, in great numbers*. FREQUENT.

frīgidus, -a, -um, adj. [frīgus], *cold*. FRIGID.

frīgus, -oris, n. [frīgidus], *cold*.

frōns, frondis, f. *leaf, foliage*.

frōns, frontis, f. *forehead, brow*.

frumentum, -ī, n. [fruor], *corn, grain*.

fruor, fruī, frūctus (fruitus) sum [frūmentum], *enjoy*; with abl. (388.)

frūstrā, adv. *in vain*. FRUSTRATE.

fuga, -ae, f. [fugiō], *flight*.

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, —— [fugō, fuga], *run away, flee; flee from*. FUGITIVE.

fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus [fugio, fuga], *put to flight, rout*.

fūmus, -ī, m. *smoke*. FUMES.

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour, pour out*.

fūnis, -is, m. *rope, cord*. (176, *a*.)

furor, -ōris, m. *madness, frenzy, furor*.

fūsus, *see* fundō.

Gāius, Gāī, m. *Caius*, a Roman first name.

Galba, -ae, m. *Galba*.

galea, -ae, f. *helmet.* (Page 89.)

Gallia, -ae, f. ***Gaul.***

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. ***Gallic.***

gallīna, -ae, f. *hen.*

Gallus, -ī, m. *a* ***Gaul.***

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (semi-deponent) [gaudium], *be glad, rejoice.*

gaudium, gaudī, n. [gaudeō], ***joy,*** *gladness.* Cf. laetitia.

gāvīsus, *see* gaudeō.

Gelertus, -ī, m. ***Gelert,*** name of a hound.

geminus, -a, -um, adj. *twin-born, twin-.*

gemitus, -ūs, m. *groan, moan.*

gemma, -ae, f. ***gem,*** *jewel.*

gēns, gentis, f. [genus], *race,* ***tribe,*** *house, family.* GENTEEL.

genus, -eris, n. [gēns], *race, lineage; kind, class.*

Germānus, -ī. m. *a* ***German.***

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *bear, carry on, wage* (war); *manage, do; wear:* sē gerere, *act, behave;* pass. *go on, take place.*

gigās, -antis, m. ***giant.***

gladius, gladī, m. *sword.* (Page 27.) Cf. ēnsis and ferrum.

gracilis, -e, adj. *slender.* (254.)

gradus, -ūs, m. *step; period, stage.* (242.) GRADE.

Graecia, -ae, f. ***Greece.***

Graecus, -ī, m. *a* ***Greek.***

grāmen, -inis, n. *grass.*

grātia, -ae, f. [grātus], *favor, kindness;* plur. *thanks,* ***gratitude.***

grātor, grātārī, grātātus sum [grātus], *give thanks, thank;* with dat.

grātulor, grātulārī, grātulātus sum [grātus], *congratulate.*

grātus, -a, -um, adj. [grātia], *acceptable, pleasing:* ***grateful.***

gravis, -e, adj. [graviter], *heavy, severe, serious.* GRAVE.

graviter, adv. [gravis], *heavily, severely, vehemently, greatly.*

gravō, gravāre, gravāvī, gravātus [gravis], *oppress, burden, overcome.*

gustō, gustāre, gustāvī, gustātus, *taste, eat.*

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *have, hold, keep;* with ōrātiōnem, *make, deliver.*

habilis, -e, adj. [habeō], (*easily handled*), *suitable, fit.*

habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus [frequentative of habeō], *inhabit; dwell, live.* Cf. incolō and vīvō.

haedus, -ī, m. *young goat, kid.*

haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesus, *stick, cling, be fixed; be perplexed, hesitate.* ADHERE.

Hannibal, -alis, m. ***Hannibal,*** a famous Carthaginian general. (Page 97.)

hasta, -ae, f. *spear.* (53.) (Page 43.)

haud, adv. *not.* Cf. nōn.

haud-quāquam, adv. *by no means, not at all.*

hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustus, *drink, drain.* EXHAUST.

herbidus, -a, um, adj. *grassy.*

Herclē, interj. *by Hercules, assuredly, indeed.*

Herculēs, -is, m. ***Hercules,*** son of Jupiter and Alcmena, and god of strength.

Hesperidēs, -um, f. *the Hesperides*, daughters of Hesperus, guardians of the golden apples.

hesternus, -a, -um, adj. *of yesterday*, *yester-*.

hīc, haec, hōc, demon. pron. *this*, *this of mine;* as pers. pron. *he*, *she*, *it.* (200.)

hīc, adv. *here*, *hereupon*.

hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātūrus [hiems], *spend the winter*.

hiems, hiemis, f. [hiemō], *winter; storm*.

hinc, adv. [hīc], *hence*, *from here*.

Hispānia, -ae, f. *Spain*.

Hispānus, -ī, m. *a Spaniard*.

historia, -ae, f. *history*.

ho-diē, adv. [hōc-diē], *to-day*.

homō, -inis, m. and f., (*human being*), *man*. (163.) Cf. **vir**.

honor, ōris, m. *honor*.

honōrificē, adv. [honor], *honorably*, *with marks of honor*.

hōra, -ae, f. *hour:* **in hōrās**, *from hour to hour*, *hourly*.

Horātius, -ī, m. *Horatius* (*Cocles*).

horribilis, -e, adj. *terrible*, *dreadful*, *horrible*. Cf. **terribilis**.

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *urge*, *entreat*, *exhort*.

hortus, -ī, m. *garden*. (84.)

hospitium, hospitī, n. *hospitality*.

hostīlis, -e, adj. [hostis], *of the enemy*, *hostile*. Cf. **īnfēstus**.

hostis, -is, m. and f. *enemy*. (169, 171.) HOSTILE. Cf. **inimīcus**.

hūc, adv. [hīc], *hither*.

hūmānitās, -ātis, f. [hūmānus], *humanity*, *gentleness*, *kindness*, *refinement*.

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. [homō], (*pertaining to man*), *man's*, *human*.

humī, locative, *on the ground*. (195, *b*.)

humilis, -e, adj. *low*, *lowly*, *humble*.

Hydra, -ae, f. [hydrus], *the Hydra*, a water monster killed by Hercules.

hydrus, -ī, m. *water-serpent*, *serpent*, *snake*.

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— [iaciō], (*be thrown*), *lie*, *lie dead*.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus [iaceō], *throw*, *cast*, *hurl*.

iaculum, -ī, n. [iaciō], (*the thing thrown*), *dart*, *javelin*.

iam, adv. *already*, *now*, *at last:* **nōn iam**, *no longer*. Cf. **nunc**.

Iāniculum, -ī, n. *the Janiculum*, one of the hills of Rome.

ibi, adv. [is], *in that place*, *there*.

ictus, -ūs, m. *stroke*, *blow*.

īdem, eadem, idem, demon. pron. [is], *same:* **īdem quī**, *same as*. (329.)

id-eō, adv. *for that reason*, *therefore*.

idōneus, -a, -um, adj. *fit*, *suitable*.

Īdūs, -uum, f. *the Ides*.

igitur, conj. (seldom the first word), *therefore*, *then*. Cf. **itaque**.

īgnis, -is, m. *fire*. (169, *c*.) IGNITE.

īgnōrō, īgnōrāre, īgnōrāvī, īgnōrātus, *not know*, *be ignorant of*. IGNORE.

īgnōtus, -a, -um, adj. [in-(g)nōtus], *unknown*, *unfamiliar*, *strange*.

ille, -a, -ud, demon. pron, *that* (*yonder*); as pers. pron. *he*, *she*, *it*. (200.)

imbēcillis, -e, adj. *weak*, *feeble*.

imbuō, imbuere, imbuī, imbūtus, *wet, moisten, soak.* IMBUE.

īmus, -a, -um, superl. of **īnferus**. (489.)

imitor, imitārī, imitātus sum, *imitate, copy.*

immānitās, -ātis, f. *savageness, cruelty, barbarity.*

im-mineō, imminēre, imminuī, —— [in-], *hang over, impend.* IMMINENT.

im-mittō, immittere, immīsī, immissus [in-], *send against, let fly, let in.*

impediō, impedīre, impedīvī (impediī), impedītus [in-pēs], *entangle, hamper, impede.*

im-pellō, impellere, impulī, impulsus [in-], *move, induce, drive, impel.*

imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō], *commander, general.* EMPEROR.

imperātum, -ī, n. [imperō], *order, command.* Cf. **iūssum.**

imperium, imperī, n. [imperō], *command, rule, power.* EMPIRE.

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus [imperium], *order, command, demand;* with dat. IMPERATIVE. Cf. **iubeō.**

impetus, -ūs, m. *attack, assault.* IMPETUOUS.

impiger, -gra, -grum, adj. [in-piger], (*not slow*), *active, diligent.*

im-pleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus [in-], *fill up, cover, fill.*

im-pōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositus [in-], *put* or *place in* or *upon; mount; impose;* with dat.

impositus, *see* **impōnō.**

improbus, -a, -um, adj., (*not good*), *bad, wicked, shameless.*

impulsus, *see* **impellō.**

in, prep. with acc. *into, to, against, upon, towards, for;* with abl. *in, on, in case of.*

in-, prefix, *into, upon, towards*, etc.; also in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. *un-, in-, not.*

in-calēscō, incalēscere, incaluī, ——, *grow warm, grow hot.*

in-cendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus, *set fire to, burn.* INCENDIARY.

incēnsus, -a, -um, adj. [incendō], *inflamed, hot, fiery.* INCENSE.

inceptus, *see* **incipiō.**

in-certus, -a, -um, adj. *uncertain, doubtful.* Cf. **dubius.**

in-cidō, incidere, incidī, —— [-cadō], *fall into:* **in īnsāniam incidere**, *become insane.*

in-cipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus [-capiō], (*take in hand*), *begin.* INCIPIENT.

in-clāmō, inclāmāre, inclāmāvī, inclāmātus, *cry out; appeal to.*

in-clūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus [-claudō], *shut in, confine.* INCLUDE.

incola, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], *inhabitant.*

in-colō, incolere, incoluī, —— [incola], *dwell in, inhabit; live, dwell.* Cf. **habitō** and **vīvō.**

incolumis, -e, adj. *unharmed, safe,* Cf. **salvus.**

in-crepitō, increpitāre, ——, ——, *upbraid, taunt, abuse.*

inde, adv. [is], *thence, thereupon.*

indicium, indicī, n. *evidence, proof, sign, token.*

in-dīcō, indīcere, indīxī, indictus, *proclaim, declare, appoint.* INDICT.

in-dīligenter, adv. *carelessly, listlessly.*

indolēs, -is, f. *nature, character.*

in-dūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, *lead to, draw to,* ***induce***, *persuade.*

induō, induere, induī, indūtus, *put on, clothe one's self in, clothe, wrap.*

industria, -ae, f. *diligence,* ***industry.***

in-eō, inīre, inīvī (iniī), initus, *go in, enter; begin, form.* (507.)

īn-fāns, -antis, adj., (*not speaking*); as noun, ***infant***, *baby.*

īn-fēlīx, -īcis, adj. *unfortunate, unlucky, unhappy.*

īnferior, -ius, adj. [īnferus], *lower.* (489.) INFERIOR.

īn-ferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus, (*bear in* or *against*), *cause, bring upon, inflict;* with dat. (506.)

īnferus, -a, -um, adj. *low, below, underneath.* (489.)

īnfēstus, -a, -um, adj. *hostile;* as noun, *enemy.* Cf. **hostīlis.**

īn-ficiō, īnficere, īnfēcī, īnfectus [-faciō], *soak, imbue, stain.* INFECT.

īnfula, -ae, f. *fillet* (worn by priests).

ingenium, ingenī, n. ***genius***, *temper, character.*

ingēns, -entis, adj. *huge, great.* Cf. **māgnus.**

in-gredior, ingredī, ingressus sum, *step in, enter.* Cf. **intrō.**

ingressus, *see* **ingredior.**

in-hiō, inhiāre, inhiāvī, inhiātus, *gape at, long for, desire.* Cf. **cupiō.**

in-iciō, inicere, iniēcī, iniectus [-iaciō], *throw upon, cast upon, put upon.*

iniectus, *see* **iniciō.**

in-imīcus, -ī, m. [-amīcus], ***enemy.*** (171.) INIMICAL. Cf. **hostis.**

in-īquus, -a, um, adj. [aequus], ***unequal;*** *uneven, unfavorable.*

initium, initī, n. [ineō], *beginning.* INITIAL.

iniūria, -ae, f. [in-iūs], *wrong, harm, insult,* ***injury.***

in-iūssū, only abl. *without command.*

inluviēs, ——, abl. -ē, f. *dirt, filth.*

inopia, -ae, f. *want, poverty, lack, need.*

inquit (placed after one or more quoted words), *said he.*

in-rīdeō, inrīdēre, inrīsī, inrīsus, *laugh at, mock, ridicule.*

inrīsus, -ūs, m. [inrīdeō], *mockery, derision:* **ab inrīsū**, *in mockery.*

in-rumpō, inrumpere, inrūpī, inruptus, *break into, break in, rush at.* IRRUPTION.

īnsānia, -ae, f. ***insanity***, *madness.*

īn-sīdō, īnsīdere, īnsēdī, īnsessus, *sit upon.*

īn-sīgne, -is, n. [īnsīgnis], *mark,* ***sign***, *symbol,* ***insignia.***

īnsīgnis, -e, adj. [in-sīgnum], (*distinguished by a mark*), *remarkable, conspicuous, prominent.*

īn-siliō, īnsilīre, īnsiluī, ——, *leap upon, throw one's self upon.*

īn-sinuō, īnsinuāre, īnsinuāvī, īnsinuātus, *thrust in, push in.* INSINUATE.

īn-stituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus [-statuō], *set up, fix, arrange.*

īn-stō, īnstāre, īnstitī, īnstātūrus (*stand against*), *press on, pursue.*

īnstrūctus, *see* **īnstruō.**

īnstrūmentum, -ī, n. [īnstruō], *instrument.*

īn-struō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, *build in, form;* ***instruct***, *train; prepare, provide.*

īnsula, -ae, f. *island.* PENINSULA.

īn-sum, inesse, īnfuī, ——, *be in, be among;* with dat. or with **in** and abl. (345.)

intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus [inter-legō], (*choose between*), *learn, know, perceive, understand.* INTELLECT. Cf. **cōgnōscō.**

in-tendō, intendere, intendī, intentus, (*stretch out towards*), *bend, aim.* INTEND.

inter, prep. with acc. *between, among, amid, during, while:* **inter sē**, *together.*

inter-dum, adv. *sometimes.*

inter-eā, adv. *meanwhile.*

interfectus, *see* **interficiō.**

inter-ficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus [-faciō], *kill, slay, put to death.* Cf. **necō** and **occīdō.**

interior, -ius, adj. *inner,* ***interior.*** (489.)

interpres, -etis, m. ***interpreter.***

inter-rumpō, interrumpere, interrūpī, interruptus, *break down.* INTERRUPT.

inter-sum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus, *be among, be present at;* with dat. (345.) Cf. **adsum.**

intrā, prep. with acc. *within.*

intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus, *go into,* ***enter.*** Cf. **ingredior.**

intrō-dūcō, intrōdūcere, intrōdūxī, intrōductus, *lead in,* ***introduce.***

introitus, -ūs, m. [intrō-eō], ***entrance.***

intrō-mittō, intrōmittere, intrōmīsī, intrōmissus, (*let go in*), *let in, admit.*

intus, adv. [in], *within, inside.*

in-undō, inundāre, inundāvī, inundātus, *overflow,* ***inundate***, *cover.*

īn-ūsitātus, -a, -um, adj. *unusual, strange.*

in-vādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus, *come upon, attack,* ***invade***, *take possession of.*

in-veniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus, *come upon, find, discover.* Cf. **reperiō.**

in-vicem, adv. *in turn, mutually.*

in-victus, -a, -um, adj. [-vincō], *unconquered,* ***invincible.***

in-videō, invidēre, invīsī, invīsus [invidia], (*look towards*), *be jealous of,* ***envy.***

invidia, -ae, f. [invideō], ***envy***, *jealousy.*

Iolāus, -ī, m. ***Iolaus***, a friend of Hercules.

Iolē, -ēs, f. ***Iole***, daughter of Eurytus.

Iphiclēs, -is, m. ***Iphicles***, brother of Hercules.

ipse, -a, -um, demon. adj. and pron. *self, very.* (329.)

īra, -ae, f. *anger, wrath,* ***ire.***

īrātus, -a, -um, adj. [īrā], *angry, enraged.* IRATE.

is, ea, id, demon. pron. *that;* as pers. pron. *he, she, it.* (138.)

iste, -a, -ud, demon. pron. *that (of yours)*. (493.)

isthmus, -ī, m. *isthmus*.

ita, adv. *so, thus*. Cf. **sīc** and **tam**.

Ītalia, -ae, f. *Italy*.

ita-que, conj. *and so, therefore*. Cf. igitur.

iter, itineris, n. [eō], *way, journey, march, line of march*. (482.) ITINERANT.

iterum, adv. *a second time, again*. ITERATION.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iūssus, *bid, order, command*. Cf. **imperō**.

iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus [iūs], *judge, decide*.

iūgerum, -ī, n. (gen. plur. iūgerum), *acre, juger*.

iugum, -ī, n. [iungō], *yoke*.

Iūlius, -ī, m. *Julius*, a Roman name.

iūnctus, *see* **iungō**.

iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iūnctus, *unite, join, span, cross*. JUNCTION.

Iūnō, -ōnis, f. *Juno*, queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m. *Jupiter*, the supreme deity of the Romans. (482.)

iurgium, iurgī, n. *quarrel, dispute*.

iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātus [iūs], *swear, take an oath*. ABJURE.

iūs, iūris, n. *right, justice*.

iūssum, -ī, n. [iubeō], *order, command*. Cf. **imperātum**.

iūssus, *see* **iubeō**.

iūstus, -a, -um, adj. [iūs], *just*.

iuvenca, -ae, f. *young cow, heifer*.

iuvenis, -e, adj. *young*; as noun, *young man, youth*. (260.) JUVENILE. Cf. **adulēscēns**.

iuventūs, -ūtis, f. [iuvenis], *body of youth, youth*.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid*.

L., abbreviation for **Lūcius**.

Labiēnus, -ī, m. *Labienus*, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.

labor, -ōris, m. [labōrō], *labor, toil*. Cf. **opus** and **opera**.

labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātus [labor], *work, toil; suffer*. ELABORATE.

lāc, lactis, n. *milk*.

lacrima, -ae, f. *tear*.

lacus, -ūs, m. *lake, pool*.

laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus], *joy, gladness*.

laetus, -a, -um, adj. *glad, merry, pleasant, joyful*.

laeva, -ae, f. *the left hand*.

Laevīnus, -ī, m. *Laevinus*, a Roman consul.

lambō, lambere, ——, ——, *lick, lap*.

lāmenta, -ōrum, n. plur. [lāmentor], *wailing, laments, lamentation*.

lāmentor, lāmentārī, lāmentātus sum [lāmenta], *wail, lament*.

lapis, -idis, m. *stone, milestone*. LAPIDARY.

lateō, latēre, latuī, ——, *lurk, lie hid, be concealed*. LATENT.

Latīnus, -a, -um, adj. *Latin*.

lātrō, lātrāre, lātrāvī, lātrātus, *bark*.

latrō, -ōnis, m. *robber, brigand*.

lātus, -a, -um, adj. *broad, wide*.

laudābilis, -e, adj. [laudō], *praiseworthy, laudable*.

laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus [laus], *praise, laud*.

laus, laudis, f. [laudō], *praise, glory, fame*.

lēctus, *see* legō.

lectus, -ī, m. *bed, couch.*

lēgātus, -ī, m. *ambassador, deputy, lieutenant,* ***legatus.*** LEGATE.

legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō], (*a gathering*), ***legion.***

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather; select; read.*

lēnis, -e, adj. [lēniter], *soft, smooth, gentle, mild.* LENIENT.

lēniter, adv. [lēnis], *gently, moderately.*

leō, -ōnis, m. ***lion.***

Lernaeus, -a, -um, adj. ***Lernaean,*** *of Lerna*, a district near Argos in Greece.

levō, levāre, levāvī, levātus, *lift up, raise.*

libenter, adv. *willingly, gladly.*

liber, -brī, m. *book.*

liber, -era, -erum, adj. *free.* (103.) LIBERAL.

līberālitās, -ātis, f. [līber], *noble disposition, generosity,* ***liberality.***

līberē, adv. [līber], *freely, frankly.*

līberī, -ōrum, m. plur. [līber], *children.*

līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātus [līber], *set free, free,* ***liberate;*** with abl. of separation.

lībertās, -ātis, f. [līber], *freedom,* ***liberty.***

licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est, impers. *it is permitted,* (*one*) *may.*

Lichās, -ae, m. ***Lichas,*** an attendant of Hercules.

līctor, -ōris, m. ***lictor,*** ceremonial attendant of a high officer.

līgnum, -ī, n. *wood; stake, stick.*

līmus, -ī, m. *mud, slime.*

lingua, -ae, f. *tongue,* ***language.***

lītus, -oris, n. *shore.*

locō, locāre, locāvi, locātus [locus], *place, put, set.* LOCATE.

locus, -ī, m. (plur. locī, m., and loca, n.), *place, position, situation; chance, opportunity.* LOCAL.

locūtus, *see* loquor.

longē, adv. [longus], *far, far off.*

longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus], *distant, remote, far away.*

longus, -a, -um, adj. *long, tedious.* LONGITUDE.

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak, talk, say.*

lūbricus, -a, -um, adj. *slippery, slimy, muddy.* LUBRICATE.

lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī, —— [lūx], *shine.*

[lūdicer], -cra, -crum, adj. *serving for sport, sportive.*

lūmen, -inis, n. [lūx], *light.* LUMINOUS.

lūna, -ae, f. [lūx], *moon.* LUNATIC.

lupa, -ae, f. [lupus], *she-wolf.*

lupus, -ī, m. [lupa], *wolf.*

lutum, -ī, n. *mud, mire.*

lūx, lūcis, f. (no gen. plur.) [lūceō], *light.*

māchina, -ae, f. *contrivance,* ***machine,*** *engine.*

māchinātiō, -ōnis, f. [māchina], *contrivance,* ***machine,*** *engine.*

mācte, adj. (voc.), in the phrase **mācte virtūte estō**, *be honored for thy valor! good for your pluck!*

maculō, maculāre, maculāvī, maculātus, *spot, stain, soil.* IMMACULATE.

maestus, -a, -um, adj. *sad.* Cf. **trīstis.**

magis, adv. [māg(nus)], *more, rather.*

magister, -trī, m. [māg(nus)], ***master***, *teacher.*

magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister], *office* (of a magistrate), ***magistracy.***

māgnificus, -a, -um, adj. [māgnus-faciō], *splendid*, ***magnificent.***

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. [māgnus], *greatness, size*, ***magnitude.***

māgnopere, adv. [abl. of māgnum opus], *greatly, exceedingly, heartily.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj. *great, large; loud.* (260.)

māiestās, -ātis, f. [māior], *dignity, honor*, ***majesty.***

māior, -ius, adj. *greater, larger.* (260.) MAJOR.

male, adv. [malus], *badly, ill.* (267.) MALEVOLENT.

male-dīcō, maledīcere, maledīxī, maledictus, *speak ill of, revile, abuse.* MALEDICTION.

mālō, mālle, māluī, ——[magis-volō], *be more willing, prefer, would rather.* (505.)

malum, -ī, n. [malus], *bad thing, evil.*

malus, -a, -um, adj. *bad, evil.* (260.) Cf. **improbus.**

mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus [manus-dō], (*put in hand*), *charge, command, intrust.*

mane, adv. *in the morning.*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *stay, remain, wait.* PERMANENT.

Mānlius, Manlī, m. ***Manlius***, a Roman name.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, f. *clemency, kindness, gentleness.*

manus, -ūs, f. *hand; grappling hook; force, band.* (243, *a.*) MANUAL.

Mārcius, Mārcī, m. ***Marcius***, a Roman name.

Mārcus, -ī, m. ***Marcus***, a Roman first name.

mare, -is, n. (no gen. plur.), *sea.* (482.) MARINE.

marītus, -ī, m. *husband.*

Mārs, Mārtis, m. ***Mars***, the god of war.

Mārtius, Mārtī, m. [Mārs], ***March.***

massa, -ae, f. ***mass***, *lump.*

māter, -tris, f. *mother.* MATERNAL.

mātrimōnium, mātrimōnī, n. [māter], *matrimony, marriage;* in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, *to marry.*

mātūrō, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī, mātūrātus, *hasten.* Cf. **properō** and **contendō.**

māximē, adv. [māximus], *most, especially, greatly.* Cf. **praecipuē.**

māximus, -a, -um, adj. *greatest.* (260.) MAXIMUM.

Māximus, -ī, m. ***Maximus***, surname of Quintus Fabius.

mē, *see* **ego.**

medicus, -ī, m. *doctor, physician.* MEDICINE.

mediocris, -e, adj. [medius], *middling, moderate; a little.* MEDIOCRE.

medius, -a, -um, adj. *middle, middle of:* **in mediō**, *between* (them); **in medium**, *to the centre.* MEDIUM.

melior, -ius, adj. *better.* (260.) AMELIORATE.

membrum, -ī, n. *limb.* MEMBER.

memoria, -ae, f. [memorō], ***memory.***

memorō, memorāre, memorāvī, memorātus [memoria], *mention, relate, state.* COMMEMORATE.

mendācium, mendācī, n. *falsehood, lying.* MENDACIOUS.

mēns, mentis, f. *mind.* Cf. **animus.**

mēnsis, -is, m. *month.*

mercātor, -ōris, m. *trader, merchant.*

Mercurius, Mercurī, m. ***Mercury***, messenger of the gods. (84, *d.*)

mereor, merērī, meritus sum, *deserve, merit.*

mergō, mergere, mersī, mersus, *sink.* MERGE.

meritum, -ī, n. [mereor], *thing deserved, deserts,* ***merit.***

mersus, *see* mergō.

metus, -ūs, m. *fear, dread.*

meus, -a, -um, possess. adj. and pron. *my, mine.* (229.)

micō, micāre, micuī, ——, *quiver; flash, gleam, twinkle.*

mihi, *see* ego.

mīles, -itis, m. *soldier.* MILITARY.

mīlitāris, -e, adj. [mīles], ***military.***

mīlle, num. adj., indecl. in sing.; in plur., **mīlia**, -ium, *thousand;* also (supply **passuum**), ***miles.*** (305, *e.*)

minimē, adv. [minimus], *least, not at all, by no means.*

minimus, -a, -um, adj. *least, very little.* (260.) MINIMUM.

minor, minārī, minātus sum, *threaten.*

minor, -us, adj. *smaller, lesser.* (260.)

Minūcius, Minūcī, m. ***Minucius***, a Roman consul.

mīrābilis, -e, adj. [mīror], *to be wondered at; wonderful, extraordinary.* ADMIRABLE.

mīrāculum, -ī, n. [mīror], *wonder, marvel,* ***miracle.***

mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum [mīrus], *wonder, wonder at,* ***admire.***

mīrus, -a, -um, adj. [mīror], *wonderful, extraordinary.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unhappy,* ***miserable.*** (253.)

miserē, adv. [miser], *wretchedly,* ***miserably.*** (267.)

misericordia, -ae, f. *pity, compassion.*

mītis, -e, adj. *mild, gentle.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send.* MISSION.

modo, adv. [modus], *only.*

modus, -ī, m. *way, manner.* MOOD.

moenia, -ium, n. plur. [mūniō], *walls* (*of a city*). Cf. **mūrus.**

mōlēs, -is, f. *mass, heap.*

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, *remind, advise, warn.* (498.) MONITOR.

mōns, montis, m. ***mountain***, *hill.* Cf. **collis.**

mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus, *show, point out.* DEMONSTRATE.

mōnstrum, -ī, n. ***monster.***

mora, -ae, f. [moror], *delay.*

mordeō, mordēre, momordī, morsus, *bite.* MORSEL.

moribundus, -a, -um, adj. [morior], *dying, at the point of death.*

morior, morī, mortuus sum (fut. part. moritūrus) [mors], *die.*

moror, morārī, morātus sum [mora], *retard, hinder, delay.*

mors, mortis, f. [morior], *death.* MORTAL. Cf. **nex.**

mortifer, -era, -erum, adj. [mors-ferō], *death-dealing, deadly, fatal.*

mortuus, -a, -um, adj. [morior], *dead.*

mōs, mōris, m. *manner, habit, custom.* MORAL.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, ***move***.

mox, adv. *soon, presently*.

Mūcius, -ī, ***Mucius***, a Roman name.

mulier, -eris, f. *woman*. Cf. **fēmina**.

multitūdō, -inis, f. [multus], *great number*, ***multitude***, *quantity*.

multō, adv. [multus], *by much, much*.

multum, adv. [multus], *much*. (267.)

multus, -a, -um, adj. *much;* plur. *many*. (260.)

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī (mūniī), mūnītus [moenia], *fortify, defend*.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. [mūniō], *fortification, defence*. MUNITIONS.

mūnus, -eris, n. *duty, office*.

mūrus, -ī, m. *wall*. Cf. **moenia**.

mūs, mūris, m. *mouse*.

mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus, *change, alter*. MUTATION.

nam, conj. *for*. Cf. **enim**.

namque, conj. *for, inasmuch as*.

nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus, *tell, relate*, ***narrate***.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *be born*.

natō, natāre, natāvī, natātus [frequentative of nō], *swim, float*.

nātū (only abl.) [nāscor], *by birth, in age*. (260.)

nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor], (*birth*), ***nature***, *character*.

nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis], *sailor*. NAUTICAL.

nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis], ***naval***.

nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus [nāvis-agō], *sail, cruise*, ***navigate***.

nāvis, -is, f. (acc. -em, -im; abl. -ī, -e), *ship*. (169, *c*.) NAVAL.

nē, conj. *that not, that; lest;* with hortatory subjunctive, *not:* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*.

-ne, interrog. adv. enclitic. (44, 3.) Cf. **nōnne** and **num**.

nec, *see* **neque**.

necesse, indecl. neut. adj. *unavoidable*, ***necessary***.

necessitās, -ātis, f. [necesse], *need*, ***necessity***.

necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus [nex], *kill, slay*. Cf. **interficiō** and **occīdō**.

negōtium, negōtī, n. [nec-ōtium], *business, labor*. NEGOTIATE.

nēmō, -inī (dat.; no gen. or abl.), m. and f. [nē-homō], *no one, nobody, no man*.

ne-que or **nec**, conj. *and not, nor:* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.

Nerviī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the* ***Nervii***, a tribe of northeastern Gaul.

Nessus, -ī, m. ***Nessus***, a centaur slain by Hercules.

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. *neither* (*of two*). (312.) NEUTRAL.

nex, necis, f. (no gen. plur.) [necō], *death, slaughter, murder*. Cf. **mors**.

nī, conj. *if not, unless*. Cf. **nisi**.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj. *black*. NEGRO.

nihil, n., indecl. *nothing:* **nihil cibī**, *no food*. NIHILIST.

Nīlus, -ī, m. *the* ***Nile***, a river of Egypt.

nimium, adv. *too much*.

ni-si, conj. *if not, unless, except*.

nix, nivis, f. *snow*.

nō, nāre, nāvī, ——, *swim*.

nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō], *well-known, of high birth;* ***noble***.

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *do harm to, hurt, injure;* with dat. NOXIOUS. Cf. **obsum.**

noctū, only abl. [nox], *by night.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— [nē-volō], *be unwilling, will not, not wish.* (505.)

nōmen, -inis, n. [nōscō], (*that by which a thing is known*), *name.* NOMINAL.

nōn, adv. [nē-ūnum], *not:* **nōn iam**, *no longer.* Cf. **haud.**

nōn-dum, adv. *not yet.*

nōn-ne, interrog. adv. suggesting an affirmative answer, *not?* Cf. **-ne** and **num.**

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, adj., (*not none*), *some, several.*

nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj. [novem], *ninth.*

nōs, *see* **ego.**

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn;* perf. *know.*

noster, -tra, -trum, possess. adj. and pron. [nōs], *our, ours:* **nostrī**, *our men.* (229.)

notō, nōtāre, notāvī, notātus, *mark, notice, observe, perceive.* NOTATION.

nōtus, -a, -um, adj. [nōscō], *known.*

novem, indecl. num. adj. *nine.*

novus, -a, -um, adj. *new.* NOVELTY.

nox, noctis, f. *night.* NOCTURNAL.

nūbēs, -is, f. *cloud.* (169.)

nūdus, -a, -um, adj. *stripped, bare, unclothed;* **nude.**

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. [nē-ūllus], *no, none, no one.* (312.) NULLITY.

-num, interrog. adv. suggesting a negative answer; in indir. question, *whether.* Cf. **nōnne** and **-ne.**

numerus, -ī, m. *number.* NUMERAL.

numquam, adv. [nē-umquam], *never.*

nunc, adv. *now.* Cf. **iam.**

nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus [nūntius], *report, announce.*

nūntius, nūntī, m. [nūntiō], *bearer of news, messenger.*

nūper, adv. [for noviper; novus], *recently, lately.*

nympha, -ae, f. *nymph.*

Ō, interj. *O, oh!*

ob, prep. with acc. *on account of.*

ob-iciō, obicere, obiēcī, obiectus [-iaciō], (*throw in the way*), *throw between, interpose.* OBJECT.

obiectus, *see* **obiciō.**

oblātus, *see* **offerō.**

oblītus, -a, -um, adj. [oblīvīscor], *forgetful.*

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *forget.* OBLIVIOUS.

ob-noxius, -a, -um, adj. *liable to, exposed to.*

obscūrō, obscūrāre, obscūrāvī, obscūrātus [obscūrus], *darken, conceal.*

obscūrus, -a, -um, adj. [obscūrō], *dark.* OBSCURE.

ob-serō, obserere, obsēvī, obsitus, (*sow, plant*), *cover, strew, fill.*

obses, -idis, m. and f. [ob-sedeō], (*one who sits or remains as a pledge*), *hostage.*

ob-sideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus [-sedeō], (*sit down against*), *besiege, beset, blockade.* Cf. **oppūgnō.**

obsidiō, -ōnis, f. [obsideō], *siege, blockade.*

obsitus, *see* **obserō.**

ob-struō, obstruere, obstrūxī, obstrūctus, (*build up against*), *block up, bar, barricade*, ***obstruct.***

ob-stupefaciō, obstupefacere, obstupefēcī, obstupefactus, *astonish, amaze, astound.*

ob-stupēscō, obstupēscere, obstupuī, ——, *be astonished, be amazed.*

ob-sum, obesse, obfuī, ——, *be against, be opposed to; injure;* with dat. (345.) Cf. **noceō**.

ob-tineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus [-teneō], (*hold against*), *possess, occupy, hold.* OBTAIN.

ob-truncō, obtruncāre, obtruncāvī, obtruncātus, *cut to pieces, kill, slay, slaughter.* Cf. **occīdō**.

obviam, adv. *in the way:* **obviam fīō**, *meet;* with dat.

occāsiō, -ōnis, f. *chance, opportunity.* OCCASION. Cf. **potestās**.

occāsus, -ūs, m. *setting* (of the sun).

oc-cīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus [ob-caedō], *cut down, slay, kill.* Cf. **interficiō**, **necō**, and **obtruncō**.

occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātus [ob-capiō], *take possession of, seize; occupy.* Cf. **potior**.

oc-currō, occurrere, occurrī, occursus [ob-], *run towards; meet, fall in with.*

ōceanus, -ī, m. ***ocean.***

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj. [octō], *eighth.* OCTAVE.

Octōber, -bris, m. [octō], ***October.***

oculus, -ī, m. *eye.* OCULAR.

ōdī, ōdisse, def. (used only in perf. and pluperf.) [odium], *hate.*

odium, odī, n. [ōdī], *hatred, enmity.* ODIUM.

odor, -ōris, m. *smell, odor.*

Oechalia, -ae, f. ***Oechalia***, a city of Euboea.

Oeneus, -ī, m. ***Oeneus***, father of Deianira.

Oeta, -ae, f. ***Oeta***, a mountain in Greece.

of-fendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus [ob-], *strike against; come upon, find.*

of-ferō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [ob-], *offer, present.*

officīna, -ae, f. *workshop, laboratory.*

ōlim, adv. [olle, old form of ille], (*at that time*); *formerly, once; once upon a time.* Cf. **aliquandō**.

Olympus, -ī, m. ***Olympus***, a mountain in Greece, the abode of the gods.

o-mittō, omittere, omīsī, omissus [ob-], *let go by, disregard, neglect, omit.*

omnīnō, adv. [omnis], *wholly, altogether, entirely.*

omnis, -e, adj. *whole, all, every.* Cf. **tōtus**, **cūnctus**, and **ūniversus**.

onus, -eris, n. *load, burden, bulk, weight.* ONEROUS.

onustus, -a, -um, adj. [onus], *laden, loaded.*

opera, -ae, f. [opus], *labor, care, work.* Cf. **labor** and **opus**.

opīniō, -ōnis, f. *expectation*, ***opinion.***

oportet, oportēre, oportuit (impers.), *it behooves, it is necessary, one ought.*

oppidānus, -ī, m. [oppidum], *townsman.*

oppidum, -ī, n. *town, stronghold.*

op-primō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus [ob-premō], *overcome, crush*, ***oppress.***

op-pūgnō, oppūgnāre, oppūgnāvī, oppūgnātus [ob-], *attack, assault, besiege*. Cf. **expūgnō** and **obsideō**.

[ops], opis, f. *aid, help*. Cf. **auxilium**.

optimus, -a, -um, adj. *best*. (260.) OPTIMIST.

opus, -eris, n. *work, labor*. Cf. **labor**.

ōrāculum, -ī, n. [ōrō], *oracle*.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. [ōrō], *speech, plea; oration*.

ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō], *speaker, orator; ambassador*.

orbis, -is, m. *circle, orb, world:* **orbis terrārum**, *earth, world*.

orbō, orbāre, orbāvī, orbātus, *deprive, bereave*.

ōrdō, -inis, m. *rank, order:* **ex ōrdine**, *in succession, one after another;* **extrā ōrdinem**, *out of the ranks*.

oriēns, -entis, m. [orior], *rising* (sun), *east*. ORIENT.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *arise, spring, descend* (*from*): **ortā lūce**, *at daybreak*.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. [ōrnō], (*that which adorns*), *ornament, jewel*.

ōrnātus, -ūs, m. [ōrnō], *equipment, adornment; dress*.

ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvī, ōrnātus, *adorn, ornament, deck*.

ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus [ōs], (*speak*), *beg, pray, entreat, plead*.

ortus, *see* **orior**.

ōs, ōris, n. (no gen. plur.), *mouth, face*.

os-tendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus [ob(s)-], *stretch out; show, display*. OSTENSIBLE.

ōtium, ōtī, n. *leisure, idleness*.

ovis, -is, f. *sheep*.

ōvum, -ī, n. *egg*. OVAL.

pābulum, -ī, n. [pāscō], *food*.

paene, adv. *nearly, almost*.

paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit (impers.), *it repents;* with gen. and acc.

pallium, pallī, n. *cloak, mantle*.

pālus, -ī, m. *stake, pale*.

palūs, -ūdis, f. *swamp, marsh*.

pār, paris, adj. *equal*. PARITY.

parātus, -a, -um, adj. [parō], *ready, prepared*.

parcō, parcere, pepercī (parsī), parsus, *spare;* with dat. PARSIMONY.

parēns, -entis, m. and f. *parent*.

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, ——, (*come forth, appear*), *be obedient to, obey;* with dat.

pariō, parere, peperī, partus, *bring forth, bear; lay*.

pariter, adv. [par], *equally:* **pariter ac**, *equally with, as well as*.

parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus, *make ready, prepare for, prepare*.

pars, partis, f. *part, share; direction, side*. PARTIAL.

parum, adv. *too little, not enough:* **parum honōrificē**, *disrespectfully*. (490.)

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive of parvus], *very small, slight, insignificant;* masc. plur. as noun, *the little ones, the babies*.

parvus, -a, -um, adj. *small, little*. (260.)

pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed, tend; pasture*.

passus, *see* **patior**.

passus, -ūs, m. [pateō], (*a stretching out of the feet in walking*), *step, pace:* **mīlle passuum**, *mile*.

pāstor, -ōris, m. [pāscor], (*feeder*), *shepherd*. PASTOR.

pate-faciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus [pateō], (*make open*), *open*, *throw open*.

pateō, patēre, patuī, ——, *lie open*, *be open*, *be exposed*.

pater, -tris, m. *father*. (163.)

paternus, -a, -um, adj. [pater], *of a father*, *father's*, *paternal*.

patientia, -ae, f. [patior], *patience*.

patior, patī, passus sum, *bear*, *suffer*, *allow*, *permit*.

patria, -ae, f. [pater], *fatherland*, *native land*, *country*. PATRIOTISM.

patricius, -a, -um, adj. [pater], *patrician*, *noble*.

paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few*, *little*. PAUCITY.

paulō, adv. *by a little*, *little*.

paulum, adv. *a little*, *somewhat*.

pavidus, -a, -um, adj. [pavor], *trembling*, *fearful*, *timid*. Cf. **timidus**.

pavor, -ōris, m. [pavidus], *fear*, *dread*, *alarm*. Cf. **terror**.

pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), *peace*. PACIFY.

peccō, peccāre, peccāvī, peccātus, *make a mistake*, *err*. PECCADILLO. Cf. **errō**.

pectus, -oris, n. *breast*. PECTORAL.

pecūnia, -ae, f. [pecus], *money*. PECUNIARY.

pecus, -oris, n. *cattle*, *flock*.

pedes, -itis, m. [pēs], *foot-soldier*.

peditātus, -ūs, m. [pedes], *infantry*.

pēior, -ius, adj. *worse*. (260.)

pellis, -is, f. *skin*, *hide*. PELT.

pēnsum, -ī, n., (*what is weighed out*, e.g. *wool*, *as a task for spinning*), *task*; *lesson*, *exercise*.

per, prep. with acc. *through*, *by*, *by means of*, *on account of*.

per-agrō, peragrāre, peragrāvī, peragrātus [ager], *wander through*, *pass over*, *traverse*. Cf. **perlūstrō**.

per-cipiō, percipere, percēpī, perceptus [-capiō], *perceive*, *feel*. Cf. **sentiō**.

per-contor, percontārī, percontātus sum, *ask*, *inquire*. Cf. **quaerō**, **rogō**, and **petō**.

percussus, *see* **percutiō**.

per-cutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus [-quatiō], *hit*, *strike*, *run through*.

per-dō, perdere, perdidī, perditus, *lose*. PERDITION. Cf. **āmittō**.

per-dūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus, *lead through*, *conduct*, *bring*.

per-eō, perīre, perīvī (periī), peritūrus, *perish*.

per-ficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus [-faciō], *accomplish*; *perfect*.

perfrāctus, *see* **perfringō**.

per-fringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus [-frangō], *break to pieces*, *shatter*, *completely wreck*.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus [per-regō], *go on*, *proceed*, *hasten*. Cf. **prōcēdō** and **prōgredior**.

perīculum, -ī, n. *trial*, *attempt*; *risk*, *danger*, *peril*.

per-lūstrō, perlūstrāre, perlūstrāvī, perlūstrātus, *wander through*, *view all over*, *examine*, *survey*. Cf. **peragrō**.

per-mittō, permittere, permīsī, permissus, *allow, grant, suffer*, **permit;** *yield, give up;* with dat. PERMISSION.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. *continual, continuous*, **perpetual.**

per-rumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus, *burst through*, *break through.*

per-scrībō, perscrībere, perscrīpsī, perscrīptus, *write at length*, *describe fully.*

perspectus, *see* **perspiciō.**

per-spiciō, perspicere, perspēxī, perspectus, (*see through*), *see clearly*, *ascertain.*

per-suādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus, ***persuade;*** with dat. PERSUASION.

per-terreō, perterrēre, ——, perterritus, *thoroughly frighten*, *alarm.*

pertināciа, -ae, f. *perseverance; obstinacy*, **pertinacity.**

pertrāctus, *see* **pertrahō.**

per-trahō, pertrahere, pertrāxī, pertrāctus, (*drag through*), *drag*, *drag along.*

per-veniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventus, *come up*, *arrive*, *reach.*

pēs, pedis, m. *foot:* **pedem referre**, *retreat, fall back.* PEDAL.

pessimus, -a, -um, adj. *worst.* (260.) PESSIMIST.

petō, petere, petīvī (petiī), petītus, *seek*, *demand*, *ask for*, *ask*, *beg; attack.* PETITION. Cf. **postulō**, **quaerō**, and **rogō.**

pietas, -ātis, f. *filial affection*, *love*, *loyalty.* PIETY.

piger, -gra, -grum, adj. *slow*, *lazy.*

pigritia, -ae, f. [piger], *laziness, sloth.*

pīlum, -ī, n. *javelin.* (Page 27.)

pinguis, -e, adj. *fat*, *heavy.*

pīnus, -ī, f. (abl. pīnū), *pine tree*, **pine.**

pīrāta, -ae, m. *pirate.*

placābilis, -e, adj. *easily pacified*, **placable.**

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus, ***please;*** with dat. PLACID.

plānitiēs, -ēī, f., (*a flatness*), *level ground*, **plain.**

plēbs, plēbis, f. *the common people*, *plebeians.*

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. *full.*

plōrō, plōrāre, plōrāvī, plōrātus, *bewail*, *lament*, *grieve.* DEPLORE.

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. *most*, *very many:* **plūrimum posse**, *be very powerful*, *have most influence.* (260.)

plūs, plūris, adj. *more;* plur. *more*, *many.* (260, 261.) PLURAL.

pōculum, -ī, n. *cup*, *bowl.*

poena, -ae, f. [pūniō], *fine*, *punishment:* **poenās dare**, *suffer punishment.*

Poenus, -ī, m. *a Carthaginian.*

poēta, -ae, m. *poet.*

Polyphēmus, -ī, m. ***Polyphemus***, a Cyclops.

Pompēius, Pompēī, m. ***Pompey***, a famous Roman general.

Pompōnius, Pompōnī, m. ***Pomponius***, a tribune.

pōmum, -ī, n. *apple.*

pondus, -eris, n. *weight*, *bulk.* PONDEROUS.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *put*, *place*, *set*, *set up*, *pitch* (*camp*); pass. *lie.* POSITION.

pōns, pontis, m. *bridge.*

populor, populārī, populātus sum, *lay waste, devastate, plunder, pillage.* DEPOPULATE.

populus, -ī, m. ***people***. POPULOUS.

Porsena, -ae, m. ***Porsena***, a king of Etruria.

porta, -ae, f. *gate, door.* PORTAL.

portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus, *carry, bring.* Cf. **ferō** and **vehō**.

portus, -ūs, m. *harbor*, ***port***. (242, *a*.)

positus, *see* **pōnō**.

possum, posse, potuī, ——, *be able, can:* **plūrimum posse**, *be very powerful, have most influence.* (344, *b*, 503.)

post, prep. with acc. *after, behind;* as adv. *afterwards.*

post-eā, adv. *afterwards.*

[posterus], -a, -um, adj. [post], *following, next.* (489.) POSTERN.

post-quam, conj. *after.*

postrīdiē, adv. [posterō diē], *on the next day.*

postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus, *ask, request, demand.* Cf. **petō**, **quaerō**, and **rogō**.

potestās, -ātis, f. [possum], *power, authority; opportunity, permission.* Cf. **imperium** and **occāsiō**.

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *become master of, get, get possession of;* with gen. or abl. Cf. **occupō**.

prae-acūtus, -a, -um, adj. *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus [prae-habeō], *hold forth, offer, furnish; cause, render.*

prae-caveō, praecavēre, praecāvī, praecautus, *take care, take precautions, be on one's guard.*

prae-cīdō, praecīdere, praecīdī, praecīsus [-caedō], *cut off.* PRECISE.

praecipuē, adv. *chiefly, especially, particularly.* Cf. **māximē**, **praesertim**.

prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj. *very splendid, glorious.*

praeda, -ae, f. [praedor], *booty, spoil, prey.* PREDATORY. Cf. **spolium**.

prae-dicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātus, *make known, proclaim, boast.* PREDICATE.

praedor, praedārī, praedātus sum [praeda], *rob, plunder.*

prae-ferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus, *carry before.* (506.) PREFER.

praelātus, *see* **praeferō**.

praemium, praemī, n. *reward, prize.* PREMIUM.

prae-pōnō, praepōnere, praeposuī, praepositus, *put before, prefer.* PREPOSITION. Cf. **antepōnō**.

praesaepe, -is, n. *stable, stall.*

praesēns, -entis, adj. *instant, immediate,* ***present***.

praesertim, adv. *especially, particularly, chiefly.* Cf. **praecipuē**.

praeses, -idis, m. and f. [praesideō], *protector, guardian.*

prae-sideō, praesidēre, praesēdī, —— [-sedeō], (*sit before*), ***preside*** *over;* with dat. PRESIDENT.

praesidium, praesidī, n. [praesideō], *defence, help, protection, support, guard.* Cf. **auxilium** and **subsidium**.

praestāns, -antis, adj. [praestō], *remarkable, extraordinary, surpassing.* Cf. **ēgregius**.

praestantia, -ae, f. [praestāns], *pre-eminence, superiority.*

prae-stō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus, *stand out, surpass, be superior to, be preferable; perform.* Cf. **superō** and **vincō**.

prae-sum, praeesse, praefuī, ——, *be before, be at the head of, command;* with dat. (345.)

praeter-eā, adv., (*besides this*), *besides, moreover.*

praeter-eō, praeterīre, praeteriī, praeteritus, *go by, pass by.*

praetextus, -a, -um, adj. *bordered:* **toga praetexta**, *toga with purple border*, worn by the higher magistrates and by free-born children.

praetōrium, -ī, n. *general's tent.*

prātum, -ī, n. *meadow.*

prehendō, prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsus, *grasp, seize.*

pretiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [pretium], *costly, valuable, precious.*

pretium, pretī, n. *price, value; reward, ransom.*

[**prex**, precis], f. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty.*

prīmō, adv. [prīmus], *at first, first, in the first place.*

prīmōrēs, -um, m. plur. [prīmus], *the first* (*men*), *leaders, chiefs.*

prīmum, adv. [prīmus], *first, at first.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj. *first, foremost.* (489.) PRIME. PRIMAL.

prīnceps, -cipis, m. [prīmus-capiō], (*taking the first place*), *chief, leader.* PRINCE. Cf. **dux**.

prius, adv. [prior], *before, sooner, previously.*

prius-quam, conj. *sooner than, before.*

prīvātus, -a, -um, adj. [prīvō], *private.*

prīvō, prīvāre, prīvāvī, prīvātus, *deprive;* with abl.

prō, prep. with abl. *before, in behalf of, for, instead of; considering; in accordance with.*

probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus, *prove, approve.*

prō-cēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, ——, *come forward, go forward, advance, proceed.* Cf. **prōgredior** and **pergō**.

procul, adv. *far, afar off.*

prō-currō, prōcurrere, prōcurrī (prōcucurrī), prōcursūrus, *run forward, rush forward.*

prōdigium, prōdigī, n. *sign, omen, prodigy.* PRODIGIOUS.

prōditor, -ōris, m. *betrayer, traitor.*

prō-dūcō, prōdūcere, prōdūxī, prōductus, *lead forth, bring forth.* PRODUCE.

proelium, proelī, n. *battle, combat, skirmish.* Cf. **pūgna**.

profectus, *see* **proficīscor**.

prō-ferō, prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātus, *bring forth.* (506.)

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *set out, march, go.* Cf. **exeō** and **ēgredior**.

prō-fundō, prōfundere, prōfūdī, prōfūsus, *pour out, shed copiously.* PROFUSE.

prō-gredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum [-gradior], *go forward, advance, progress.* Cf. **prōcēdō** and **pergō**.

prōgressus, *see* **prōgredior**.

prōmō, prōmere, prōmpsī, prōmptus [prō-emō], *take out, bring forth.*

prōmontōrium, -ī, n. ***promontory***.

prō-moveō, prōmovēre, prōmōvī, prōmōtus, ***move forward, advance***. PROMOTE.

prope, prep. with acc. *near, near to*; adv. *close at hand, nearly, almost*.

prō-pellō, prōpellere, prōpulī, prōpulsus, *drive forward, drive*. PROPEL.

properē, adv. *hastily, quickly*.

properō, properāre, properāvi, prōperātus, *hasten*. Cf. **mātūrō** and **contendō**.

propior, -ius, adj. [prope], *nearer, close*. (489.)

propius, adv. [prope], *nearer*.

prō-pōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, *put before, set forth; make known, declare, propose*. PROPOSITION.

propter, prep. with acc. *on account of*.

prōstrātus, -a, -um, adj. *thrown down, prostrate*.

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, ——, *be before, be useful to, benefit, avail*; with dat. (345.)

prō-tegō, prōtegere, prōtēxī, prōtēctus, *cover in front, protect*.

prōvectus, *see* **prōvehō**.

prō-vehō, prōvehere, prōvēxī, prōvectus, *carry foward, carry off*; pass. *advance, proceed*.

prō-vocō, prōvocāre, prōvocāvī, prōvocātus, *call forth, challenge, invite*. PROVOKE.

proximus, -a, -um, adj. *nearest, next*, (489.) PROXIMITY.

prūdēns, -entis, adj. [for prōvidēns], *wise, sagacious, knowing, prudent*.

prūdentia, -ae, f. [prūdēns], *foresight, sagacity, wisdom, prudence*.

pūblicē, adv. [pūblicus], *in the name of the state, publicly*.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus], (*pertaining to the people*), ***public***; *see* **rēs**.

pudor, -ōris, m. *shame, cause for shame, disgrace*.

puella, -ae, f. [diminutive of puer], *girl, maiden*.

puer, -erī, m. *boy, child*. (103.) PUERILE.

pūgna, -ae, f. [pūgnō], *battle, contest, fight*. Cf. **proelium**. PUGNACIOUS.

pūgnō, pūgnāre, pūgnāvī, pūgnātus [pūgna], *fight*. Cf. **dīmicō**.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. *beautiful, fair, pretty*.

Pullō, -ōnis, m. ***Pullo***, a centurion.

pulvis, -eris, m. *dust*. PULVERIZE.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. *Carthaginian*.

pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī (pūniī), pūnītus [poena], ***punish***.

purgō, purgāre, purgāvī, purgātus, *clean, cleanse*. PURGE.

pūrus, -a, -um, *clean, clear*, ***pure***.

putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, *think, believe, reckon*. Cf. **arbitror** and **exīstimō**.

putridus, -a, -um, adj. *bad, rotten, decayed*.

Pyrrhus, -ī, m. ***Pyrrhus***, king of Epirus.

Pȳthia, -ae, f. ***Pythia***, the inspired prophetess of Apollo at Delphi.

Q., abbreviation for **Quīntus**.

quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. *fortieth*.

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī (quaesiī), quaesītus, *seek, ask, inquire.* Cf. **petō** and **rogō**.

quam, adv. *than, how.*

quam-quam, conj. *though, although.*

quandō, conj. *when.*

quandō-quidem, conj. *since indeed, since, seeing that.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj. [quam], *how great, how much; as great as, as much as.* QUANTITY.

quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj. [quattuor], *fourth.* QUART.

quārtus decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. *fourteenth.*

qua-si, adv. *as if.*

quatiō, quatere, ——, quassus, (*shake*), *strike.*

quattuor, indecl. num. adj. *four.*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and.* Cf. **et, atque**, and **āc**.

quercus, -ūs, f. *oak tree, oak.*

queror, querī, questus sum, *complain, complain of, bewail.*

questus, -ūs, m. [queror], *complaint, wailing.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron. *who, which, what, that.* (210.)

quia, conj. *because.* Cf. **quod**.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam), indef. pron. *certain, a certain one, a.* (335.)

quidem, adv. (never the first word), *indeed, certainly, in truth:* **nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even.*

quiēs, -ētis, f. [quiētus], *quiet, rest, repose.*

quiētus, -a, -um, adj. [quiēs], *quiet, inactive.*

quīn, conj. [quī-nē], (*why not*), *but that, that.*

quī-nam (quisnam), quaenam, quodnam (quidnam), interrog. pron. and adj. *who? which? what?* (emphatic), *who, pray?* etc.

Quīnctius, Quīnctī, m. *Quinctius*, family name of Cincinnatus.

quīndecim, indecl. num. adj. [quīnque-decem], *fifteen.*

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj. [quīnque], *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. num. adj. *five.* QUINQUENNIAL.

quīntus, -a, -um [quīnque], num. adj. *fifth.*

quippe, adv. and conj. *truly, no doubt; inasmuch as, since.*

quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), interrog. pron. and adj. *who? which? what?* (142.)

quis, qua, quid, indef. pron. after **si, nisi, nē**, and **num**, *any one, anything* (p. 195, note 10).

quisnam, *see* **quīnam**.

quisquam, quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. *any, any one, anything* (*at all*). (335.)

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), indef. pron. *each one, each, every.* (335.)

quī-vīs, quaevīs, quodvīs (quidvīs), indef. pron. *any one, anything* (*you wish*), *any whatever.* (335.)

quō, interrog. and rel. adv. [quī], *whither, where.*

quod, conj. *because, in that.* Cf. **quia**.

quō-modo, interrog. adv. *in what way? how?*

quoque, conj. (after an emphatic word), *also, too.* Cf. **etiam.**

quot, indecl. interrog. and rel. adj. *how many? as many as:* **tot . . . quot**, *as many . . . as.*

quot-annīs, adv. *every year, yearly.*

quotiēs, interrog. and rel. adv. [quot], *how often? as often as.*

quotiēs-cumque, adv. *how often soever; just as often as.*

Racilia, -ae, f. *Racilia*, wife of Cincinnatus.

rāna, -ae, f. *frog.*

rapīna, -ae, f. [rapiō], *robbery, plundering.* RAPINE.

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus, *seize; snatch, drag.*

rarō, adv. *seldom, rarely.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f., (*a reckoning*), *reason, method, plan, way, conduct.* RATIO.

recessus, -ūs, m. *corner, inner room, recess.*

re-cipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus [-capiō], *take back, receive, recover:* **sē recipere**, *withdraw, retreat, betake one's self.*

re-creō, recreāre, recreāvī, recreātus, *refresh, recreate, revive.* RECREATION.

rēctē, adv. [rēctus], *rightly.*

rēctus, -a, -um, adj. [regō], *straight, direct, right.*

re-cumbō, recumbere, recubuī, ——, *lie down, sink down.* RECUMBENT.

re-currō, recurrere, recurrī, ——, (*run back*), *retire, return.* RECUR.

re-cūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus [-causa], *decline, refuse.*

red-dō, reddere, reddidī, redditus [re(d)-], *give back, return, render, make.*

red-eō, redīre, rediī, reditus [re(d)-], *go back, return.* (507.)

redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctus [re(d)-agō], (*drive back*), *reduce, subdue.*

redimō, redimere, redēmī, redēmptus [re(d)-emō], *buy back, purchase, redeem, ransom.*

reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō], *return.*

re-dūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus, *lead back, bring back.* REDUCE.

redux, -ucis, adj. [redūcō], (*led back*), *come back, returned.*

re-ferō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *bring back; return, repay; report, announce:* **pedem referre**, *withdraw, retreat, fall back.* RELATE.

re-ficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectus [-faciō], *make over, repair.*

refrāctus, *see* **refringō.**

re-fringō, refringere, refrēgī, refrāctus [-frangō], *break down, break open.*

re-fugiō, refugere, refūgī, ——, *flee for safety, flee, take to flight.* REFUGE.

rēgīna, -ae, f. [regō], (*the ruling one*), *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, f. *place, region, country.*

rēgius, -a, -um, adj. [rēx], *the king's, of the king, royal.*

rēgnum, -ī, n. [rēx], *kingdom.*

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus [rēx], *rule.*

re-iciō, reicere, reiēcī, reiectus [-iaciō], *throw back, drive back, hurl back.* REJECT.

re-lābor, relābī, relāpsus sum, (*slide back*), *flow back, subside.* RELAPSE.

re-lēgō, relēgāre, relēgāvī, relēgātus, *send away, banish, expel.*

re-linquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus, *leave behind, leave, abandon.* RELINQUISH.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. *remaining, rest of;* as noun, *the rest.* Cf. **cēterī**.

re-mittō, remittere, remīsī, remissus, *send back, give up.* REMIT.

re-moveō, removēre, remōvī, remōtus, (*move back*), **remove.** REMOTE.

re-mūneror, remūnerārī, remūnerātus sum, *repay, reward.* REMUNERATE.

rēmus, -ī, m. *oar.*

Remus, -ī, m. ***Remus***, brother of Romulus.

re-nāscor, renāscī, renātus sum, (*be born again*), *grow again, spring up.*

renātus, *see* **renāscor.**

re-nūntiō, renūntiāre, renūntiāvī, renūntiātus, *report, announce.* RENUNCIATION.

re-pellō, repellere, repulī, repulsus, *drive away, cast down, deprive; repulse, repel.*

repente, adv. *suddenly, unexpectedly.* Cf. **subitō** and **statim.**

repentīnō, adv. [repente], *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

re-periō, reperīre, repperī, repertus [-periō], *find, discover, ascertain.* Cf. **inveniō.**

repertor, -ōris, m. [reperiō], *discoverer, inventor.*

re-pleō, replēre, replēvī, replētus, *fill up again.* REPLETE.

re-pōnō, repōnere, reposuī, repositus, *put away, store, keep.*

re-portō, reportāre, reportāvī, reportātus, *bring back, win, gain.* REPORT. Cf. **referō.**

re-pōscō, repōscere, ——, ——, *demand back, ask for, claim.*

repositus, *see* **repōnō.**

re-prōmittō, reprōmittere, reprōmīsī, reprōmissus, *promise in return.*

repulsus, *see* **repellō.**

rēs, reī, f. *thing, event, circumstance, affair, scheme, cause, matter, fact* (275): **rēs pūblica**, *republic, state, commonwealth;* **quā rē**, *wherefore.*

re-scindō, rescindere, rescidī, rescissus, *cut off, break down, demolish.* RESCIND.

rescissus, *see* **rescindō.**

re-sistō, resistere, restitī, ——, *resist, oppose;* with dat.

re-spergō, respergere, respersī, respersus [-spargō], *bespatter, besprinkle.*

respersus, *see* **respergō.**

re-spondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, (*promise in return*), *answer, reply, respond.*

respōnsum, -ī, n. [respondeō], *reply, response.*

re-stituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus [-statuō], *replace, restore.* RESTITUTION.

re-tineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus [-teneō], *keep back, reserve.* RETAIN.

reversus, *see* **revertor.**

re-vertor, revertī, reversus sum (active in perf., plup., and fut. perf.), *turn back, return.* REVERT.

rēx, rēgis, m. [regō], (*ruler*), *king.* (479, *a.*) REGAL.

Rhea Silvia, -ae, f. *Rhea Silvia*, a priestess of Vesta, and mother of Romulus and Remus.

rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh at, laugh*. RIDE.

rigeō, rigēre, ——, ——, *be numb*. RIGID.

rīma, -ae, f. *crack, chink*.

rīpa, -ae, f. *bank*.

rīvus, -ī, m. *brook*. RIVULET.

rōbur, -oris, n. *oak; strength*. Cf. **vīs**.

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus, *ask, question*. Cf. **quaerō**, **petō**, and **postulō**.

rogus, -ī, m. *funeral pile, pyre*.

Rōma, -ae, f. *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma], *Roman;* masc. as noun, *a Roman*.

Rōmulus, -ī, m. *Romulus*, first king of Rome.

rosa, -ae, f. *rose*.

rudis, -e, adj. *rude, uncultivated, ignorant*.

ruō, ruere, ruī, rutus (ruitus), *hasten, hurry, run, rush*.

rūpēs, -is, f. *steep rock, cliff*. Cf. **saxum**.

rūrsus, adv. [for reversus], (*turned back*), *again*.

rūs, rūris, n. *the country*. (195, *b*, 197.) Cf. **patria** and **terra**.

rūsticus, -a, -um, adj. [rūs], *of the country, rustic, provincial*.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. *the Sabines*, a tribe of Italy.

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj. *sacred*.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. [sacer], *priest, priestess*.

sacrificium, -ī, n. [sacrificō], *sacrifice*.

sacrificō, sacrificāre, sacrificāvī, sacrificātus [sacer-faciō], *sacrifice*.

saepe, adv. *often, frequently*. (490.)

saepiō, saepīre, saepsī, saeptus, (*hedge in*), *surround, fortify, guard*.

saevus, -a, -um, adj. *cruel, savage, fierce*. Cf. **atrōx** and **trux**.

sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow*.

saltō, saltāre, saltāvī, saltātus, *dance*.

saltus, -ūs, m. *forest, glade, thicket*.

salūbris, -e, adj. [salūs], *healthy, wholesome, salutary*.

salūs, -ūtis, f. *safety, welfare; greeting*.

salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātus [salūs], *greet, salute, welcome*. SALUTATORY.

salvus, -a, -um, adj. [salūs], *unhurt, safe, sound*. Cf. **tūtus**.

sanguis, -inis, m. *blood*. Cf. **cruor**.

sapiēns, -entis, adj. *wise, sensible*.

sapienter, adv. [sapiēns], *wisely*.

sapientia, -ae, f. [sapiēns], *wisdom*.

satis, adv. *enough, sufficiently*. SATISFY.

saxum, -ī, n. *stone, rock*. Cf. **rūpēs**.

scelus, -eris, n. *wickedness, crime*.

schola, -ae, f. *school*.

scintillula, -ae, f. *tiny spark*.

sciō, scīre, scīvī (sciī), scītus, *know, know how*. SCIENCE. Cf. **nōscō** and **cōgnōscō**.

Scīpiō, -ōnis, m. *Scipio*, a famous Roman general. (Page 97.)

scīscitor, scīscitārī, scīscitātus sum, *ask, inquire, examine*.

scrība, -ae, m. [scrībō], *writer, clerk, secretary*. SCRIBE.

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*. SCRIPTURE.

scrīptor, -ōris, m. [scrībō], *writer, author.*

scrīptus, *see* scrībō.

scūtum, -ī, n. *shield.* (Page 163.)

sē, **sēsē**, *see* suī.

sectiō, -ōnis, f., (*a cutting*), *sale of confiscated goods, booty.* SECTION.

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], *following, next;* **second.**

sed, conj. *but.* Cf. **autem.**

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus [sēdēs], *sit.* SEDENTARY.

sēdēs, -is, f. [sedeō], *seat, dwelling, perch.*

seditiō, -ōnis, f. [sedeō], *discord, revolt,* **sedition.**

sella, -ae, f. [sedeō], *seat, chair.*

semel, num. adv. *once, once for all.*

semper, adv. *always, ever.*

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [semper], *everlasting.*

senātus, -ūs, m. [senex], *council of elders,* **senate.**

senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex], *old age.*

senex, senis, adj. *old;* as noun, *old man.* (260.) SENILE.

senior, -ōris, m. [senex], *elder.* SENIOR.

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, know* (*by the senses*), *see, perceive.* Cf. **percipiō.**

sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī (sepeliī), sepultus, *bury, inter.*

septem, indecl. num. adj. *seven.*

September, -bris, m. [septem], ***September.***

septen-decim, indecl. num. adj. [septem-decem], *seventeen.*

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [septem], *seventh.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*

sērō, adv. *late, too late.*

serpēns, -entis, m. ***serpent***, *snake.*

servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus], *slavery,* ***servitude.***

servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus, *save, keep, preserve.*

servus, -ī, m. *slave,* ***servant.***

sessor, -ōris, m. [sedeō], *sitter, rider.*

seu, *see* sīve.

sex, indecl. num. adj. *six.*

sextus, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], *sixth.*

Sextus, -ī, m. ***Sextus***, a Roman first name.

sextus decimus, -a, -um, *sixteenth.*

sī, conj. *if, whether.*

sīc, adv. *so, thus, in this way.* Cf. **ita** and **tam.**

siccus, -a, -um, adj. *dry:* **in siccō**, *on dry ground.*

Sicilia, -ae, f. ***Sicily.***

sīgnificātiō, -ōnis, f., (*a pointing out*), *announcement,* ***signal.***

sīgnum, -ī, n. *mark,* ***sign, ensign,*** ***signal.*** (Page 151.)

silentium, silentī, n. ***silence.***

silva, -ae, f. *wood, forest.* SILVAN.

similis, -e, adj. [simul], *like, resembling,* ***similar.*** (254.)

simplex, -icis, adj. ***simple***, *sincere.*

simul, adv. [similis], *at the same time:* **simul ac**, *as soon as.*

simultās, -ātis, f. [similis], *rivalry.*

sine, prep. with abl. *without.*

singulāris, -e, adj. [singulī], *single.* SINGULAR.

singulī, -ae, -a, adj. *one at a time, one on each side,* ***single***, *separate.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. *left* (*hand*). SINISTER.

sitiēns, -entis, adj. *thirsty.*

situs, -a, -um, adj. *placed, set, lying, situated.*

sī-ve (seu), conj. *or if, whether:* **seu . . . seu,** *whether . . . or.*

societās, -ātis, f. [socius], *alliance, association, partnership;* **society.**

socius, socī, m. *comrade, companion, ally.* SOCIAL.

sōl, sōlis, m. (no gen. plur.), *sun.* SOLAR.

soleō, solēre, solitus sum (semi-deponent), *be accustomed, be wont.*

sōlum, adv. [sōlus], *alone, only.*

sōlus, -a, -um, adj. *alone, single;* **sole.**

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *loose, loosen; melt; break; pay.* SOLVE.

somnus, -ī, m. *sleep.* SOMNOLENT.

sonitus, -ūs, m. [sonō], *sound, noise, din, clash.*

sonō, sonāre, sonuī, sonitus, *sound, resound.*

sopor, -ōris, m. *sleep, slumber.*

soror, -ōris, f. *sister.* SOROSIS.

sors, sortis, f. *lot, luck, fortune, fate.*

spatium, spatī, n. *room,* **space,** *distance, time.*

speciēs (-ēī), f. *sight, appearance, pretence.* SPECIES.

spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātus, *look at, behold, witness.* SPECTACLE.

speculor, speculārī, speculātūs sum, *spy out, watch, examine; peep.* SPECULATE.

spēlunca, -ae, f. *cave, cavern, den.*

spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētus, *despise, reject, scorn, spurn.*

spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus [spēs], *hope, hope for.*

spēs, speī, f. [spērō], *hope:* **in spem venīre,** *to entertain hopes.*

splendeō, splendēre, ——, ——, *shine.*

splendidus, -a, -um, adj. [splendeō], *splendid, fine, handsome, magnificent.*

spoliō, spoliāre, spoliāvī, spoliātus [spolium], *rob, plunder,* **spoil,** *despoil.*

spolium, spolī, n. [spoliō], *booty, prey,* **spoil.** Cf. **praeda.**

sponte (suā), only abl. *of (one's own) accord.*

squālor, -ōris, m. *dirt, filth.* SQUALID.

stabulum, -ī, n. [stō], (*standing place*), *stable, stall.*

statim, adv. [stō], (*standing there*), *on the spot, immediately, at once.* Cf. **subitō** and **repente.**

statiō, -ōnis, f. [stō], (*standing place*), *post,* **station.**

statua, -ae, f. [statuō], (*the thing set up*), **statue.**

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus [stō], (*make stand, set up*), *fix, determine, decide.*

statūra, -ae, f. [stō], **stature.**

stella, -ae, f. *star.*

sterilis, -e, adj. *barren,* **sterile.**

stipendium, stipendī, n. *wages, pay; military service.* STIPEND.

stō, stāre, stetī, stātus, *stand.*

stolidē, adv. [stolidus], *stupidly,* **stolidly.**

stolidus, -a, -um, adj. [stolidē], *dull, stupid.*

stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus, *draw tight; draw.* STRINGENT. STRICT.

studium, studī, n. *zeal, eagerness; study.*

stultitia, -ae, f. *foolishness, folly.*

stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, ——, *be astonished, be amazed.*

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus, *advise, urge.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl. *under, up to.*

sub-dō, subdere, subdidī, subditus, *put under, set to.*

sub-eō, subīre, subiī, subitus, *go under, go up to, enter; undergo.* (507.)

sub-iciō, subicere, subiēcī, subiectus [-iaciō], *put under, place under;* with dat. SUBJECT.

sub-igō, subigere, subēgī, subāctus [-agō], *bring under, subdue.*

subitō, adv. *suddenly, unexpectedly.* Cf. **repente** and **statim**.

sub-levō, sublevāre, sublevāvī, sublevātus, *lift up, raise up.*

sublicius, -a, -um, adj. *resting on piles:* **pōns Sublicius**, *the Sublician bridge*, i.e. *the pile bridge.*

sub-mergō, submergere, submersī, submersus, *sink, overwhelm, submerge.*

sub-rīdeō, subrīdēre, subrīsī, ——, *smile.*

subsidium, subsidī, n. *help, aid, relief.* SUBSIDY. Cf. **auxilium** and **praesidium**.

sub-veniō, subvenīre, subvēnī, subventus, (*come to one's relief*), *help, aid, assist.*

suc-cīdō, succīdere, succīdī, succīsus [sub-caedō], (*cut from under*), *cut down, fell.*

succīnctus, *see* **succingō**.

suc-cingō, succingere, succīnxī, succīnctus [sub-], *gird up, put on with a girdle; provide.*

suc-currō, succurrere, succurrī, succursus [sub-], (*run up to*), *help, aid*, **succor**.

sūdor, -ōris, m. *sweat.*

suī, reflex. pron. *of himself* (*herself, itself, themselves*). (492.)

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be, exist.* (502.)

summus, -a, -um, adj. *highest, greatest, extreme.* (489.) SUM. CONSUMMATE.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, take up; assume.*

super, prep. with acc. and abl. *over, above, upon.*

super-adstō, superadstāre, superadstitī, ——, *stand above, appear above.*

super-iaciō, superiacere, superiēcī, superiectus, *throw over, cast upon.*

superiectus, *see* **superiaciō**.

super-incidō, superincidere, ——, ——, *fall upon from above.*

superior, -ius, adj. *higher*, **superior**. (489.)

superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus [super], *pass over; surpass, outdo, overcome, conquer.* Cf. **praestō** and **vincō**.

super-sum, superesse, superfuī, ——, *be over, be left over; survive;* with dat. (345.)

superus, -a, -um, adj. [super], *above.* (489.)

supplex, -icis, adj., (*kneeling in entreaty*), *humble, suppliant;* as noun, *suppliant.*

supplicium, supplicī, n. [supplex], *punishment, torture.*

suprā, adv. [superus], *above, before.*

suprēmus, -a, -um, adj. [superus] *last.* (489.) SUPREME.

sus-cipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus [sub-capiō], *take up, undertake.*

suspīciō, -ōnis, f. [suspicor], *suspicion.*

su-spicor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum [suspiciō], *suspect, mistrust.*

sus-tineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus [sub-teneō], *hold up, bear, endure; support; withstand, sustain.*

suus, -a, -um, possess. and reflex. adj. and pron. [suī], *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.* (229.)

T., abbreviation of **Titus.**

tacitus, -a, -um, adj. *silent.* TACIT.

tālis, -e, adj. *such.*

tam, adv. *so, so much.* Cf. **ita** and **sīc.**

tamen, adv. *yet, but, however, nevertheless.*

tandem, adv. [tam-], (*just so far*), *at length, finally.*

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch.* TANGENT.

tantulus, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive of tantus], *so small.*

tantum, adv. [tantus], *only.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj. *so great, so much, such.*

tarditās, -ātis, f. [tardus], *slowness.*

tardō, tardāre, tardāvī, tardātus [tardus], *delay, hinder.*

tardus, -a, -um, adj. [tardō], *slow, sluggish, tardy.*

Tarentīnus, -a, -um, adj. *of Tarentum*, a city of southern Italy; masc. plur. as noun, *the Tarentines.*

Tarpēius, -a, -um, adj. *Tarpeian.*

Tarquinius, Tarquinī, m. *Tarquin*, name of two kings of Rome.

tēctum, -ī, n. [tegō], *roof, house.*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover, conceal.*

tēlum, -ī, n. *weapon.*

temerē, adv. *rashly, inconsiderately.*

tempestās, -ātis, f. [tempus], *storm, tempest, weather.*

templum, -ī, n. *temple.* (Page 95.)

tempus, -oris, n. *time.* TEMPORAL.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, *hold, keep, have.*

tener, -era, -erum, adj. *soft, delicate, tender.*

tentō, tentāre, tentāvī, tentātus, *try, attempt.* Cf. **experior.**

tergum, -ī, n. *back:* **ā tergō**, *behind, in the rear.*

terō, terere, trīvī, trītus, (*rub, wear away*), *pass, spend, waste.* TRITE.

terra, -ae, f. *earth, land; region.* TERRACE.

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus [terror], *frighten, alarm, terrify.*

terrestris, -e, adj. [terra], *of the land, land.* TERRESTRIAL.

terribilis, -e, adj. [terreō], *dreadful, frightful, terrible.* Cf. **horribilis.**

terror, -ōris, m. [terreō], *terror, alarm, fear.* Cf. **pavor.**

tertium, adv. [tertius], *the third time.*

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], *third.*

tertius decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. *thirteenth.*

thalamum, -ī, n. *chamber.*

Tiberis, -is, m. (acc. -im), *the Tiber*, a river of Italy.

Tīcīnus, -ī, m. *the Ticinus*, a river of Italy.

timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, *fear, be afraid of.* TIMID. Cf. **vereor.**

timidus, -a, -um, adj. [timeō], *faint-hearted, timid.* Cf. **pavidus.**

tintinnābulum, -ī, n. *bell.*

Tīryns, -nthis (-os) (acc. Tīryntha), f. *Tiryns*, a city of Greece.

Titus, -ī, m. *Titus*, a Roman first name.

toga, -ae, f. *toga.*

togātus, -a, -um, adj. [toga], *clad in the toga.*

tolerō, tolerāre, tolerāvī, tolerātus, *bear, endure.* TOLERATE. Cf. **ferō.**

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, *raise, pick up, take.*

Torquātus, -ī, m. [torquis], *Torquatus*, surname of Titus Manlius.

torquis, -is, m. *chain, necklace, collar.*

tōtus, -a, -um, adj. *whole, all, entire.* (312.) TOTAL. Cf. **omnis, ūniversus,** and **cūnctus.**

trabs, trabis, f. *beam, timber, log.*

tractō, tractāre, tractāvī, tractātus [trahō], *handle, feel of.*

trā-dō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus [trāns-], *give over, give up, surrender, deliver:* **trādunt**, *they say.*

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw, drag, lead.* TRACTION.

trā-iciō, trāicere, trāiēcī, trāiectus [trāns-iaciō], *throw across, cross; pierce.*

trā-nō, trānāre, trānāvī, —— [trāns-], *swim across.*

trāns, prep. with acc. *across, beyond, over, the other side of.*

trāns-eō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus, *go over, cross.* (507.) TRANSIT.

trāns-fīgō, trānsfīgere, trānsfīxī, trānsfīxus, *pierce through, stab.* TRANSFIX.

trānsfīxus, *see* **trānsfīgō.**

trāns-fodiō, trānsfodere, trānsfōdī, trānsfossus, *run through, pierce through, stab.*

trāns-fugiō, trānsfugere, trānsfūgī, ——, *go over* (*to the enemy*), *desert.*

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [trēs-centum], *three hundred.*

tre-decim, num. adj. [trēs-decem], *thirteen.*

trepidātiō, -ōnis, f. [trepidō], *confused hurry, alarm, consternation, trepidation.*

trepidō, trepidāre, trepidāvī, trepidātus, *be in alarm, be in confusion.*

trēs, tria, num. adj. *three.* (304.)

tribūnal, -ālis, n. [tribūnus], *judgment seat, tribunal.*

tribūnus, -ī, m. *tribune*, a Roman officer.

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj. [trēs], *thirty.*

trīstis, -e, adj. *sad, gloomy.* Cf. **maestus.**

triumphālis, -e, adj. [triumphus], *triumphal, having enjoyed a triumph.*

triumphō, triumphāre, triumphāvī, triumphātus [triumphus], *celebrate a triumph.*

triumphus, -ī, m. [triumphō], *triumph.*

Trōia, -ae, f. ***Troy***, an ancient city of Asia Minor.

trux, trucis, adj. *wild*, *harsh*, *savage*, *fierce*. Cf. **atrōx** and **saevus**.

tū, pers. pron. *thou*, *you*. (492.)

tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet*. (Page 35.)

tugurium, tugurī, n. *hut*, *cottage*.

tum, adv. *at that time*, *then*.

tumulus, -ī, m. *mound*, *bank of earth*, *dike*.

tunc, adv. [tum], *at that time*, *then*.

turba, -ae, f. [turbō], *crowd*, *throng*.

turbō, turbāre, turbāvī, turbātus [turba], *disturb*, *confuse*, *trouble*.

turbulentus, -a, -um [turba], *stirred up*, *troubled*; *muddy*. TURBULENT.

turpis, -e, adj. *ugly*, *foul*; *base*, *disgraceful*, *shameful*.

turris, -is, f. ***tower***. (479.) TURRET.

tūtēla, -ae, f. *guardianship*, *charge*, *care*. TUTELARY.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. *safe*. Cf. **salvus**.

tuus, -a, -um, possess. adj. and pron. *thy*, *thine*; *your*, *yours* (of only one person). (229.)

ubi, interrog. and rel. adv. *where*, *when*.

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *avenge*.

Ulixēs, -is, m. ***Ulysses***, a Greek hero.

ūllus, -a, -um, adj. [for ūnulus, diminutive of ūnus], *any*, *any one*. (312.)

ultimus, -a, -um, adj. *furthest*, *last*. (489.) ULTIMATE.

umerus, -ī, m. *shoulder*.

umquam, adv. *at any time*, *ever*.

unda, -ae, f. *wave*. UNDULATE.

unde, interrog. and rel. adv. *whence*.

undecim, indecl. num. adj. [ūnus-decem], *eleven*.

undecimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [undecim], *eleventh*.

undēvīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [ūnus-dē-vīgintī], *nineteenth*.

undique, adv. *from all parts*, *on all sides*, *everywhere*.

unguis, -is, m. *nail*, *claw*, *talon*.

ūnicus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus], *only*. UNIQUE.

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus-versus], (*turned into one*), *whole*, *all*, *in a mass*. UNIVERSAL. Cf. **cūnctus**, **omnis**, and **tōtus**.

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj. *one*; *alone*. (304, 312.)

urbs, -is, f. *city*. (169.) SUBURBS.

ūsus, -ūs, m. ***use***, *benefit*, *advantage*.

ut (**utī**), adv. and conj. *how*, *as*, *when*; *that*, *in order that*, *so that*, *to*.

uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron. *which* (*of two*)? **uter . . . utrī**, *which . . . to the other*. (312.)

ūter, -tris, m. *leather bottle*, *skin* (of wine).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. *each* (*of two*), *both*. (312.)

ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor], *useful*, *advantageous*. UTILITY.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, ***use***, *employ*, *enjoy*, *maintain*; with abl. (388.)

uxor, -ōris, f. *wife*.

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. *empty*, ***vacant***, *destitute*.

vāgīna, -ae, f. *sheath*, *scabbard*.

vāgītus, -ūs, m. *a crying*.

vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum, *wander*.

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, *be strong, be in good health:* **valē**, *farewell, good-bye.*

Valerius, Valerī, m. ***Valerius***, a Roman name.

validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], *strong, stout, sturdy.* VALID. Cf. **fortis.**

vāllum, -ī, n. *earthworks, rampart.*

varius, -a, -um, adj. ***various.***

vās, vāsis (plur. **vāsa**, -ōrum), n. ***vase***, *pot.*

vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus [vāstus], *lay* ***waste***, *ravage.*

vāstus, -a, -um, adj. [vāstō], ***waste***, *desolate; immense, huge.*

-ve, conj., enclitic (44, 3), *or.*

vectus, *see* **vehō.**

vehementer, adv. *eagerly, earnestly, very much,* ***vehemently.***

vehō, vehere, vēxī, vectus, *carry, draw, convey;* pass. *ride, sail.* VEHICLE. Cf. **ferō** and **portō.**

vel, conj. [volō], *or:* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.* Cf. **aut.**

vēlō, vēlāre, vēlāvī, vēlātus, *cover, encircle, envelope,* ***veil.***

vēlōcitās, -ātis, f. *swiftness,* ***velocity.***

vel-ut, adv. *just as, as if, like.*

vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnor], *hunter.*

vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditus, *sell,* ***vend.***

venēnum, -ī, n. *poison.* VENOM.

venia, -ae, f. *indulgence, favor.* VENIAL.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus, *come.*

vēnor, vēnārī, vēnātus sum, *hunt, chase.*

venter, -tris, m. *belly, stomach.*

ventus, -ī, m. *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n. *spring.* VERNAL.

verbum, -ī, n. *word.* VERB.

verēcundia, -ae, f. *bashfulness, modesty; reverence.*

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear, reverence, respect.* Cf. **timeō.**

Vergilius, Vergilī, m. ***Vergil***, a famous Roman poet. (Page 125.)

vēritās, -ātis, f. [vērus], *truth,* ***verity.***

vērō, adv. [vērus], *in truth, but.*

versō, versāre, versāvī, versātus [vertō], *turn; deal with.*

versus, *see* **vertō.**

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *turn, change.*

vērus, -a, -um, adj. *true, real.*

vescor, vescī, ——, *eat.* Cf. **edō.**

vesper, -erī, m. *evening, nightfall.*

Vesta, -ae, f. ***Vesta***, a goddess.

vester, -tra, -trum, possess. adj. and pron. *your, yours* (of more than one person). (229.)

vestīmentum, -ī, n. [vestis], *clothing, garment.* VESTMENT.

vestis, -is, f. *garment, robe, clothing.*

Veturia, -ae, f. ***Veturia***, mother of Coriolanus.

vetus, -eris, adj. *old.* (260.) VETERAN. Cf. **antiquus.**

via, -ae, f. *way, road, street; gap.*

viātor, -ōris, m. [via], *traveller.*

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [vīgintī], *twentieth.*

vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj. [vīcus], *near, neighboring;* masc. as noun, *neighbor.* VICINITY.

victor, -ōris, m. [vincō], *conqueror,* ***victor;*** as adj. ***victorious.***

victōria, -ae, f. [victor], ***victory.***

vīcus, -ī, m. *village, district, street.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see, perceive;* pass. *be seen, seem.* VISION.

vigilia, -ae, f. *watch, night watch.*

vīgintī, indecl. num. adj. *twenty.*

vīmen, -inis, n. *pliant twig, withe, osier.*

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind.*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat.* Cf. **superō.**

vinculum, -ī, n. [vinciō], *chain, bond:* **in vincula**, *into prison, in chains.*

vindicō, vindicāre, vindicāvī, vindicātus, *lay claim to, claim, demand.* VINDICATE.

vīnea, -ae, f. *covered shed, movable shelter,* ***vinea.*** (Page 155.)

vīnum, -ī, n. ***wine.***

violentia, -ae, f. *fury,* ***violence.***

vir, virī, m. *man, hero.* (478.) Cf. **homō.**

vireō, virēre, ——, ——, *be green.*

virga, -ae, f. *twig, rod.*

virgō, -inis, f. *maiden,* ***virgin.***

virgula, -ae, f. [virga], *little twig, small rod.*

virtūs, -ūtis, f. [vir], *manliness, courage, bravery;* ***virtue,*** *valor.*

vīs, *see* **volō**, *wish.*

vīs, vīs, f. *strength, power, force, violence.* (482.) Cf. **rōbur.**

vīsus, -ūs, m. [videō], *sight, appearance.*

vīta, -ae, f. [vīvō], *life.* VITAL.

vītis, -is, f. *vine.*

vitium, vitī, n. [vītis], (*a moral twist*), *fault, blemish,* ***vice.*** Cf. **culpa.**

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, ——, *live.* Cf. **habitō** and **incolō.** VIVID.

vix, adv. *hardly, with difficulty.*

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus [vōx], *call.* VOCATION. Cf. **appellō.**

Volcānus, -ī, m. ***Vulcan***, the god of fire.

volnerō, volnerāre, volnerāvī, volnerātus [volnus], *wound, hurt, injure.* VULNERABLE.

volnus, -eris, n. [volnerō], *wound.*

volō, volāre, volāvī, volātūrus, *fly.* VOLATILE.

volō, velle, voluī, ——, *wish, be willing, desire, intend.* (505.)

Volscī, -ōrum, *the* ***Volscians***, a people of Italy.

voltus, -ūs, m. *countenance, looks, features.*

Volumnia, -ae, f. ***Volumnia***, wife of Coriolanus.

voluntās, -ātis, f. [volō], *will, good will, consent.* VOLUNTARY.

voluptās, -ātis, f. [volō], *pleasure, enjoyment.*

Vorēnus, -ī, m. ***Vorenus***, a centurion.

vōx, vōcis, f. [vocō], ***voice,*** *word, remark.* VOCAL.

vulpēs, -is, f. *fox.* VULPINE.

Zama, -ae, f. ***Zama***, a town in Africa.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

For the principal parts of verbs and other details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary or to the special vocabularies. The figures, 1, 2, 3, 4 after verbs indicate the conjugation.

a, an, commonly not translated; quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (335, 496).
about, dē, *with abl.*
about to (love, etc.), *fut. act. part.*
account of (on), *abl. of cause.*
active, impiger, -gra, -grum; ācer, ācris, ācre.
adorn, ōrnō, 1.
advance, prōcēdō, 3.
advise, moneō, 2 (498).
afraid (be), vereor, 2; timeō, 2.
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, *f.*
after, *sometimes implied in participle.*
afterwards, posteā, deinde.
again, rūrsus.
aid, *n.* auxilium, auxilī, *n.*
aid, *v.* iuvō, 1.
air, āēr, āeris (acc. āera), *m.*
alas! ēheu!
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (312).
ally, socius, socī, *m.*
alone, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um (312).
already, iam.
also, quoque.
altar, āra, -ae, *f.*
although, cum, *with subjv.*
always, semper.
among, inter, *with acc.*; in, *with abl.*
Amulius, Amūlius, -ī, *m.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um.
and, et, atque (āc); -que.
anger, īra, -ae, *f.*
animal, animal, -ālis, *n.* (169).
another, alius, -a, -ud (486).
answer, respondeō, 2.
any, any one, any thing, ūllus, -a, -um (312); aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (aliquod) (335); quisquam, ——, quidquam (335); quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs (quodvīs) (335).
approach, adpropinquō, 1.
arm, armō, 1.
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*
art, ars, artis, *f.*
as, cum, *with subjv.*
ask, interrogō, 1; **(for)**, rogō, 1; petō, 3.
assemble, congregō, 1; conveniō, 4.
as to (after *so*, *such*, etc.), ut.
at, in, *with acc. or abl.*; with names of towns, *locative case* (195); *abl. of cause*; *abl. of time.*
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*

at last, iam, tandem.
attack, *n.* impetus, -ūs, *m.*
Augustus, Augustus, -ī, *m.*
away from, ā *or* ab, *with abl.*

bad, malus, -a, -um (260).
battle, pūgna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, -ī, *n*
be, sum (502).
bear, ferō (506); tolerō, 1; sustineō, 2.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod; quia.
become, fīō (508).
before, ante, *with acc.*; prō, *with abl.*
behooves (it), oportet, 2.
benefit, prōsum (504), *with dat.*
between, inter, *with acc.*
beyond, extrā, *with acc.*
bid, iubeō, 2.
bind, vinciō, 4.
bird, avis, -is, *f.* (169, *c*).
black, niger, -gra, -grum.
blame, culpō, 1.
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
bold, audāx, -ācis; fortis, -e.
boldly, cum audāciā.
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
both (each of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque (312); ambō, -ae, -ō; **both . . . and**, et . . . et.
boy, puer, -erī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter; cum virtūte.
bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, portō, 1; ferō (506); **(up)**, ēducō, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
Briton, Britannus, -ī, *m.*
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, *m.*
build, aedificō, 1.
building, aedificium, -ī, *n.*
but, sed; autem; at.
buy, emō, 3.
by, ā, ab, *with abl.*; denoting means or instrument, *abl. alone; sometimes implied in participle.*

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call, appellō, 1; vocō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum (503).
Capua, Capua, -ae, *f.*
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
care for, cūrō, 1.
carefully, cum cūrā.
carry, portō, 1; ferō (506); **carry on war**, bellum gerō.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*
Carthaginian, *n.* Poenus, -ī, *m.*
Carthaginian, *adj.* Pūnicus, -a, -um.
Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, *m.*
cause, praebeō, 2.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
certain (a), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (335).
chance, locus, -ī, *m.*
change, mūtō, 1.
check (hold in), sustineō, 2.
children, puerī, -ōrum, *m.*; līberī, -ōrum, *m.*
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.* and *f.*
city, urbs, -is, *f.*
cloud, nūbēs, -is, *f.*
cold, *adj.* frīgidus, -a, -um.
cold, *n.* frīgus, -oris, *n.*

come, veniō, 4.
coming, *n.* adventus, -ūs, *m.*
command, iubeō, 2, *with acc.*; praesum (504), *with dat.*
common, communis, -e.
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
comrade, socius, socī, *m.*
confidence, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3.
constancy, cōnstantia, -ae, *f.*
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
contend, contendō, 3.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*
country (*fatherland*), patria, -ae, *f.*; (*land*), terra, -ae, *f.*; (*not city*), rūs, rūris, *n.*
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
cover, tegō, 3.
cup, pōculum, -ī, *n.*

dance, saltō, 1.
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
daring, audācia, -ae, *f.*
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.* (page 22, note 2).
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.* and *f.* (275).
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
death (put to), interficiō, 3.
deck, ōrnō, 1.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat, vincō, 3; superō, 1.
defend, dēfendō, 3.
defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.*
delay, mora, -ae, *f.*
delight, dēlectō, 1.
Delphi, Delphī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
deprive, prīvō, 1.
deputy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
design, cōnsilium, consilī, *n.*
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
destroy, dēleō, 2.
die, dēcēdō, 3; morior, 3.
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
diligently, dīligenter; cum dīligentiā.
dismiss, dīmittō, 3.
dismount, dēscendō, 3.
do, faciō, 3; agō, 3; *also as auxiliary*; (not), nōlī, nōlīte.
doctor, medicus, -ī, *m.*
dog, canis, -is, *m.* and *f.*
dove, columba, -ae, *f.*
draw, dūcō, 3; (up), īnstruō, 3.
drive, agitō, 1.
Duilius, Duīlius, Duīlī, *m.*
dwell, habitō, 1.

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (335); (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque (312).
eager, ācer, ācris, ācre.
eagerness, studium, studī, *n.*
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e (254).
elephant, elephantus, -ī, *m.*
eleven, ūndecim.
end, fīnis, -is, *m.* (169, *c*).
endure, tolerō, 1.
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.* and *f.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.* (171).
enjoy, fruor, 3, *with abl.*
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*
even, etiam; ipse (329).
event, rēs, reī, *f.* (275).
every one, quisque, quaeque (335).
everything, omnia, -ium, *n. plur.*

example, exemplum, -ī, *n.*
excel, praestō, 1, *with dat.*
exile, exsilium, exsilī, *n.*

Fabius, Fabius, Fabī, *m.*
Fabricius, Fabricius, Fabricī, *m.*
fact, rēs, reī, *f.* (275).
faithful, fidēlis, -e.
faithfully, fidēliter.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fault, culpa, -ae, *f.*
fear, *v.* timeō, 2; vereor, 2.
February, Februārius, -ī, *m.*
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fierce, asper, -era, -erum.
fifteenth, quīndecimus, -a, -um.
fight, pūgnō, 1; dīmicō, 1.
fighting (there is), pūgnātur.
fill, compleō, 2; impleō, 2.
find, reperiō, 4.
fire, īgnis, -is, *m.* (169, *c*).
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
five, quīnque.
flee, fugiō, 3.
fly, fugiō, 3.
foe, hostis, -is, *m.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
foliage, frōns, frondis, *f.*
follow, sequor, 3.
fond, cupidus, -a, -um.
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*
for, *conj.* nam.
for, *sign of dative; prep.*, dē, prŏ, *with abl.*; (*of time, space, purpose*), in, *with acc.*; ad, *with gerundive*; *with acc. of extent.*
form, faciō, 3.
former, ille, -a, -ud.
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortify, mūniō, 4.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
found, condō, 3.
fourteen, quattuordecim.
free, *adj.* līber, -era, -erum.
free, *v.* līberō, 1.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
frighten, terreō, 2.
from, dē, *with abl.*; **away from**, ā *or* ab, *with abl.*; **out of, from**, ē *or* ex, *with abl.*; *abl. of separation.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um.

Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.*
garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
Gaul (a), Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*
get (possession of), potior, 4, *with abl.* (388).
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, 1; dōnō, 1.
glad, laetus, -ā, -um.
gladly, cum gaudiō.
gladness, gaudium, gaudī, *n.*
go, eō (507); **(off, away)**, dēmigrō, 1; discēdō, 3; abeō.
god, deus, -ī, *m.* (482).
goddess, dea, -ae, *f.* (page 22, note 2)
going to, *fut. act. part.*
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um (260).
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*

great, māgnus, -a, -um (260); ingēns, -entis.
greatest, māximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um (489).
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
greedy, avārus, -a, -um.
grieve, doleō, 2.
ground (on the), humī (*loc.*).

hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
hand to hand, comminus.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*
happen, accidō, 3; fīō (508).
hasten, properō, 1.
have, habeō, 2; sum, *with dat. of possessor.*
he, is (138); hīc (200); ille (200).
head, caput, -itis, *n.* (156).
hear, audiō, 4 (501).
heaven, caelum, -ī, *n.*
helmet, galea, -ae, *f.*
help, *n.* auxilium, auxilī, *n.*
help, *v.* iuvō, 1.
her, ēius (138); huius (200); illīus (200); *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (230, *a*).
here (be), adsum (502).
hesitate, dubitō, 1.
high, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a, -um (489).
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
himself, *see* self.
his, ēius (138); illīus (200); *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (230, *a*).
hold, habeō, 2; teneō, 2; **(in check)**, sustineō, 2.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.* (482); **at home**, domī (195, *b*).
hope, *n.* spēs, -eī, *f.*
hope, *v.* spērō, 1.
Horatius, Horātius, Horātī, *m.*
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.* (242).
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.* and *f.*
hostile, hostīlis, -e.
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.* (482).
how many, quot.
hundred, centum.
hurl, iaciō, 3; coniciō, 3; mittō, 3.

I, ego (492).
if, sī; **if not**, nisi.
imitate, imitor, 1.
in, in, *with abl.; abl. of specification.*
infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.* and *f.*
injure, noceō, 2, *with dat.;* obsum (502), *with dat.*
into, in, *with acc.*
iron, ferreus, -a, -um.
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
it, is (138); hīc (200); ille (200).
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, *f.*
itself, *see* self.

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.* (page 27).
joy, gaudium, gaudī, *n.*
joyful, laetus, -a, -um.
joyfully, cum gaudiō.
jump down, dēsiliō, 4.

keep, habeō, 2; teneō, 2; **(off)**, arceō, 2, *with* ā (ab) *and abl.*
kill, necō, 1; interficiō, 3.
kind, bonus, -a, -um (260).
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, sciō, 4; cōgnōscō, 3.

lack, *n.* inopia, -ae, *f.*
lack, *v.* careō, 2, *with abl.*; dēsum (502), *with dat.*
lady, domina, -ae, *f.*
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
land, terra, -ae, *f.*
large, māgnus, -a, -um (260).
last, proximus, -a, -um (489).
laugh, rīdeō, 2.
lay waste, vāstō, 1.
laziness, pigritia, -ae, *f.*
lazy, piger, -gra, -grum (483).
lead, dūcō, 3; ēdūcō, 3; (**back**), redūcō, 3.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.* and *f.*
leaf, frōns, frondis, *f.*
leap down, dēsiliō, 4.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
lest, nē, *with subjv.*
let, *sign of subjv.* or *imv.*
letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*
liberate, līberō, 1.
lie, **lie down**, iaceō, 2.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
like, similis, -e (254).
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
lion, leō, -ōnis, *m.*
little, parvus, -a, -um (260).
live, vīvō, 3; habitō, 1.
long, longus, -a, -um; **for a long time**, **long**, diū (490).
love, *n.* amor, -ōris, *m.*
love, *v.* amō, 1 (497).
lying, mendācium, mendācī, *n.*

make, faciō, 3; (**ready**), parō, 1.
man, vir, virī, *m.* (478); homō, -inis, *m.* (163).
manage, regō, 3.
many, multī, -ae, -a (260).
March, Mārtius, Mārtī, *m.*
march, *v.* iter faciō (3).
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
master, dominus, -ī, *m.*; magister -trī, *m.* (109).
means (*by means of*), *use abl.*
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, *m.*
merry, laetus, -a, -um.
messenger, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*
mile, mīlle passuum (305, *e*).
mind, animus, ī, *m.*
mine, meus, -a, -um (229).
miserable, miser, -era, -erum.
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*
more, plūs (261); *comp. degree.*
most, *superl. degree.*
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, 2.
much, *adj.* multus, -a, -um (260).
much, *adv.* multum; multō.
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
must, *gerundive with* sum.
my, meus, -a, -um (229).

native country, patria, -ae, *f.*
neither, neque (nec).
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
no, nūllus, -a, -um (312).
nor, neque (nec).
not, nōn; nē.
now, nunc; iam.

O! Ō!
oak, oak tree, quercus, -ūs, *f.*
oar, rēmus, -ī, *m.*
of, *sign of genitive;* dē, *with abl.;* **out of, of,** ē *or* ex, *with abl.; abl. of separation.*
often, saepe (490).
old, antīquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris (260); senex, senis (260, 482); (*having been born*), nātus, -a, -um.
older, māior nātū.
on (*of place*), in, *with abl.;* (*of time*), *abl.*
once (upon a time), ōlim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um (304); **one . . . one thing, another another,** alius aliud; **the one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter.
orator, ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
order, iubeō, 2, *with acc.;* **in order that,** ut, *with subjv.*
other, alius, -a, -ud (486); (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum; **which** (*of two*) **to the other,** uter utrī (or alterī).
ought, dēbeō, 2; oportet, 2; *gerundive with* sum.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
ourselves, *see* self.
out of, ē *or* ex, *with abl.*
overcome, superō, 1; vincō, 3.
own (his, her, their), suus, -a, -um; (**my**), meus, -a, -um; (**our**), noster, -tra, -trum; (**your**), vester, -tra, -trum; (**thy**), tuus, -a, -um (229).
owner, dominus, -ī, *m.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
persuade, persuādeō, 2, *with dat.*
physician, medicus, -ī, *m.*
pine, pine tree, pīnus, -ī (*abl.* pīnū), *f.*
pirate, pīrāta, -ae, *m.*
place, *n.* locus, -ī (*plur.* locī and loca), *m.*
place, *v.* pōnō, 3.
plan, cōnsilium, cōnsilī, *n.*
plead, ōrō, 1.
please, placeō, 2, *with dat.*
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
plenty, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
plough, *n.* arātrum, -ī, *n.*
plough, *v.* arō, 1.
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
Pompey, Pompēius, Pompēī, *m.*
poor, miser, -era, -erum.
position, locus, -ī (*plur.* locī and loca), *m.*
possession of (get), potior, 4, *with abl.*
power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*
praise, laudō, 1.
pray, ōrō, 1.
prefer, mālō (505).
prepare, parō, 1.
present, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
present (be), adsum (502), *with dat.*
preserve, cōnservō, 1.
pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
prove, probō, 1.
prudent, prūdēns, -entis.
Pullo, Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*
punish, pūniō, 4.
purpose (*for the purpose of*), ut *or* quī, *with subjv.;* ad, *with gerund* or *gerundive;* causā, *following a gerund* or *gerundive; supine.*
put, pōnō, 3; (**on**), induō, 3; (**to death**), interficiō, 3; (**to flight**), fugō, 1.

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*

rather, *comp. degree.*
raven, corvus, -ī, *m.*
read, legō, 3.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
receive, capiō, 3 (500); recipiō, 3.
reduce, redigō, 3.
relate, nārrō, 1.
remain, maneō, 2.
remember, memoriā teneō, 2.
remove (*emigrate*), dēmigrō, 1.
resound, sonō, 1.
reverence, vereor, 2.
reward, praemium, praemī, *n.*
right (hand), dexter, -tra, -trum.
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
road, via, -ae, *f.*
rob, spoliō, 1.
robber, latrō, -ōnis, *m.*
robust, validus, -a, -um.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
rough, asper, -era, -erum.
rouse, concitō, 1.
rule, *v.* regō, 3 (499).
rush at, inrumpō, 3.

sad, trīstis, -e.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sagacious, prūdēns, -entis.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake (*for the sake*), causā, *following a gen.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem (493).
save, servō, 1; cōnservō, 1.
say, dīcō, 3.
scare, terreō, 2.
school, schola, -ae, *f.*
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
second, secundus, -a, -um.
see, videō, 2.
seek, petō, 3.
seem, videor, 2.
seize hold of, adprehendō, 3.
self, ipse, -a, -um (329); suī (492).
send, mittō, 3; (**off, away**), dīmittō, 3.
servant, servus, -ī, *m.*
set (**out**), proficīscor, 3; (**free**), līberō, 1; (**up**), īnstituō, 3.
several, plūrēs, -ium (261).
Sextus, Sextus, -ī, *m.*
she, ea (138).
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, *m.*
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
shine, lūceō, 2.
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.* (169, *c*).
shore, lītus, -oris, *n.*
short, brevis, -e.
show, mōnstrō, 1; praebeō, 2.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
silent, tacitus, -a, -um.
since, cum, *with subjv.; sometimes implied in participle.*
sing, cantō, 1.
sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
six, sex.
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
sleep, somnus, -ī, *m.*
small, parvus, -a, -um (260).
snow, nix, nivis, *f.*
so, tam; (**that, as to**), ut; (**as not to**), ut nōn; nē.
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
some, often not expressed; **some . . . others**, aliī . . . aliī.

something, aliquid.
sometimes, interdum.
son, fīlius, fīlī, *m.*
song, cantus, -ūs, *m.*
soon, mox.
sound, sonō, 1.
spare, parcō, 3, *with dat.*
spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*
spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*
spiritedly, ācriter.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
stay, maneō, 2.
steadfastness, cōnstantia, -ae, *f.*
step, gradus, -ūs, *m.* (242).
stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
stranger, advena, -ae, *m.* and *f.*
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strength, rōbur, -oris, *n.*
strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.
study, studium, studī, *n.*
successfully, fēlīciter.
suddenly, subitō.
suffer, tolerō, 1; labōrō, 1.
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
surpass, superō, 1, *with acc.*; praestō, 1, *with dat.*
survive, supersum (502).
swiftness, vēlōcitās, -ātis, *f.*
swim, natō, 1; (**across**), trānō, 1.
sword, gladius, gladī, *m.*

take, capiō, 3 (500).
tall, altus, -a, -um.
task, pēnsum, -ī, *n.*
teach, doceō, 2.
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*
tell, nārrō, 1; dīcō, 3.
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
ten, decem.
tender, tener, -era, -erum.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
terror, terror, -ōris, *m.*
test, experior, 4.
than, quam; *abl.* (250).
that, *conj.: in purpose or result clauses*, ut; *after verbs of fearing*, nē; (**not**), nē; ut nōn; *after verbs of fearing*, ut; *after verbs of saying and the like*, not expressed.
that, *demon. pron.* is, ea, id (138); ille, -a, -ud (200); iste, -a, -ud (493); *rel. pron.* quī, quae, quod (210).
the, not expressed.
their, *gen. plur. of* is; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (229).
then, tum.
there, ibi; as an expletive, not translated.
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*; sometimes omitted.
think, putō, 1; arbitror, 1.
this, is, ea, id (138); hīc, haec, hōc (200).
though, cum, *with subjv.; sometimes implied in participle.*
thousand, mīlle (304).
throw, iaciō, 3; mittō, 3; (**over**), supericiō, 3.
thus, sīc.
Tiber, Tiberis, -is, *m.*
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; spatium, spatī, *n.*
tired, **tired out**, dēfessus, -a, -um.
to, *sign of dative;* ad, in, ***with*** *acc.; expressing purpose*, ut, *with subjv.;* ad, *with gerund* or *gerundive;*

causā, *following a gerund* or *gerundive; supine.*
to-day, hodiē.
too, quoque; *comp. degree.*
touch, tangō, 3.
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
townsman, oppidānus, -ī, *m.*
train, ēducō, 1.
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*
try, tentō, 1; experior, 4.
twenty-eight, duodētrīgintā.
twenty-fourth, vīcēsimus quartus.
twenty-one, vīgintī ūnus.
two, duo, -ae, -o; (**which of**), uter, -tra, -trum; (**each of**), uterque, utraque, utrumque.

under, sub, *with acc.* or *abl.*
unwilling (**be**), nōlō (505).
upon, in, *with acc.* or *abl.*
urge, hortor, 1.
use, ūtor, 3, *with abl.*

various, varius, -a, -um.
very, *superl. degree;* māximē; ipse, -a, -um (329).
Vesta, Vesta, -ae, *f.*
victorious, victor, -ōris, *m.*
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
Vorenus, Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*

wagon, carrus, -ī, *m.*
walk (*take a walk*), ambulō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*
want (*lack*), careō, 2, *with abl.;* dēsum, *with abl.* (502).
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, 2.
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.* (482).
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
welcome, grātus, -a, -um.
well, bene (267).
well-known, *sometimes expressed by* ille.
what, *interrog.* quis (quī), quae, quid (quod) (142).
when, cum; *ablative absolute.*
where, ubi.
whether, num.
which, quī, quae, quod (142); (*of two*), uter, utra, utrum (312).
while, inter, *with gerund; sometimes implied in participle.*
white, albus, -a, -um.
whither, quō.
who, *rel.* quī, quae (210); *interrog.* quis, quae (142).
whole, tōtus, -a, -um (312); omnis, e.
why, cūr.
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*
wise, sapiēns, -entis; prūdēns, -entis.
wisely, sapienter.
wish, volō (505); (**not**), nōlō.
with, cum, *with abl.; sometimes abl. alone.*
within (*into*), in, *with acc.*
without, sine, *with abl.*
withstand, sustineō, 2.
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, -eris, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
work, labōrō, 1.
worse, pēior, -ius (260).

worst, pessimus, -a, -um (260).
wound, *n.* volnus, -eris, *n.*
wound, *v.* volnerō, 1.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scrībō, 3.
writer, scrīptor, -ōris, *m.*

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud.
you, *sing.* tū; *plur.* vōs (492).
your, *sing.* tuus, -a, -um; *plur.* vester, -tra, -trum (229).
yourselves, *see* self.
youth (body of), iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.*

Zama, Zama, -ae, *f.*

INDEX

NOTE. — References are to sections unless otherwise indicated.

A

ā or ab with ablative of agent, 207, *a*, 208.
ā-declension of nouns, 48, 53, 477.
ā-verbs, 59, 60, 497.
ablative case, 46 and *d*.
absolute, 357, 358.
after a comparative, 249, *a*, 250.
of agent, 207, *a*, 208.
of cause, 164, *a*, 165.
of degree of difference, 263, *a*, 264.
of description, 306, *a*, 307.
of manner, 128, *a*, 129.
of means or instrument, 123, *a*, 124.
of place where, 81.
of place whence, 159, 197, 3.
of separation, 231, *a*, 232.
of specification, 372, *b*, 374.
of time, 187, *a*, 188.
with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc., 387, 388.
with *ex*, equivalent of partitive genitive, 256, *b*.
ablative of adjectives of third declension, 182, *b*.
-ābus in dative and ablative of first declension, page 22, note 2.
accent, 44, 1, 2, and 3.
in contracted genitive of nouns in *-ius*, 84, *c*, *d*.
accusative case, 46 and *b* and *c*.
of extent, 277, *a*, 278.
object of transitive verbs, 57.
of place whither, 160, 197, 2.
subject of the infinitive, 318, rule 1.
in indirect discourse, 321–326.
ācer, declension, 182, 484.
comparison, 253.
adjectives, definition, 3.
kinds and definitions, 3, *a–d*.
of first and second declensions, 90, 483.
adjectives of third declension, 182, 484.
of one, two, and three terminations, 182, *a*, *b*, note.
irregular (gen. in *-ius*), 312, 313, 486.
comparison, 246–248, 253, 254, 260, 487, 489.
meaning of comparative and superlative, 255, *a*.
declension of comparatives, 248, 488.
irregular comparison, 254, 260, 489.
comparison by adverbs, 26, *a*, and note.
positive wanting, 262, 489.
interrogative adjectives, 144, *a*, *b*.
possessives, 229; distinction in use between *suus* and *ēius*, 230, *a*; between *tuus* and *vester*, 229, note; omission of *suus*, 230, *b*.
predicate, 100, *a*.
with complementary infinitive, 318, rule 2.
used as nouns, 3, *d*.
in the plural without a noun, page 39, note 1.
with nouns: agreement in gender, number, and case, 92.
adverbs, definition, 5.
kinds and definitions, 5, *a–f*.
formation, 267.
formation of the comparative and superlative, 267, *b*.
comparison, 267 and *b*, 490.
in place of positives of adjectives, 262.
agent, expressed by abl. with *ā* or *ab*, 208.
expressed by the dative with the gerundive, 425, *d*, 426.
ager, declension, 108, 478.
agreement of adjectives, 92.
after complementary infinitive, 318, rule 2.

agreement of appositives, 111.
of predicate nouns, 99.
of relative pronouns, 213, 222, *a*.
aliquis, 335, 496.
alius, declension, 312, 486.
alius . . . alius, 313.
alius . . . aliud, 313.
alphabet, 36.
alter . . . alter, 313.
altior, declension, 248.
altus, comparison, 247.
amāns, declension, 485.
amō, conjugation, 497.
ANECDOTES, 434–438.
animal, declension, 169, 479, *c*.
antecedent, definition, 2, note.
antepenult, 42, 5.
when accented, 44, 2.
appeals, 340 and *a*.
apposition, 110, 111.
article, none in Latin, 50, *a*.
artus, irregular dat. and abl. plural, 242, *a*.
audāx, declension, 182, 484.
comparison, 247.
audiō, conjugation, 501.
avis, 169, *c*.

B

base, 53, *b*.
bonus, declension, 483.
comparison, 260, 489.
bōs, declension, 482.
brevis, declension, 182, 484.
comparison, 247.

C

capiō, conjugation, 500.
caput, declension, 154, 479.
cardinals, definition, 3, *b*.
table of, 491.
indeclinable from *quattuor* to *centum*, 305, *c*.
declension, 304, 305, 486.
case of relative pronouns, 213.
cases, names of English, 24, 1, 2, 3.
names of Latin, 46. See under *nominative*, *genitive*, etc.
general rules for endings, 46, *a–d*.
causal clauses, with *cum*, 396, *a*, 398.
cause, expressed by the ablative, 164, *a*, 165; 357, 358.
characteristic ablative, 306, *a*, 307. See *ablative of description*.
characteristic vowels of the four conjugations, 59.
cīvis, 169, *c*.
clauses, definition and kinds, 20 and *a*, *b*, *c*.
of purpose, with *ut* and *nē*, 283, *a*, 284.
of result, with *ut* and *ut nōn*, 289, *a*, 290.
relative of purpose, 419, 420.
with *cum*, when, 396–398.
commands, 340 and *a*.
comparative, declined, 248, 488; *plūs*, declined, 261.
followed by the ablative, 250.
meaning *too*, 255, *a*.
comparison, definition, 26; of adjectives, 246–248, 253, 254, 260–262, 487; methods in English and in Latin, 26, *a*, and note; irregular, 254, 260–262, 489; six adjectives in *-lis*, 254, 489; positive wanting, 262, 489.
of adverbs, 267 and *b*.
ablative of, 249, *a*, 250.
complement of verb, 15, *a*.
compound tenses often omit *est*, cf. page 190, note 14.
conditional sentences, 403.
simple conditions, 404 and *a*, 405.
doubtful conditions, 404 and *b*, 406.
contrary to fact, 404 and *c*, 407.
conjugation, definition, 27.
in English verb, 27, *a*. See *verbs*.
conjunction, definition, 7.
kinds and definitions, 7, *a*, *b*.
cōnsilium, genitive in *-ī*, 84, *d*.
consonant-i, 37.
consonant stems, pages 60, 64.
consonants, 38.
how pronounced, 41.
contraction in perfect and cognate tenses when *v* is lost, 414, *b*.
in gen. of nouns in *-ium* and *-ius*, 84, *c* and *d*.
coördinate clauses, 20, *c*.
copula, 15, *a*.

cornū, declension, 242, 480.
corpus, declension, 163, 479, *b*.
cum, prep. with abl. of manner, 129.
joined to abl. of personal, relative, and interrogative pronouns, 221, *d*.
cum, conj. in clauses of time, 396, *a*, 397.
causal and concessive, 396, *a*, 398.

D

dative case, 46 and *d*.
of agent, 425, *d*, 426.
with adjectives, 116, *a*, 117.
with compound verbs, 346, *a*, 347.
of indirect object, 79.
of possession, 114, *a*, 115.
of service, 348, 349.
with intransitive verbs, meaning to *believe, favor*, etc., 392, 393.
dea, dat. and abl. plural, page 22, note 2.
declension, definition, 22. See *nouns, adjectives*, and *comparatives*.
degree of difference expressed by the ablative, 263, *a*, 264.
demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, definition, 2, *d*, 3, *c*.
See *pronouns;* also *hīc, īdem, ille, ipse, is, iste*.
dependent clause, 19, note, 20 and *a*.
deponents, see *verbs*.
descriptive abl. and gen., 306, *a*, 307.
deus, declension, 482.
diēs, declension, 275, 481.
gender, 276.
diphthongs, how pronounced, 40.
quantity, 43, 4.
direct statements, 321.
domī as locative, 195, *b*.
domō, used of place whence, 196 and *b*.
domum, used of place whither, 196 and *b*.
domus, declension, 482.
gender, 243, *a*.
construction, 197.
dōnum, declension, 84, 478.
dum with pres. ind., page 172, note 4.
duo, declension, 304, 486.

E

ē-stems (nouns), 275, 481.
ē-verbs, 59, 71.
ē-verbs, conjugation, 498.
ĕ-verbs, 147.
conjugation, 499.
ego, declension, 492.
ēius compared with *suus*, 230, *a*.
enclitics, 44, 3.
eō, 414–416; conjugation, 507.
est often omitted, cf. page 190, note 14.
extent of time or space, how expressed, 277, *a*, 278.

F

Fables, 458–467.
fearing, verbs of, 415, *a*.
feminine gender, rule, 47, 2.
ferō, 414–416; conjugation, 506.
fīlia, declension, page 22, note 2.
fīlius, vocative, 84, *d*, 478, *a*.
declension, 478.
fīnis, 169, *c*.
finite verb, definition, 35.
fīō, 414–416; conjugation, 508.
fruor, followed by the ablative, 388.
fungor, followed by the ablative, 388.
future active participle in place of perfect passive participle in principal parts, page 75, foot-note 1.
future perfect tense, formation of, 192, *a* and *b*.

G

gender, in English and in Latin, 25 and *a*.
general rules for Latin gender, 47, 1 and 2.
in first declension, 54.
in second declension, 85.
in third declension, 173–175.
in fourth declension, 243.
in fifth declension, 276.
genitive case, 46.
descriptive, 306, *a*, 307.
limiting, 68.
partitive, 256, 257.
gerund, a verbal noun, 365.
use, 367 and *a* and *b*.
gerundive, a verbal adjective, 361, 362.
agreement of, 361.
takes the dative of agent, 425, *d*, 426.
used with *ad* to express purpose, 362, 3.
used with *sum* to form the Second Periphrastic Conjugation, 424.

gerundive with *sum* implies necessity, duty, or obligation, 425, *b*.
gradus, declension, 242, 480.

H

hasta, declension, 53, 477.
hīc, declension, 200, 493.
uses, 201, *a–c*.
historical tenses, 296, *a*.
homō declension, 163, 479, *b*.
hortor, conjugation, 509.
hortus, declension, 84, 478.
hostis, declension, 169, 479, *c*
distinguished from *inimīcus*, 171.
humī, as locative, 195, *b*.

I

i, with force of a consonant before a vowel, 37.
i-stems (nouns), 169, 479, *c*.
ī-verbs, conjugation, 501.
īdem, declension, 329, 493.
use, 331, *a*.
Īdūs, gender, 243, *a*.
iēns, declension, 485.
īgnis, 169, *c*, 479, *c*.
ille, declension, 200, 493.
uses, 201, *a–d*.
imperative, formation, 339.
in commands and appeals, 340 and *a*.
impersonal use of verbs, 418 and *b*.
impersonal verb, definition, 4, *f*.
in, with acc. and abl., 77, 81, 127, 160.
indefinite pronouns and adjectives, definition, 2, *e*, 3, *c*. See also *pronouns*.
independent clause, 18, note, 20 and *b*.
indirect discourse, 321–326.
indirect object, definition, 14, note.
case of, 78, 79.
indirect questions, 294, 295.
infinitive, definition and English uses, 32 and *a* and *b*.
formation, 316.
used as subject, 317, *a*.
complementary, 317, *a*.
in indirect discourse, 321, 322.
tenses in indirect discourse, 323–326.
used as in English, 317.
not used to express purpose, 283, *b*.
infinitive, takes a subject accusative, 317, *a*, 318, rule 1.
in compound forms *esse* is often omitted, page 182, note 4.
inflection, definition, 21.
of nouns, 22–25.
of adjectives, 26.
of verbs, 27–31.
inimīcus, distinguished from *hostis*, 171.
instrumental abl., 123, *a*, 124.
īnsum, followed by *in* with abl., 347, *a*.
interjection, definition, 8.
interrogative adjectives, 142–145.
pronouns declined, 142, 495.
table of meanings, 143.
definition, 2, *c*.
intersum, followed by *inter* with acc., 347, *a*.
intransitive verbs, definition, 4, *b*.
followed by dative, 393.
iō, verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation, 157.
conjugation, 500.
ipse, declension, 329, 493.
used for emphasis, 331, *c*.
distinguished from *sē*, 331, *c*.
irregular adjectives (genitive in *-īus*), 312, 486.
comparison: of adjectives, 254, 260, 489; of adverbs, 267.
verbs: *eō*, 414–416, 507; *ferō* and *fīō*, 414–416, 506, 508; *possum* and *prōsum*, 503, 504; *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 391–395, 505.
is, declension, 138, 493.
common uses, 140.
used as an adjective, 140, *a*.
used as a pronoun, 140, *b*.
relation to *hīc* and *ille*, 201, *c*.
table of meanings, 139.
iste, declension, 493.
uses of, 331, *a* and *b*.
iter, declension, 482.
Iuppiter, declension, 482.
iuvenis, comparison, 260, 489.

L

līber, declension, 103, 483.
liquid stems, 163, 479, *b*.

liquids, 38.
locative case, 195, 197.
endings, 195, *a*.
in what words used, 195 and *b*.

M

māgnus, comparison, 260, 489.
mālō, 391–395; conjugation, 505.
malus, comparison, 260, 489.
manner, how expressed, 128, *a*, 129.
manus, gender, 243, *a*.
mare, declension, 482.
masculine, rule of gender, 47, 1.
means, denoted by the abl., 123, *a*, 124.
Mercurius, has vocative in *-ī*, 84, *d*.
mīles, declension, 154, 479.
mīlitiae, as locative, 195, *b*.
mīlle, declension, 304, 486.
use, 305, *e*.
miser, comparison, 253.
moneō, conjugation, 498.
moods, definition, 29–31.
multus, comparison, 260, 489.
mute stems, 154, 479, *a*.
mutes, 38.
followed by a liquid, 43, 6.

N

nāvis, 169, *c*.
nē, *that* (*lest*), 415, *a*.
introducing negative clauses of purpose, 284.
various ways of translating, 283, 288.
as negative of commands and appeals, 340, *a*, 2.
-ne, enclitic, 44, 3, 50, *d*.
neuter, see *nouns*.
nōlō, 391–395; conjugation, 505.
the imperatives *nōlī* and *nōlīte* in negative appeals or commands, 340.
nominative case, 46.
subject of a finite verb, 51.
in the third declension has a different vowel from the stem, 154, *e*.
of pronouns expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 221, *a*.
predicate nominative, 15, *b*.
nōnne, suggests the answer *yes*, 273.
nōs, declension, 492.
nouns, definition, 1.
kinds and definitions, 1, *a–e*.
gender, 47 and 1 and 2.
first declension, 48, 53, 65, 76, 90, 477; second, 84, 90, 103, 108, 478; third, 154, 163, 169, 173–175, 479; fourth, 242, 480; fifth, 275, 481.
predicate nouns, 98, *a*, 99.
rules of gender, 47, 1 and 2, 54, 85, 173–175, 243, 276.
nūbēs, declension, 169, 479, *c*.
num in questions, 273.
number, singular and plural, 23.
numerals, 304, 305, 309, 486.
table of, 491.
definition, 3, *b*.

O

o-stems (second declension), 84, 103, 478.
object, definition, 14.
direct and indirect, 14, note.
of a transitive verb, 57.
indirect object, 79.
ordinals, definition, 3, *b*.
table, 491.
declined like *bonus*, 491.

P

participles, definition and uses in English, 34 and *a* and *b*.
agreement, 235, *a*, note, 352, *b*, *c*.
declension, 352, *b*, 485.
equivalents in English, 353 and *a*.
time denoted by, 353, *a*.
future, used with *sum* to form the periphrastic conjugations, 424, 425.
have no perfect active, 357, *c*.
in deponent verbs, 386, *c*.
perfect of, in deponent verbs, 386, *d*.
often best rendered as clause, 353, *a*.
tenses of, relative to main verb, 353, *a*.
partitive genitive, 257.
parvus, comparison, 260, 489.
passive, compound forms, 235, *a*, and note.
formation, 205, *a* and *b*.
the agent expressed by the abl. with *ā* or *ab*, 208.
pater, declension, 163, 479, *b*.

penult, 42, 5.
when accented, 44, 2.
perfect tense, loss of *v* in, when contraction may take place, 414, *b*.
See also *participles*.
periphrastic conjugations, 424–428.
synopsis of, 510, 511.
person, distinction between first, second, and third, 2, *a*.
of relative pronouns, 222, *a*.
personal pronouns, see *pronouns*.
phrase, definition and kinds, 16.
piger, declension, 108, 483.
place, where, whither, whence, with names of towns, 197.
with places other than names of towns, 81, 159, 160.
pluperfect tense, formation of, 192, *a* and *b*.
plūs, declension, 261.
portus, irregular dat. and abl. plur., 242, *a*.
possessive adjectives, see *adjectives*.
possum, how compounded, 344, *b*.
conjugation, 503.
postquam, with perfect tense, page 175, note 6.
potior, conjugation, 509.
governs the ablative, 388.
predicate, definition, 11 and *b*.
simple, 12.
complete, 13.
predicate adjectives, 100, *a*.
definition of, 15.
predicate nominative, 15, *b*.
predicate nouns (nominative), 98, *a*, 99.
definition of, 15.
prepositions, definition, 6.
principal parts of verbs, 131 and *a*.
principal tenses, 296, *a*.
pronouns, definition, 2.
kinds and definitions, 2, *a–f*.
demonstrative, definition, 2, *d*; full declension, 493; *hīc* and *ille*, declension, 200; uses, 201, *a–d*; *is*, 138, 139; uses, 140, *a*, *b*; relation to *hīc* and *ille*, 201, *c*; *iste*, *īdem*, *ipse*, 329, 330; uses, 331, *a–c*.
indefinite, definition, 2, *e*; *aliquis* and *quīdam*, 335, *b*, 496; *quisquam*, *quīvīs*, *quisque*, 335, *c*; *quid*-forms used as pronouns, *quod*-forms as adjectives, 335, *d*.
interrogative, definition, 2, *c*; declension, 142, 495; followed by *cum*, 221, *d*.
personal, definition, 2, *a*; declension, 492; nominative expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 221, *a*; third person sometimes supplied by *is*, *hīc*, or *ille*, 220, *b*; used with a reflexive sense, 221, *c*; followed by *cum*, 221, *d*.
possessive, see *possessive adjectives*.
reflexive, definition, 2, *f*; use, 220, *b*; of first and second person, 221, *c*.
relative, definition, 2, *b*; agreement, 212, *a*, 213, 222, *a*; declension, 210, 494; table of meanings, 211; followed by *cum*, 221, *d*.
pronunciation, Roman method, sounds of the letters, 39–41.
proper names in *-ius* contract *iī* to *ī*, 84, *d*.
prōsum, how compounded, 344, *c*.
conjugation, 504.
puer, declension, 103, 478.
purpose clauses, expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē*, 283, *a*, *b* 284, 288.
accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad*, 362, *b*, 367, *b*.
dative of service, 348, 349.
relative clauses, 419, 420.
supine in *-um*, 372, *a*, 373.
not expressed by the infinitive, 283, *b*.
review of expressions of purpose, 429.

Q

quam with a comparative, 249, 250.
-que, enclitic, 44, 3.
questions, indirect, 294–296.
quī, 210–213.
declension, 210, 494.
quīdam, 335, *b*; declension, 496.
quis, 142–144.
declension, 142, 495.

quis, after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, page 195, note 10.
quisquam, 335, *c*.
quisque, 335, *c*.
quīvīs, 335, *c*.
quod, used for *quid* as an interrogative adjective, 144, *b*.

R

reflexive pronouns, see *pronouns*.
regō, 147; conjugation, 499.
relative pronouns, see *pronouns*.
clauses of purpose, 419, 420.
rēs, declension, 275, 481.
result, expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn*, 289, 290.
rēx, declension, 154, 479.
Roman method of pronouncing Latin, 39–41.
rūrī, as locative, 195, *b*.
rūs, the accusative of, 196, 2.
like names of towns, 196 and *b*, 197.

S

sē, distinguished from *ipse*, 331, *c*.
senex, comparison, 260, 489.
sentence, definition, 9.
kinds and definitions, 10, 17–19.
parts, 11–16, 20 and *a*, *b*, and *c*.
separation, how expressed, 231, 232.
sequence of tenses, 296, *a*, 297.
sequor, conjugation, 509.
service, dative of, 348, 349.
sibilant, 38.
space, extent of, 277, 278.
specification, ablative of, 372, *b*, 374.
stem of a word, defined, page 22, note 1.
of nouns of the first declension, page 22.
of nouns of the second declension, page 32.
of nouns of the third declension, page 60; how found, 154, *c*, 169, *d*; the last vowel changed to form the nominative, 154, *e*; mute, 154; liquid, 163; *i*-stems, 169, 170.
of nouns of the fourth declension, page 98.
of nouns of the fifth declension, page 110.
stem of verbs, 59.
perfect participle stem in principal parts of verbs, 131.
perfect stem of verbs, 131, *b*, 136, *a*, 185, *b*, and note.
of adjectives of the third declension, page 72.
Stories of Hercules, 439–449.
Stories of Ulysses, 450–457.
Stories from Roman History, 468–475.
Story of the Aduatuci, 476.
subject, definition, 11 and *a*.
simple, 12.
complete, 13.
agreement of verb with, 61.
of a verb, 51.
of an infinitive, 317, *a*, 318.
not expressed, 61, *a*, *b*.
subjunctive, in commands and appeals, hortatory, 340 and *a*; also page 184, note 2.
with *cum* temporal, causal, and concessive, 396–398.
imperfect subjunctive denoting present time, and pluperfect, past time, 404, *d*.
sequence of tenses in, 296, 297 and *a*.
formation of present, 281, 282; of imperfect, 287; of perfect and pluperfect, 293.
present tense translated as future, 415, *b*.
of purpose, 283, 284, 288.
of result, 289, 290.
of indirect question, 294–296.
in relative clauses of purpose, 419, 420.
after verbs of fearing, 415, *a*.
in doubtful conditions, 404, *b*, 406.
in conditions contrary to fact, 404, *c*, 407.
suī, declension, 492.
distinguished from *ipse*, 331, *c*.
sum, 96; conjugation, 502.
compounds, 344, 345.
supine, definition, 370.
in *-um*, 372, 1, 373.
in *-ū*, 372, 2, 374.
suus, how formed and declined, 229.

suus, compared with *ēius*, 230, *a*.
omission of, 230, *b*.
syllables, definition, number of, 42, 1.
division of, 42, 2, 3.
in compound words, 42, 4.
how named, 42, 5.
synopsis of the verb, 512.

T

temporal clauses introduced by *cum*, 396, *a*, 397.
tense, definition, 33 and *a*.
tenses, of infinitive in indirect discourse, 323–326.
distinction in use between perfect and imperfect, 132, *b*.
sign of imperfect, 121, *a*.
sign of future, 126, *a*.
principal and historical, 296, *a*.
sequence of, 296, 297.
terminations, definition, 53, *b*.
of first declension, 53.
of second declension, 84.
of third declension, consonant stems, 154; *i*-stems, 169.
of fourth declension, 242.
of fifth declension, 275.
time, how expressed, 188.
extent, 278.
towns, rules for names of, 197, 1, 2, 3.
transitive verb, 4, *a*.
trēs, declension, 304, 305, *b* and *f*, 486.
tū, declension, 492.
turris, 169, *c*, 479, *c*.
tuus, how formed and declined, 229.
compared with *vester*, 229, note.

U

u as a semivowel, page 15, note.
u-stems, 242, 480.
-ubus, irregular dat. and abl. plur., 242, *a*.
ultima, 42, 5.
ūnus, declension, 304, 305, *f*, 486.
urbs, declension, 169, 479, *c*.
ut, of purpose (negative *nē*), 284.
translated in various ways, 283, 288.
of result (negative *ut nōn*), 289, 290.
translated *that not* with verbs of fearing, 415, *a*.
ut, translated *when* or *as*, when followed by the ind., page 185, note 2.
ūtor, governs the abl., 388.

V

v, often lost between vowels in the perfect and cognate tenses, 414, *b*.
verbs, definition, 4.
kinds and definitions, 4, *a–f*.
agreement, 61.
in relative clauses, 222, *a*.
case of subject, 517 of object, 57.
personal endings, 60, 132.
transitive in English are often intransitive in Latin and govern the dat., 392, *a*.
of *first conjugation*, 60; conjugation, 497.
of *second conjugation*, 71; conjugation, 498.
of *third conjugation*, 147; conjugation, 499.
of *third conjugation* in *-io*, 157; conjugation, 500.
of *fourth conjugation*, 185; conjugation, 501.
how conjugations are distinguished, 59.
principal parts, 131 and *a*.
review of four conjugations, 378–385.
deponents: form, meaning, how distinguished, 386; active forms, 386, *b*; participles of both voices, 386, *c*; perfect participle active in meaning, and gerundive passive, 386, *d*; conjugation, 509.
periphrastic conjugations, 424–428; synopsis of, 510, 511.
irregular verbs, see under *eō*, *fīō*, *ferō*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *sum* and its compounds.
impersonal use and impersonal verbs, 418, *a* and *b*.
vereor, conjugation, 509.
vescor, governs ablative, 388.
vester, how formed and declined, 229.
compared with *tuus*, 229, note.
vetus, comparison, 260, 489.
vir, declension, 478.
virtūs, declension, 154, 479.

vīs, declension, 482.
vocabularies, Latin-English, page 245.
English-Latin, page 291.
vocative case, 46.
vocative form, 46, *a*.
use, 53, *a*.
of proper names in *-ius*, 84, *d*.
of *us*-nouns of the second declension, 84, *a*, 478, *a*.
voice, definition, 28.
intransitive verbs used only in active. 28, *a*.
volnus, declension, 163, 479, *b*.
volō, 391–395.
conjugation, 505.
vōs, declension, 492.
vowels, quantity: short, 43, 2; long, 43, 3, 4.

ANNOUNCEMENTS

TEXT-BOOKS
FOR HIGHER SCHOOLS

By WILLIAM C. COLLAR, Head-Master of Roxbury Latin School, Boston, and M. GRANT DANIELL, recently Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, Boston

	List price	*Mailing price*
Collar and Daniell's First Year Latin. xiv + 311 pages. Illustrated	$1.00	$1.10
Teacher's Manual to accompany First Year Latin. 12mo. Paper. 43 pages	15.	
Collar and Daniell's First Latin Book. 286 pages. Illustrated	1.00	1.10
Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Latin Book. 283 pages	1.00	1.10
Latine Reddenda. The English-Latin exercises from "The Beginner's Latin Book." With Glossarium Grammaticum. 41 pages	.20	
With Glossarium Grammaticum and English-Latin Vocabulary. 58 pages	.30	.33
Collar and Daniell's Beginner's Greek Composition. Based mainly upon Xenophon's Anabasis, Book I. 201 pages. Illustrated	.90	.95

By WILLIAM C. COLLAR

Collar's Via Latina. A new Latin Reader. 203 pages	.75	.85
Collar's New Gradatim. Revised. 189 pages	.50	.55
Collar's Practical Latin Composition. 268 pages	1.00	1.10
Collar's Gate to Caesar. 141 pages	.40	.45
Caesar, Gallic War. Book II. Edited, with Notes and a Vocabulary. 96 pages. *Latin and Greek School Classics*	.35	.40
Vergil's Aeneid. Book VII. Issued both with and without translation. Illustrated. *Latin and Greek School Classics*	.45	.50
Collar's Shorter Eysenbach. Eysenbach's Practical German Grammar. Revised and largely written, with Notes to the Exercises and Vocabularies. Revised by CLARA S. CURTIS. 242 pages	1.00	1.10
Collar's German Lessons. Eysenbach's Practical German Grammar. Revised and largely rewritten, with Notes, Selections for Reading, and Vocabularies. 360 pages	1.20	1.30
Collar's English into German. The English Exercises from Collar's Eysenbach's German Lessons. 51 pages	.25	.30

GINN & COMPANY PUBLISHERS

SECOND YEAR LATIN

Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by JAMES B. GREENOUGH, late Professor of Latin in Harvard University; B. L. D'OOGE, Professor of Latin and Greek in Michigan State Normal College, Ypsilanti, and M. GRANT DANIELL, recently Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, Boston

12mo. Half morocco. 685 pages. Illustrated. List price, $1.25; mailing price, $1.40

THIS book is intended to follow any first Latin book. It embraces in Part I ninety-six pages of easy Latin stories and fables as a preparation for Caesar, followed in Part II by selections from Caesar's "Gallic War," equivalent in amount to the first four books. It is hoped that thus a better graded and wider course, and a more interesting one as well, may be found for young students than the unvaried reading of the first four books of Caesar's "Commentaries."

Part II provides a selected course of reading from Caesar rather than the first four books. Parts of these books are unusually difficult, and parts are lacking in interest. By making selections from the seven books, both of these obstacles to successful work have been in large measure overcome. The selections from Caesar include the War against the Belgian Confederacy, the Campaign against the Veneti, the two Invasions of Britain, the two Invasions of Germany, the Siege and Sack of Avaricum, and the Siege of Alesia.

Special attention is called to the Notes. They are very copious and in every respect adapted to the needs of second-year students of Latin.

A considerable number of oral exercises for turning English into Latin, in the form of question and answer, and some exercises for oral and written translation, all founded on the miscellaneous matter in Part I, have been inserted, so that the writing and speaking of Latin may accompany the course in reading.

The Vocabulary, like all the vocabularies in the Allen and Greenough series, is unique in that it gives full etymologies rather than mere hints at derivations. It is uncommonly full of phrases and idioms that occur in the text.

The illustrations, like those in the Allen and Greenough editions of Caesar, Cicero, and Virgil, have been selected with care, with the idea that they should be truly educative.

The leading colleges and universities have given assurance that the book will be readily accepted as the full equivalent of the first four books of Caesar's "Gallic War."

GINN & COMPANY PUBLISHERS

THE FIRST LATIN BOOK

By W. C. COLLAR,
Head-Master of Roxbury Latin School,

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL,
Recently Principal of Chauncy Hall School, Boston.

12mo. Cloth. 286 pages. Illustrated. For introduction, $1.00.

This is an ideal text-book for teachers of Latin, for it enables them, while following a rigorously scientific method, to impart interest, freshness, and variety to the teaching of the elements of the language.

It is an ideal text-book for beginners in Latin, for by its use they are able to master the rudiments of the language with ease and rapidity, and without the usual tediousness and drudgery.

The reasons why this book stands the test of the school-room are:

Because it is brief, simple, and attractive, and at the same time thorough and scholarly.

Because at an early stage it introduces easy reading lessons to illustrate forms and principles already studied.

Because it presents continuity in the separate exercises for translation into English and into Latin, introduced as early and followed out as fully as practicable.

Because it distributes difficulties and secures great scope, variety, and flexibility in practice by bringing forward certain of the pronouns and certain constructions that are usually deferred till later and massed together.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

TWO LATIN READERS

By WILLIAM C. COLLAR
Head-Master of the Roxbury Latin School, Roxbury, Mass.

VIA LATINA

An Easy Latin Reader. With Vocabulary by CLARENCE W. GLEASON, Master in the Roxbury Latin School, Roxbury, Mass. 12mo. Cloth. 203 pages. List price, 75 cents; mailing price, 85 cents.

"Via Latina" offers a carefully graded course in Latin readings to precede the usual second-year work. The pupil is introduced to Latin fables and stories, and then is led gradually to the difficulties of "Caesar." As a stepping-stone between "The First Latin Book" or "First Year Latin" and "Caesar" it is unsurpassed.

GATE TO CAESAR

16mo. Cloth. 141 pages. List price, 40 cents; mailing price, 45 cents.

THE object of this little book is to save time and labor by distributing difficulties. The text of the second book of Caesar's "Gallic War" is simplified chiefly by omissions; but after the simplified text is given the full text, which may be studied in immediate succession, or later in the course, at the teacher's discretion. Synonymous Latin words are given at the foot of the page to enlarge the learner's vocabulary; full explanatory notes follow the text; and on each chapter of the simplified text a brief exercise is given for translation into Latin. The etymological vocabulary has been found of great interest and value.

GINN & COMPANY PUBLISHERS

tristis	dimitte
lactus.	poetica
impiger	adventus.
bis	contus
consilium	civitas
gaudium	comis
ingens	homus
castra	percutus
consul.	fons
ipse	lacus
iam	brevis
pax	copia
epistola	hospitalis
sene	pater
nunquam	puppis
pecunia.	mare
aeger	lectus
avarus	pars
vaccus	lenis
arcs	contus
mora	opus
verbum	page 104
Crudelus	111
copia	
adulescens	
flumen	
ibi	

no